

# THAI

## BASIC COURSE

### Volume 2



This work was compiled and published with the support of the Office of Education, Department of Health, Education and Welfare, United States of America.

WARREN G. YATES and ABSORN TRYON

**FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE**

WASHINGTON, D.C.

**1970**

D E P A R T M E N T O F S T A T E

*FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE*  
*BASIC COURSE SERIES*  
*Edited by*  
*AUGUSTUS A. KOSKI*

---

For sale by the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office  
Washington, D.C. 20402 - Price \$3.75

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### TABLE OF CONTENTS

#### Volume 2

LESSON 21.	
BASIC DIALOG .....	327
Questions on the Basic Dialog .....	328
Notes on the Basic Dialog .....	328
Grammar Notes .....	329
1. Responses to <u>paj jannaj</u> .....	329
2. Use of <u>phaa</u> ... <u>paj</u> and <u>aw</u> ... <u>paj</u> .....	330
3. <u>maa naan lɛsw</u> Used to Indicate 'Action long in Process' .....	330
DRILLS .....	331
EXERCISES .....	344
VOCABULARY .....	345
LESSON 22.	
BASIC DIALOG .....	347
Notes on the Basic Dialog .....	348
Grammar Notes .....	349
1. <u>thfi</u> in Dates .....	349
2. <u>jaak</u> + <u>hâj</u> + Verb Phrase .....	350
DRILLS .....	351
EXERCISES .....	366
VOCABULARY .....	367
LESSON 23.	
BASIC DIALOG .....	369
Notes on the Basic Dialog .....	370
Grammar Notes .....	370
1. Aspect Particles ( <u>jùu</u> , <u>dâj</u> , <u>lɛsw</u> ) .....	370
2. <u>thammaj</u> , Used to Indicate 'purpose' or 'explanation' .....	372
3. <u>thŷn</u> with <u>thammaj</u> .....	373
DRILLS .....	373
COMPREHENSION EXERCISES .....	382
EXERCISES .....	384
VOCABULARY .....	384

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

LESSON 24.	
BASIC EPISODE (Part I) .....	385
Questions on the Basic Episode (Part I) .....	385
DRILLS .....	386
BASIC EPISODE (Part II) .....	394
Questions on the Basic Episode (Part II) .....	395
EXERCISES .....	395
VOCABULARY .....	396
LESSON 25.	
BASIC DIALOG .....	397
Vocabulary Notes .....	398
DRILLS .....	400
EXERCISES .....	414
VOCABULARY .....	414
LESSON 26.	
BASIC DIALOG .....	416
Notes on the Basic Dialog .....	417
Grammar Notes .....	417
1. <u>hâj</u> + Object + Recipient .....	418
2. Distributive Constructions .....	418
3. <u>kô</u> in Parallel Sentence Constructions .....	419
4. <u>thân</u> + Classifier Phrase .....	419
5. Question + <u>dii</u> as a Request for Advice .....	419
DRILLS .....	420
EXERCISES .....	439
VOCABULARY .....	440
LESSON 27.	
BASIC DIALOG .....	442
Notes on the Basic Dialog .....	443
Grammar Notes .....	443
1. <u>hâj</u> (all uses) .....	443
2. <u>bôok</u> and Other Verbs with <u>hâj</u> as Causative ....	444
3. <u>een</u> as Subject Modifier .....	444
DRILLS .....	445
EXERCISES .....	469
VOCABULARY .....	470
LESSON 28.	
BASIC DIALOG .....	472
Grammar Notes .....	473



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

1. Reduplicated Stative Verbs in Affirmative Requests .....	473
2. <u>òk</u> in Statements of Negation or Contradiction .....	473
3. <u>na</u> / <u>ná</u> as a Comment .....	474
4. Use of <u>sí</u> , ( <u>sí</u> , <u>sí</u> ) in Request .....	474
5. <u>kô</u> <u>léew</u> <u>kan</u> to Indicate Preference for a Particular Course of Action .....	474
DRILLS .....	475
EXERCISES .....	484
VOCABULARY .....	485
LESSON 29.	
BASIC DIALOG .....	487
Notes on the Basic Dialog and Other Notes .....	488
Grammar Notes .....	489
1. <u>set</u> and <u>than</u> as <u>Completive</u> Verbs .....	489
2. <u>maj</u> as Voluntary Choice Question Word .....	489
3. <u>ryplaa</u> as 'Past time' Question Word .....	490
4. <u>thə</u> in Suggestions .....	490
5. <u>díaw</u> as a Sentence Connective .....	490
DRILLS .....	491
EXERCISES .....	515
VOCABULARY .....	516
LESSON 30.	
BASIC EPISODE (Part I) .....	518
Questions on the Basic Episode (Part I) .....	519
BASIC EPISODE: A VISIT TO THE SUNDAY MARKET .....	519
Questions on the Basic Episode (Part II) .....	520
Grammar Notes .....	521
1. <u>mýa</u> in Time Constructions .....	521
2. <u>set</u> and <u>còp</u> Compared in Usage .....	522
DRILLS .....	523
VOCABULARY .....	529
LESSON 31.	
BASIC DIALOG .....	530
Grammar Notes .....	531
1. <u>hăa</u> with <u>phóp</u> / <u>dâj</u> / <u>cəe</u> .....	531
2. <u>kwaa</u> after Stative Verbs .....	532
3. <u>khít</u> + <u>janñaj</u> / <u>araj</u> .....	533
DRILLS .....	534
EXERCISES .....	550
VOCABULARY .....	551

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### LESSON 32.

BASIC DIALOG (Part II) .....	553
Vocabulary Notes .....	554
Grammar Notes .....	556
<u>pa.j</u> and <u>maa</u> as Direction Words .....	556
DRILLS .....	557
EXERCISES .....	569
VOCABULARY .....	570

### LESSON 33.

BASIC DIALOG (Part III) .....	572
Grammar Notes .....	573
1. Use of <u>kô dâj</u> .....	573
2. <u>jàak</u> Versus <u>jaak dâj</u> .....	573
3. Two Types of Noun Compounds .....	574
VOCABULARY NOTES .....	575
DRILLS .....	576
EXERCISES .....	582
VOCABULARY .....	583

### LESSON 34.

BASIC DIALOG (Part IV) .....	586
Grammar Notes .....	587
1. <u>sĭa</u> , <u>òok</u> , <u>càaj</u> + <u>nən</u> .....	587
2. Sentence / NP + <u>khrop</u> .....	588
VOCABULARY NOTES .....	588
DRILLS .....	589
EXERCISES .....	598
VOCABULARY .....	598

### LESSON 35.

REVIEW DIALOG .....	601
Grammar Notes .....	603
Use of <u>khŷn</u> and <u>lon</u> with Stative Verbs .....	603
DRILLS .....	604
EXERCISES .....	621
VOCABULARY .....	622

### LESSON 36.

BASIC DIALOG .....	624
Vocabulary Notes .....	625
Grammar Notes .....	626
1. Types of Comparison .....	626
2. Equational Sentences .....	627
3. Sentences + <u>dii kwàa</u> .....	628

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

DRILLS .....	628
EXERCISES .....	643
VOCABULARY .....	645
LESSON 37.	
BASIC DIALOG .....	647
Vocabulary Notes .....	648
Grammar Notes .....	650
1. Verbs of Measurement with Metric Classifiers ..	650
2. An Optional Transformation .....	650
Chart I: <u>Dimensions</u> .....	651
DRILLS .....	652
EXERCISES .....	661
VOCABULARY .....	662
LESSON 38.	
BASIC DIALOG .....	666
Vocabulary Notes .....	667
Grammar Notes .....	670
1. Noun Classifiers .....	670
2. Nominalization ( <u>thîi</u> + VP) .....	673
DRILLS .....	673
EXERCISES .....	682
VOCABULARY .....	682
LESSON 39.	
BASIC DIALOG .....	687
Grammar Notes .....	688
1. Types of Noun Phrases:	
(a) Noun + Stative Verbs .....	688
(b) Noun + Classifier + Stative Verbs .....	689
DRILLS .....	690
EXERCISES .....	712
VOCABULARY .....	713
LESSON 40.	
BASIC DIALOG .....	716
Vocabulary Notes .....	717
Grammar Notes .....	719
1. <u>châan</u> in Compounds .....	719
2. Completive Verbs .....	719
3. Pronoun Immediately After its Antecedent .....	720

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

4. Constructions with <u>jyym</u> .....	720
5. Constructions with <u>faak</u> .....	721
6. <u>tham dûaj</u> + Materials .....	721
DRILLS .....	722
EXERCISES .....	734
VOCABULARY .....	736

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### LESSON TWENTY-ONE

#### 21.0 BASIC DIALOG: Planning a Trip to the Floating Market

- A: wantthîi cèt meesăa níi  
pen wanjút  
khun wâan máj  
B: wantthîi cèt tron kawan  
araj khráp  
A: wancan  
B: năn phǒm wâan khráp  
khun mii thúra araj rěkháp  
A: jàak ca chuan paj thîaw  
talàat náam  
B: dii thiidiaw khráp  
phǒm jàak paj maa naan lésw,  
tèe māj mii ookàat  
raw ca paj kan janṇaj khráp  
A: ca năn rót paj bāan phŷan  
phǒm kòon, lésw ca paj loṇ  
rya thīinān  
B: bāan khăw jùu rim khloṇ  
rěkháp  
A: khráp  
khăw ca phaa raw paj duu  
talàat náam
- April 7th is a holiday.  
Are you free?  
What day of the week  
is the 7th?  
Monday.  
Then I'm free.  
You have something in  
mind?  
I'd like to invite you  
to go to the Floating  
Market.  
Very good.  
I've been wanting to go  
for a long time, but  
haven't had the chance.  
How shall we go?  
We'll go by car to the  
house of a friend of  
mine and then get in a  
boat there.  
His house is on the edge  
of the canal, eh?  
Right.  
He will take us to see  
the Floating Market.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- B: raw ca phóp kan thîinǎj                      Where'll we meet?
- A: phǎm ca paj ráp khun thîi bân              I'll pick you up at  
weelaa sǎon moon cháaw                      home at 8 a.m.
- B: phǎm khuan ca aw araj paj bân              What should I take with  
me?
- A: aw nǎen paj sýy khǎon káp                      Take some money for  
klǎnthàajrûup kô phoo léew                      shopping and your camera.  
khráp    That'll be enough.

### 21.1 QUESTIONS ON THE BASIC DIALOG

1. khun A káp khun B ca paj thîaw thîinǎj kan
2. kháw ca paj kan mýarǎj
3. khraj chuan khraj
4. khun B jàak paj thîaw talàat náam máj
5. kháw ca paj kan janǎaj
6. khraj ca phaa kháw paj duu talàat náam
7. khun B bòok háj khun A aw araj paj bân

### 21.2 NOTES ON THE DIALOG

- a) wâan when used with people means 'free' in the sense of 'unoccupied, at leisure, not busy'.
- b) tron káp (ka) means 'correspond to, agree with, coincide with' and it is used to indicate correspondence in time, such as the date with the day of the week, years of the Christian era with those of the Buddhist, etc.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

- c) chæen 'to invite' is used for formal invitations. It carries the meaning that the person issuing the invitation is acting as the host.

chuan 'to invite' is less formal. It indicates that the person making the request is urging someone to join him in some activity.

### 21.3 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) The question  $\left. \begin{matrix} \text{paj} \\ \text{maa} \end{matrix} \right\} \text{jannaj}$  'How are you going?' can be answered in several ways.

	Type of Vehicle		Meaning
(1) $\left. \begin{matrix} \text{paj} \\ \text{maa} \end{matrix} \right\}$	rótfaj	(No destination given)	'train'
(2) $\begin{matrix} \text{nân} \\ \text{lon} \\ \text{khÿn} \\ \text{khàp} \\ \text{thìip} \end{matrix}$	$\begin{matrix} \text{rót túktúk} \\ \text{rya} \\ \text{khryânbin} \\ \text{rótjon} \\ \text{càkrajaan} \end{matrix}$	$\left. \begin{matrix} \text{paj} \\ \text{maa} \end{matrix} \right\} + \text{Destination}$	$\begin{matrix} \text{'3 wheeled} \\ \text{bus'} \\ \text{'boat'} \\ \text{'plane'} \\ \text{'car'} \\ \text{'bicycle'} \end{matrix}$
(3) $\begin{matrix} \text{bin} \\ \text{deen} \end{matrix}$		$\left. \begin{matrix} \text{paj} \\ \text{maa} \end{matrix} \right\} + \text{Destination}$	$\begin{matrix} \text{'to fly'} \\ \text{'to walk'} \end{matrix}$
(4) $\left. \begin{matrix} \text{paj} \\ \text{maa} \end{matrix} \right\} + \text{Destination} + \text{dooj}$	rótmee		'bus'

The construction with dooj (4) is used largely in written language or formal speech.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

- b) The verb phaa 'to escort, to take' normally has sentence complements as indicated in the following:

(1)	kháw	phaa...				
(2)			raw	paj...		
(3)			raw		duu	talàat náam
	kháw	phaa	raw	paj	duu	talàat náam

'He escorted us to (go see) the Floating Market.'

phaa is used when referring to human beings. When objects are referred to aw 'to take,' is used. When the direction of the action is away from the speaker paj is used with phaa or aw; when it is toward the speaker, maa.

Observe the following construction with aw:

(1)	kháw	aw	ɲəən		
(2)			ɲəən	maa...	
(3)	kháw				sýy khǎɔŋ
	kháw	aw	ɲəən	maa	sýy khǎɔŋ

'He brought money for buying things.'

On occasion Thai speakers may use aw... paj/maa instead of phaa... paj/maa when referring to human beings.

- c) When the Verb Phrase maa naan léɛw is added to a sentence, it indicates that the action referred to in the sentence has been in process for a long period of time and is still going on. (See 23.2.)



## THAI BASIC COURSE

SENTENCE			+	<u>maa</u>	<u>naan</u>	<u>lěw</u>
phǒm	jàak	phóp	khun	<u>maa</u>	<u>naan</u>	<u>lěw</u>
( I	want	meet	you	come	long time	already)
'I have been wanting to meet you for a long time.'						

### 21.4 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

wan athít	Sunday
wan can	Monday
wan ankhāan	Tuesday
wan phút	Wednesday
wan ph(a)rýhàt	Thursday
wan sùk	Friday
wan sǎw	Saturday
wan phrá	Buddhist day of worship

#### b) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. wanníi pen	wanníi wan araj	wan can
wancan	phrûnníi lâ	wan ankhāan
	mýawaanníi lâ	wan aathít
Today is Monday.	What day is it?	Monday.
	Tomorrow?	Sunday.
	Yesterday?	Sunday.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

2. m̄yawaanníi	wanníi wan araj	wan aathít
pen wansǎw	phrûnníi lâ	wan can
	m̄yawaanníi lâ	wan sǎw
	lésw maryynníi lâ	wan an̄khaan
Yesterday was	What day is today?	Sunday.
Saturday.	Tomorrow?	Monday.
	Yesterday?	Saturday.
	The day after tomorrow?	Tuesday.

3. phrûnníi pen	wanníi wan araj	wan phút
wan pháyhàt	m̄yawaanníi lâ	wan an̄khaan
	phrûnníi lâ	wan phryhàt
	lésw maryynníi lâ	wan sùk
Tomorrow is	What is today?	Wednesday.
Thursday.	Yesterday?	Tuesday.
	Tomorrow?	Thursday.
	And the day after tomorrow?	Friday.

### c) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- kháw chuan phǒm paj th̄law talàat nám  
He invited me to go to the Floating Market.
- kháw chuan phǒm paj thamnaan kàp kháw  
He asked me to go work for him.
- phǒm chuan kháw khuj ryân myan̄thaj  
I invited him to converse about Thailand.
- phanrajaa khun chuan phanrajaa phǒm paj s̄ykh̄s̄on phrûnníi  
Your wife asked my wife to go shopping tomorrow.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

5.   phyân phǎm chuan phǎm paj sýy bâan klâj klâj ka kháw  
       My friend tried to talk me into buying a house near him.
6.   kháw chuan phǎm thaân lâw thîi bâan  
       He invited me to have a drink at his house.
7.   phǎm ca chuan phyânphyân paj thaân khâaw thîi bâan  
       I'm going to invite some friends to eat at my house.

### d) Substitution Drill

#### Cue

#### Pattern

- |                             |  |
|-----------------------------|--|
|                             | phǎm jàak <u>paj</u> maa naan léew<br>I have been wanting to go for a long time.   |
| 1.   phóp khun              | phǎm jàak <u>phóp khun</u> maa naan léew<br>I have been wanting to meet you for a long time.                                       |
| 2.   hěn kháw               | phǎm jàak <u>hěn kháw</u> maa naan léew<br>I have been wanting to see her for a long time.   |
| 3.   thǎam khun             | phǎm jàak <u>thǎam khun</u> maa naan léew<br>I have been wanting to ask you (that) for a long time.                                |
| 4.   bòok kháw              | phǎm jàak <u>bòok kháw</u> maa naan léew<br>I have been wanting to tell him (that) for a long time.                                |
| 5.   phûut rýaṇṇíi kàp khun | phǎm jàak ca <u>phûut rýaṇṇíi ka khun</u> maa naan léew<br>I have been wanting to talk about this matter with you for a long time. |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### e) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>		<u>Response</u>	
1. paj janṇaj	'How are you	paj rótṁee	By bus.
2. paj janṇaj	going?'	paj rótjon	By car.
3. paj janṇaj		paj rótfaj	By train.
4. paj janṇaj		paj rót thésksîi	By taxi.
5. paj janṇaj		paj rya	By boat.
6. paj janṇaj		paj rya } bin	By plane.
		khryāṇ }	
7. paj janṇaj		paj rót sāmloo	By samlor.

### f) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. rót	paj janṇaj	paj rót
2. rót thésksîi	paj janṇaj	paj rót thésksîi
3. rótfaj	paj janṇaj	paj rótfaj
4. khryāṇbin	paj janṇaj	paj khryāṇbin
5. rya phyan	paj janṇaj	paj rya
6. rótṁee	paj janṇaj	paj rótṁee
7. rót	paj janṇaj	paj rót phyan
8. rót sāmloo	paj janṇaj	paj sāmloo

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### g) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>		<u>Response</u>	
1.	paj janɲaj      'How are you going?'	nân rôt paj	By car.
2.	paj janɲaj	nân rôtmeɐ paj	By bus.
3.	paj janɲaj	nân rôt thɛksɰi	By taxi.
4.	paj janɲaj	khàp rôt paj	Drive (a car).
5.	paj janɲaj	nân rya paj	By boat.
6.	paj janɲaj	bin paj	Fly.
7.	paj janɲaj	thɰip càkkrajaan paj	Ride a bicycle.

### h) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. nân rôt	paj janɲaj	nân rôt paj
2. nân rôtmeɐ	paj janɲaj	nân rôtmeɐ paj
3. nân thɛksɰi	paj janɲaj	nân thɛksɰi paj
4. khàp rôt	paj janɲaj	khàp rôt paj
5. nân rya	paj janɲaj	nân rya paj
6. bin	paj janɲaj	bin paj
7. thɰip càkkrajaan	paj janɲaj	thɰip càkkrajaan paj

1) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. A: cháaw cháaw, khun paj thamnaan janñaj  
How do you go to work mornings?  
B: phǒm khàp rót paj  
I drive.
2. A: phanrajaa khǒŋ khun paj thamnaan janñaj  
How does your wife go to work?  
B: phǒm paj sòn kháw  
I take her.
3. A: lûuksǎaw khǒŋ khun paj roonrian janñaj  
How does your daughter go to school?  
B: kháw paj rót phýn  
She goes in a friend's car.
4. A: phýn khun khonnán paj (ajútthajaa) janñaj  
How does that friend of yours go to Ayuthaya?  
B: kháw nân rya paj.  
By boat.
5. A: naaj khǒŋ khun ca paj ameerikaa janñaj  
How is your boss going to America?  
B: kháw ca bin paj  
He'll fly.
6. A: thammadaa, khun maa roonrian janñaj  
How do you usually come to school?  
B: phǒm deen maa.  
I walk.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

7. A: phyân khǎnkhun maa roonrian janṇaj  
How does your friend come to school?

B: kháw maa rótmeē.  
By bus.

8. A: khun cōon maa roonrian janṇaj  
How does John come to school?

B: kháw thīp cākkrajaan maa  
He rides a bike.

### j) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. khun cōon thīp cākkrajaan maa roonrian	khun cōon maa roonrian janṇaj How did John come to school?	kháw thīp cākkrajaan maa He rode a bike.
2. phanrajaa khun cim maa sōṇ sǎamī kháw thúkwan	khun cim maa roonrian janṇaj How did Jim come to school?	phanrajaa kháw maa sōṇ His wife brought him.
3. khun sǔnthoon bin paj ameerikaa	khun sǔnthoon paj janṇaj How did Mr. Sunthorn go?	kháw { bin paj paj khrýanbin He flew.
4. khun thoom nân rya paj júróop	khun thoom paj janṇaj How did Tom go?	kháw { nân rya paj paj rya He went by boat.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |    |   |  |  |
|----|---|--|--|
| 5. | khun praphâat nân<br>rôtmeē paj thamṇaan<br>How did Prapas<br>go to work?         | khun praphâat paj<br>thamṇaan jaṇṇaj<br>How did Prapas<br>go to work?        | khâw { nân rôtmeē paj<br>paj rôtmeē<br>By bus.             |
| 6. | chaawnāa dēen paj<br>naa<br>How did the farmer<br>to the field?                   | chaawnāa paj naa<br>jaṇṇaj<br>How did the farmer<br>to the field?            | khâw dēen paj<br>He walked.                                |
| 7. | phanrajāa khâw nân<br>sǎamlǎo paj talàat<br>How did his wife<br>go to the market? | phanrajāa khâw<br>paj talàat jaṇṇaj<br>How did his wife<br>go to the market? | paj sǎamlǎo<br>khâw { nân rôt sǎamlǎo<br>paj<br>By samlor. |

k) Substitution Drill (Use Chart I with this Drill.)

Cue

Pattern

khâw kamlan khÿn rôt  
 He's getting in (to) the car.

- |                   |  |
|-------------------|--|
| 1. rôtmeē         | khâw kamlan khÿn <u>rôtmeē</u><br>He's boarding the bus.             |
| 2. rôtfaṇ         | khâw kamlan khÿn <u>rôtfaṇ</u> .<br>He's boarding the train.         |
| 3. khrÿṇṇbin      | khâw kamlan khÿn <u>khrÿṇṇbin</u><br>He's boarding the plane..       |
| 4. rôt<br>sǎamlǎo | khâw kamlan khÿn <u>rôt sǎamlǎo</u><br>He's getting into the samlor. |



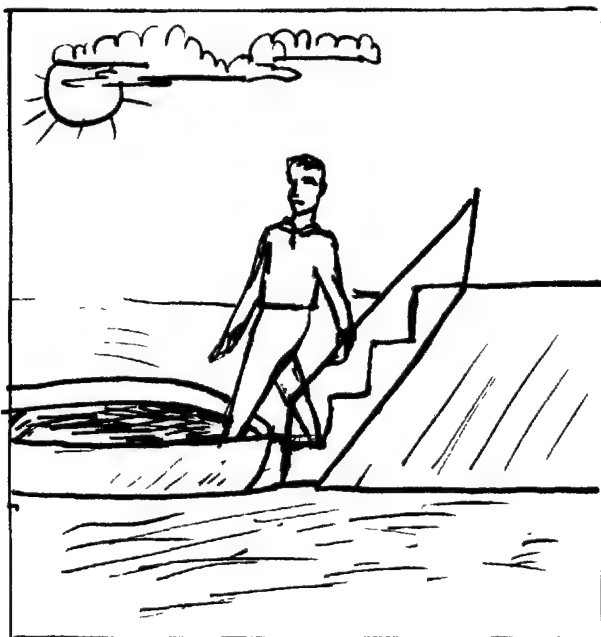
CHART I



kháw kamlaŋ khỳn rôt



kháw kamlaŋ loŋ (càak) rôt



kháw kamlaŋ loŋ rya



kháw kamlaŋ khỳn càak rya

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 1) Substitution Drill

#### Cue

#### Pattern

kháw kamlaŋ loŋ rót

He's getting out of the car.

1. rótmeē

kháw kamlaŋ loŋ (càak) rótmeē.

He's getting out of the bus.

2. rótfaŋ

kháw kamlaŋ loŋ (càak) rótfaŋ

He's getting out of the train.

3. khryâŋbin

kháw kamlaŋ loŋ (càak) khryâŋbin

He's disembarking from the plane.

### m) Substitution Drill

#### Cue

#### Pattern

kháw phaā raw paj duu talàat náam

He took us to see the Floating Market.

1. paj thîaw

kháw phaā raw paj thîaw talàat náam

He took us on a trip to the Floating Market.

2. chiaŋmàj

kháw phaā raw paj thîaw chiaŋmàj

He took us on a trip to Chiangmai.

3. paj thaān

kháw phaā raw paj thaān aahǎan thîi ráan

aahǎan thîi ráan

He took us to eat at that restaurant.

4. maa thaān aahǎan

kháw phaā raw maa thaān aahǎan thîinîi

thîinîi

He took us to eat here.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

5. sýy khǎon                      kháw phaa raw maa sýy khǎon thǎinǎi  
He took us shopping here.
6. maa lon rya                    kháw phaa raw maa lon rya thǎinǎi  
He took us into the boat.
7. maa sòn                        kháw phaa raw maa sòn thǎinǎi  
He took us here.

### n) Substitution Drill

#### Cue

#### Pattern

kháw aw nánsǎy paj thǎinôn  
He took the books over there.

1. kâwǎi                        kháw aw kâwǎi paj thǎinôn  
He took the chairs over there.
2. hônnôn                      kháw aw kâwǎi paj hônnôn  
He took the chairs into the bedroom.
3. nánsǎy                      kháw aw nánsǎy paj hônnôn  
He took the books into the bedrooms.
4. bâan                        kháw aw nánsǎy paj bâan  
He took the books home.
5. klônthàajrûup              kháw aw klônthàajrûup paj bâan  
He took the camera home.
6. thǎi ráan                    kháw aw klônthàajrûup paj thǎi ráan  
He took the camera to the shop.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### o) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	kháw aw <u>nánsǎy</u> maa thǎinǎi He brought the books here.
1. kâwǎi	kháw aw <u>kâwǎi</u> maa thǎinǎi He brought the chairs here.
2. hǎnǎi	kháw aw kâwǎi maa <u>hǎnǎi</u> He brought the chairs into this room.
3. aahǎan	kháw aw <u>aahǎan</u> maa hǎnǎi He brought the food into this room.
4. klǎnthàajrûup	kháw aw <u>klǎnthàajrûup</u> maa hǎnǎi He brought a camera into this room.

### p) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	kháw aw aahǎan maa thaان (thǎinǎi) He brought food to eat here.
1. nǎen, sǎy khǎon	kháw aw <u>nǎen</u> maa <u>sǎy khǎon</u> He brought money for shopping.
2. nánsǎy, àan	kháw aw <u>nánsǎy</u> maa <u>àan</u> He brought books to read.
3. rót, kêe	kháw aw <u>rót</u> maa <u>kêe</u> He brought cars to be repaired.

4. kl̥ɔŋtʰaaj rūp, kháw aw kl̥ɔŋtʰaajrūp maa tʰaaaj rūp  
tʰaaaj rūp                He brought a camera for picture taking.
5. pàakaa, khǎn      kháw aw pàakaa maa khǎn  
He brought a pen to write with.

b) mǐssís brawn nân thěeksǐi paj pratuunáam . kháw khýn rót thǐi sǐijěsk rāatprasǒn . kháw loŋ rót thǐi nāa juusōm

1. mǐssís brawn paj nǎj
2. kháw paj jaŋŋaj
3. kháw khýn rót thǐinǎj
4. kháw loŋ rót thǐinǎj

c) mǐstə samít paj bāan khun phōo khun mēe klâj klâj kàp bǒssatān . kháw khýn khrýaŋbin thǐi wǒochintān . kháw loŋ thǐi bǒssatān

1. mǐstə samít paj nǎj
2. kháw paj jaŋŋaj
3. kháw khýn khrýaŋbin thǐinǎj
4. kháw loŋ thǐinǎj

### 21.6 EXERCISES

Using the format of the basic dialog as a guide plan an excursion to some point of interest. Keep the following points in mind:

1. Date and time of the trip,
2. The place,
3. The means of conveyance,
4. The persons included,
5. The arrangements for meeting beforehand,
6. What should be taken along, and
7. Any other relevant factors (weather conditions, etc.)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 21.7 VOCABULARY

ookàat (khrán)	chance
bín	to fly
càkkrajaan (khan)	a bicycle
chuan	to invite, urge, persuade someone to do something
dooj	by (means of transportation)
kêe	to repair, correct
khuj	to converse
klôn̄thaajrûup (an)	camera
lâw (khùat)	liquor, alcohol (bottle)
míssís	Mrs.
místə	Mr.
naaj (khon)	boss
naan	to be long (in time)
phrácan (thâa)	Phracan ('moon'), name of the port in Bangkok across the Chaophraya River
phaa... { paj { maa	to take, or escort someone
phoo	to be enough, sufficient
rim (rim)	edge, rim
rótjon (khan)	car, motor car
rót sǎamlóo (khan)	samlor
rót túk túk	a small 3-wheeled car used mainly as taxis
rya           bín (lam, khrýan)	airplane
khrýan	
talàat náam	the Floating Market in Thonburi

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

thâa (thâa, hèn)	port, harbor
thàajrûup	to take a picture
théeksîi (khan)	taxi
thiidiaw	exactly, quite, very
thîip	to ride, pedal
thammadaa	usually, normally
tron { ka- kâp	to correspond to, agree with, coincide with
wan aṅkhaan	Tuesday
wan athít	Sunday
wan can	Monday
wan phrá	Buddhist day of worship
wan ph(a)rýhàt	Thursday
wan phút	Wednesday
wan sǎw	Saturday
wan sùk	Friday
wâaṅ	to be free, not busy, not occupied



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### LESSON TWENTY-TWO

#### 22.0 BASIC DIALOG: An American Contacts a Thai Friend

A Voice:	hânloo, thîinîi kâaw nỳn thoo pèet sũun há	Hello, this is 91280.
David:	khǎo phũut kakhun sũnthoon nòoj, dâj máj há	Could I speak with Mr. Sunthorn?
Voice:	roo dǎaw nahá	Just a minute.
Sunthorn:	sũnthoon phũut khráp	Sunthorn speaking.
David:	sawàtdii khráp phǎm, deewít, phũut khráp cam phǎm dâj máj	Hello, It's David speaking. Remember me?
Sunthoon:	ôo, khun deewít lǎe maa thỳn tântèe mýaràj há	Oh, it's David! When did you get here?
David:	mýa wansùk thîi léew	Last Friday.
Sunthorn:	khun òok càak ameerikaa mýaràj há	When did you leave America?
David:	mýa sǎon dyan kòon há raaw wanthîi kâaw kumphaa	Two months ago. Around February the ninth.
Sunthorn:	weelaanîi khun phák thîinǎj há	Where are you staying?
David:	thîi hooten imperian tron sooj rûamrýdii	At the Imperial Hotel, On Ruam Rudee Lane.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

Sunthorn:	jenníi wâaŋ máj há jàak ca chœen maa thaana khâaw thîi bâan	Are you free this evening? I'd like to invite you to eat at my house.
David:	jâa rópkuana ləj há	Don't put yourself out.
Sunthorn:	mâj rópkuana rək há phǒm jàak hâj khun rúucàk bâan phǒm dūaj	No trouble at all. I'd like you to know where my house is.
David:	khòpkhun mâak há bâan khun jùu thîinǎj lahá phǒm paj mâj thùuk	Thanks very much. Where is your house? I don't know how to get there.
Sunthorn:	phǒm ca paj ráp khun thîi hooten raaw sák hòk moon khrŷŋ, nahá	I'll pick you up at the hotel. Around 6:30, O.K.?
David:	tòk lon há phǒm ca khoj jùu nâa hooten	Right. I'll wait for you in front of the hotel.

### 22.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG AND VOCABULARY NOTES

- a) There are three ways to express the meaning of 'ago' in Thai:

$$(m\hat{y}a +) \text{ Period of Time } + \begin{cases} \underline{kòon} \\ \underline{thîi} \underline{lěew} \\ \underline{maa} \underline{lěew} \end{cases}$$

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

Example: (m̂ya) sǎam aathít kòon

(m̂ya) sǎam aathít thîi léew 'three weeks ago'

(m̂ya) sǎam aathít maa léew

- b) tântèe 'since, from (such and such time) may be used with the time expressions above:

tântèe (m̂ya) sǒn dyan kòon 'since two months ago'

It may also be used with particular points in time, as in

tântèe (m̂ya) (dyan) phrýtsacikaa 'Since November'

- c) khòosǒ (ค.ศ.) is an abbreviation for khrit sàkàràat (A.D. or Christian Era).

phòosǒ (พ.ศ.) is an abbreviation of phútthá sàkàràat (B.E. or Buddhist Era).

### 22.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) The following constructions are used in asking and giving the date:

Q: wanníi (pen) wan thîi	thâwràj
A: wanníi (pen) wan thîi	pèet (meesǎa [jon])
'What day of the month is it?	
It's the eighth (of April)'	

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- b) The verb jàak 'want to, would like' normally has a sentence as a complement.

When the subject of the main verb (jàak) and of its complement are the same, the subject of the complement does not occur.

A:	phǒm	jàak	....	'I would like ...'
B:	phǒm		phóp khun	'I meet you.'
A/B:	phǒm	jàak	phóp khun	'I would like to meet you.'

When the subject of the main verb and of the complement are different and the meaning is causative (i.e. 'to have or cause someone to do something'), both subjects occur and hâj occurs after jàak.

A:	phǒm	jàak	...	'I would like ...'
B:			kháw phóp khun	'He meets you.'
A/B:	phǒm	jàak	<u>hâj</u> kháw phóp khun	'I would like him to meet you.'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 22.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. sìi	wanníi wanthíi thâwraj What is the date today?	wanníi wanthíi sìi It's the fourth.
2. hâa	phrûnníi wanthíi thâwraj What is the date tomorrow?	phrûnníi wanthíi hâa It's the fifth.
3. sǎam	mýawaanníi wanthíi thâwraj What was the date yesterday.	mýawaanníi wanthíi sǎam It was the third.
4. hòk	maryynníi wanthíi thâwraj What is the date the day after tomorrow?	maryynníi wanthíi hòk It's the sixth.
5. sìp sìi	wanníi wanthíi thâwraj What's the date today?	wanníi wanthíi sìp sìi It's the fourteenth.
6. sìp hâa	phrûnníi wanthíi thâwraj What's the date tomorrow.	phrûnníi wanthíi sìp hâa It's the fifteenth.
7. sìp hòk	maryynníi wanthíi thâwraj What's the date the day after tomorrow?	maryynníi wanthíi sìp hòk It's the sixteenth.
8. sìp sǒɔŋ	waansyynn(níi) wanthíi thâwraj What was the day before yesterday?	waansyynníi wanthíi sìp sǒɔŋ It was the twelfth.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### b) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. mók karaakhom, rêsk	dyan <u>mók karaa</u> <u>khom</u> <sup>1</sup> pen dyan rêsk khǒn pii January is the first month of the year.
2. kumphaaphan, sǒn	dyan <u>kumphaaphan</u> pen dyan thîi <u>sǒn</u> khǒn pii February is the second month of the year.
3. mīnaakhom, sām	dyan <u>mīnaakhom</u> pen dyan thîi <u>sām</u> khǒn pii March is the third month of the year.
4. meesǎajon, sīi	dyan <u>meesǎajon</u> pen dyan thîi <u>sīi</u> khǒn pii April is the fourth month of the year.
5. phrýtsaphaakhom, hāa	dyan <u>phrýtsaphaakhom</u> pen dyan thîi <u>hāa</u> khǒn pii May is the fifth month of the year.
6. mīthunaajon, hòk	dyan <u>mīthunaajon</u> pen dyan thîi <u>hòk</u> khǒn pii June is the sixth month of the year.

---

<sup>1</sup>Months having 31 days end in khom; those having 30 end with jon. Only February ends in phan. In spoken Thai these endings are usually omitted.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

7. karákkadaakhom, cèt      sǐnhǎakhom pen dyan thǐi pèet khǒn pii  
August is the eighth month of the year.
8. kanjaajon, kâaw      kanjaajon pen dyan thǐi kâaw khǒn pii  
September is the ninth month of the year.
9. tulaakhom, sǐp      tulaakhom pen dyan thǐi sǐp khǒn pii  
October is the tenth month of the year.
10. phrýt(sa) cikaajon,      phrýtsacikaajon pen dyan thǐi sǐp-èt  
sǐp-èt      khǒn pii  
November is the eleventh month of the year.
11. thanwaakhom, sùt      thanwaakhom pen dyan sùt tháaj khǒn pii  
tháaj      December is the last month of the year.

### c) Response Drill

- | <u>Question</u>                          | <u>Response</u>          |
|--|--------------------------|
| 1. dyan araj pen dyan thǐi sǒn khǒn pii  | (dyan) kumphaa(phan)     |
| 2. dyan araj pen dyan rêsk khǒn pii      | (dyan) mókkaa(khom)      |
| 3. dyan araj pen dyan sùt tháaj khǒn pii | (dyan) thanwaa(khom)     |
| 4. dyan araj pen dyan thǐi pèet khǒn pii | (dyan) sǐnhǎa(khom)      |
| 5. dyan araj pen dyan thǐi hâa khǒn pii  | (dyan) phrýtsaphaa(khom) |
| 6. dyan araj pen dyan thǐi sǎam khǒn pii | (dyan) minaa(khom)       |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |                                  |
|---|----------------------------------|
| 7. dyan araj pen dyan thîi sîp-èt<br>khǎw pîi | (dyan) phrýt(sa)<br>cika(a)(jon) |
| 8. dyan araj pen dyan thîi cèt khǎw pîi       | (dyan) karákkadaa(khom)          |
| 9. dyan araj pen dyan thîi hòk khǎw pîi       | (dyan) mîthunaa(jon)             |
| 10. dyan araj pen dyan thîi sîp khǎw pîi      | (dyan) tulaa(khom)               |
| 11. dyan araj pen dyan thîi sîi khǎw pîi      | (dyan) meesǎa(jon)               |
| 12. dyan araj pen dyan thîi kâaw khǎw pîi     | (dyan) kanjaa(jon)               |

### d) Recognition and Familiarization Drill (YEARS)

- |     |  |      |        |
|-----|--|------|--------|
| I.  | 1. <u>khǎwsǎw</u> nỳn phan cèt rǎw cèt sîp hòk | 1776 | } A.D. |
|     | 2. khǎwsǎw nỳn phan cèt rǎw pèet sîp kâaw      | 1789 |        |
|     | 3. khǎwsǎw nỳn phan pèet rǎw hòk sîp sǎw       | 1862 |        |
|     | 4. khǎwsǎw nỳn phan pèet rǎw hòk sîp hâa       | 1865 |        |
|     | 5. khǎwsǎw nỳn phan kâw rǎw sîi sîp            | 1940 |        |
|     | 6. khǎwsǎw nỳn phan kâw rǎw sîi sîp pèet       | 1948 |        |
|     | 7. khǎwsǎw nỳn phan kâw rǎw hâa sîp sîi        | 1954 |        |
|     | 8. khǎwsǎw nỳn phan kâw rǎw hòk sîp hòk        | 1966 |        |
| II. | 1. <u>phǎwsǎw</u> sǎw phan sǎam rǎw sîp        | 2310 | } B.E. |
|     | 2. phǎwsǎw sǎw phan sǎam rǎw jîi sîp hâa       | 2325 |        |
|     | 3. phǎwsǎw sǎw phan sîi rǎw cèt sîp hâa        | 2475 |        |
|     | 4. phǎwsǎw sǎw phan sîi rǎw kâw sîp sîi        | 2494 |        |
|     | 5. phǎwsǎw sǎw phan hâa rǎw                    | 2500 |        |
|     | 6. phǎwsǎw sǎw phan hâa rǎw nỳn                | 2501 |        |
|     | 7. phǎwsǎw sǎw phan hâa rǎw kâaw               | 2509 |        |



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

e) Response Drill (Use actual dates in the responses below)

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1.    pii níi pen pii khoosǎo araj  What year (A.D.) is this?	pii níi pen pii khoosǎo nỳn phan kâaw rǎoj hòksǐp kâaw It's 1969.
2.    pii nâa pen pii khoosǎo araj  What year (A.D.) is next year?	pii nâa pen pii khoosǎo nỳn phan kâaw rǎoj cèt-sǐp It's 1970.
3.    pii thîilǎew pen pii khoosǎo araj  What year (A.D.) was last year?	pii thîi lǎew pen pii khoosǎo nỳn phan kâaw rǎoj hòksǐp pèet It was 1968.
4.    pii níi pen pii phoosǎo araj  What year (B.E.) is this?	pii níi pen pii phoosǎo sǎon phan hâa rǎoj sǐp sǎon It's 2512. (A.D. 1969)
5.    pii nâa pen pii phoosǎo araj  What year (B.E.) is next year?	pii nâa pen pii phoosǎo sǎon phan hâa rǎoj sǐp sǎam It's 2513.
6.    pii thîi lǎew pen pii phoosǎo araj  What year (B.E.) was last year?	pii thîilǎew pen pii phoosǎo hâa rǎoj sǐp-èt It was 2511.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### f) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
June 1, 1960	wanthîi nỳn mĩthunajon khoosǎo nỳn phan kâaw rǎoj hòk-síp
July 14, 1966	wanthîi síp sǐi karákadaakhom khoosǎo nỳn phan kâaw rǎoj hòk-síp hòk
February 23, 1969	wanthîi jǐi-síp sǎam kumphaaphan khoosǎo nỳn phan kâaw rǎoj hòk-síp kâaw
May 20, B.E. 2509	wanthîi jǐi-síp phrýtsaphaakhom phoosǎo sǎoj phan hâarǎoj kâaw
December 5, B.E. 2510	wanthîi hâa thanwaakhom phoosǎo sǎoj phan hâa rǎoj síp

### g) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- |  |               |
|--|---------------|
| 1. mỳa sǎam wan kǎon<br>mỳa sǎam wan thǐi léew<br>mỳa sǎam wan maa léew          | '3 days ago'  |
| 2. mỳa síp wan kǎon<br>mỳa síp wan thǐi léew<br>mỳa síp wan maa léew             | '10 days ago' |
| 3. mỳa sǎam aathít kǎon<br>mỳa sǎam aathít thǐi léew<br>mỳa sǎam aathít maa léew | '3 weeks ago' |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |  |                       |
|--|-----------------------|
| <p>4.   mýa hâa dyan kòon<br/>            mýa hâa dyan thîi lésɯw<br/>            mýa hâa dyan maa lésɯw</p> | <p>'5 months ago'</p> |
| <p>5.   mýa hòk pii kòon<br/>            mýa hòk pii thîi lésɯw<br/>            mýa hòk pii maa lésɯw</p>    | <p>'6 years ago'</p>  |

### h) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. sǎɔŋ dyan	raw rêem rian phaasǎathaj mýaràj When did we start studying Thai?	raw rêem rian phaasǎathaj mýa sǎɔŋ dyan kòon We started studying Thai two months ago.
2. hâa pii	kháw khəej jùu myan̄thaj mýaràj When did he live in Thailand?	kháw khəej jùu myan̄thaj mýa hâa pii kòon He lived in Thailand five years ago.
3. sǎam dyan	kháw klàp paj myan̄ thaj mýaràj When did he return to Thailand?	kháw klàp paj myan̄ thaj mýa sǎam dyan kòon He returned to Thailand three months ago.
4. sǎam sǐi wan	khun phóp kháw mýaràj When did you meet him?	phǒm phóp kháw mýa sǎam sǐi wan kòon I met him three or four days ago.

NOTE: Repeat the drill using ...thîi lésɯw and once more using ...maa lésɯw in place of kòon

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 1) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. hōṅsamùt	mýa sǒṅ chûamoon kòon khun jùu thîinǎj Where were you two hours ago?	mýa sǒṅ chûamoon kòon, phǒm jùu naj hōṅsamùt Two hours ago I was at the library.
2. duu náṅsǎy	mýa jîi-síp naathii maa léew, khun tham araj What were you doing ten minutes ago?	mýa jîi-síp naathii maa léew, phǒm duu náṅsǎy Ten minutes ago I was studying.
3. sǒṅkhláa	mýa sǎam aathít thîi léew khun paj nǎj Where did you go three weeks ago?	mýa sǎam aathít thîi léew phǒm paj sǒṅkhláa Three weeks ago I went to Songkla.
4. tham râatchakaan	mýa cèt pii kòon, kháw thamṇaan araj khráp Seven years ago what was he doing?	mýa cèt pii kòon, kháw tham râatchakaan Seven years ago he was in government service.
5. rian náṅsǎy thîi krunthêep	mýa hòk pii kòon, khun rian náṅsǎy thîi nǎj Where were you studying (going to school) six years ago.	mýa hòk pii kòon, phǒm rian náṅsǎy thîi krunthêep I was going to school in Bangkok six years ago.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |  |  |   |
|--|--|---|
| 6. jùu thîi myan mýa pèst pii thîi lésu,<br>bóosatân khun jùu thîi nǎj | Where were you<br>living eight<br>years ago? | mýa pèst pii thîi lésu<br>phom jùu thîi myan<br>bóossatân |
|  |  | Eight years ago<br>I was living in<br>Boston.             |

### j) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. mýa dyan phrýtsacikaa	khun maa thýn nîi tântèe mýaràj How long have you been here?	tântèe (mýa) dyan phrýtsacikaa Since November.
2. mýa sǒon dyan kòon	khun maa thýn nîi tântèe mýaràj? How long have you been here?	tântèe (mýa) sǒon dyan kòon Since two months ago.
3. mýa sǎam pii maa lésu	khun maa jùu myan thaj tântèe mýaràj How long have you been living in Thailand?	tântèe (mýa) sǎam pii maa lésu Since three years ago.
4. mýa pii phoosǒ sǒon phan hǎa rǒoj	khun maa jùu myan thaj tântèe mýaràj How long have you been living in Thailand?	tântèe (mýa) pii phoosǒ sǒon phan hǎa rǒoj Since B.E. 2500.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |                                      |   |  |
|--------------------------------------|---|--|
| 5. m̄ya dyan thanwaa<br>pīi thīlēs̄w | khun maa j̄u thīnīi<br>tāntēs m̄yarāj<br>How long have you<br>been living here? | tāntēs m̄ya dyan thanwaa<br>pīi thīlēs̄w<br>Since last December. |
| 6. m̄ya s̄on<br>chūamoon k̄on        | khāw paj tāntēs<br>m̄yarāj<br>How long has he<br>been gone?                     | tāntēs m̄ya s̄on<br>chūamoon k̄on<br>Since two hours ago.        |
| 7. m̄ya s̄on aathīt<br>thīi lēs̄w    | khāw paj tāntēs<br>m̄yarāj<br>How long has he<br>been gone?                     | tāntēs m̄ya s̄on<br>aathīt thīi lēs̄w<br>Since two weeks ago.    |

### k) Substitution Drill

#### Cue

#### Pattern

- |              |  |
|--------------|--|
|              | j̄aak ca chēen maa thaān khāaw <u>thīi bān</u>   |
| 1. thīnīi    | j̄aak ca chēen maa thaān khāaw <u>thīnīi</u><br>I'd like to invite you to eat here.      |
| 2. thīaw     | j̄aak ca chēen maa <u>thīaw</u> thīnīi<br>I'd like to invite you to go out here.         |
| 3. s̄on      | j̄aak ca chēen maa <u>s̄on</u> thīnīi<br>I'd like to invite you to come teach here.      |
| 4. wāaj nām  | j̄aak ca chēen maa <u>wāaj nām</u> thīnīi<br>I'd like to invite you to go swimming here. |
| 5. phóp khāw | j̄aak ca chēen maa <u>phóp khāw</u> thīnīi<br>I'd like to invite you to meet him here.   |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 1) Substitution Drill

#### Cue

#### Pattern

- |              |   |
|--------------|---|
|              | jàak ca chœen paj than khâaw <u>thîi</u> <u>bân</u>   |
| 1. thîi ráan | jàak ca chœen paj thaان khâaw <u>thîi</u> <u>ráan</u> |
| 2. thîi nân  | jàak ca chœen paj thaان khâaw <u>thîi</u> <u>nân</u>  |
| 3. sŏn       | jàak ca chœen paj <u>sŏn</u> thîinân                  |
| 4. phóp kháw | jàak ca chœen paj <u>phóp</u> <u>kháw</u> thîinân     |

### m) Substitution Drill

#### Cue

#### Pattern

- |                           |  |
|---------------------------|--|
|                           | <u>phŏm</u> jàak phóp khun                                   |
| 1. kháw jàak              | <u>kháw</u> jàak phóp khun                                   |
| 2. rúucàk khun            | kháw jàak <u>rúucàk</u> <u>khun</u>                          |
| 3. paj myan̄thaj          | kháw jàak <u>paj</u> <u>myan̄thaj</u>                        |
| 4. pen mŏo                | kháw jàak <u>pen</u> <u>mŏo</u>                              |
| 5. sýy rót                | kháw jàak <u>sýy</u> <u>rót</u>                              |
| 6. khàp rót pen           | kháw jàak <u>khàp</u> <u>rót</u> <u>pen</u>                  |
| 7. phŏm                   | <u>phŏm</u> jàak kháp rót pen                                |
| 8. phŭut phaasǎa thaj dâj | phŏm jàak <u>phŭut</u> <u>phaasǎa</u> <u>thaj</u> <u>dâj</u> |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### n) Sentence Combination Drill

#### Pattern 1 and 2

1. phǒm jàak...  
khun rúucàk bâan phǒm

#### Pattern 3

- phǒm jàak hâj khun rúucàk bâan  
phǒm

I'd like for you to know  
where my house is.

2. phǒm jàak...  
khun phûut phaasǎathaj kan

- phǒm jàak hâj khun  
phûut phaasǎa thaj kan

I'd like to have you  
speak Thai together.

3. khun phôo phǒm jàak...  
phǒm pen mǎo

- khun phôo phǒm jàak hâj phǒm  
pen mǎo

My father would have liked  
for me to become a doctor.

4. phǒm jàak...  
khun àan nán̄sǎy lêm níi

- phǒm jàak hâj khun àan  
nán̄sǎy lêm níi

I'd like to have you  
read this book.

5. phômêe thúk khon jàak...  
lûuklûuk rian roon̄rian diidi

- phômêe thúk khon jàak  
hâj lûuklûuk rian roon̄rian dii dii

All parents would like to  
have their children go to  
good schools.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### o) Sentence Combination Drill

#### Pattern 1 and 2

1. phǒm jàak...  
phǒm rúucàk kháw
2. phǒm mǎj jàak  
kháw maa háa phǒm thǐinǐi
3. phǒm jàak...  
phanrajaa phǒm khàp rǒt pen
4. phǒm mǎj jàak...  
phǒm jùu krunthêep
5. khun phǒo khun mǐe phǒm jàak...  
phǒm tham ráatchakaan

#### Pattern 3

- phǒm jàak rúucàk kháw  
I'd like to meet him.
- phǒm mǎj jàak háj kháw  
maa háa phǒm thǐinǐi  
I wouldn't like to have  
him come to see me here.
- phǒm jàak háj phanrajaa  
phǒm khàp rǒt pen  
I'd like to have my wife  
able to drive a car.
- phǒm mǎj jàak jùu krunthêep  
I wouldn't like to live  
in Bangkok.
- khun phǒo khun mǐe phǒm jàak  
háj phǒm tham ráatchakaan  
My parents would like me to  
be a government employee.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### p) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. mǎo	khun phǎo khun jàak hâj khun pen khruu máj Would your father like for you to be a teacher?	mâj jàak khráp, khun phǎo phǎm jàak hâj phǎm pen mǎo No, he wouldn't. My father would like for me to be a doctor.
2. tàaŋcǎwàt	khun jàak jùu krunthêep máj Would you like to live in Bangkok?	mâj jàak khráp, phǎm jàak jùu tàaŋcǎwàt No, I wouldn't. I'd like to live in the provinces.
3. eesia	khun jàak paj áafarikaa máj Would you like to go to Africa?	mâj jàak khráp, phǎm jàak paj eesia No, I wouldn't. I'd like to go to Asia.
4. aahǎan thaj	khun jàak thaان aahǎan faràŋ máj Would you like to eat foreign food?	mâj jàak khráp, phǎm jàak thaان aahǎan thaj No, I wouldn't. I'd like to eat Thai food.
5. thoom	khun jàak hâj kháw rǎak khun wâa mǐsatǎ braawn máj Would you like to have him call you Mr. Brown?	mâj jàak khráp, phǎm jàak hâj kháw rǎak phǎm wâa thoom No, I wouldn't.. I'd like to have him call me Tom.

6. jùu kabâan khun jàak hâj phanrajaa māj jàak khráp, phǒm  
khun thamjaan nōok bâan māj jàak hâj kháv jùu kabâan  
Would you like to No, I wouldn't. I  
have your wife work would like to have  
(outside)? her stay at home.

Suppose today is Thursday. Focus your attention on 'wannif (today)' and notice what the days in the past weeks and the future weeks are called. Repeat the words in the left column after the instructor.

aathít	can	Monday of last week
thiŋlǝw	aŋkhaan	Tuesday of last week
Last week	phút	Wednesday of last week
	phrýhàt	Thursday of last week
	sùk	Friday of last week
	sǎw	Saturday of last week
	aathít	Sunday of last week

aathít <u>níí</u>  This week	can	m̃yā wan can níí	Last Monday
	aṅkhaan	m̃yā wan aṅkhaan níí	Last Tuesday
	phút	m̃yā waanníí	Yesterday
	phrýhàt	wanníí	Today
	sùk	phrûṅ níí	Tomorrow
	săw	maryynníí (or)	This coming Sunday
		wan sắw { níí	This Saturday
		{ th̃i ca th̃yṅ níí	
aathít	wan aathít { níí	This Sunday	
		{ th̃i ca th̃yṅ níí	

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

aathít nâa Next week	can	wan can {nâa thiî ca thỷn níí	Next Monday This coming Monday
	aṅkhaan	wan aṅkhaan nâa	Next Tuesday
	phút	wan phút nâa	Next Wednesday
	phrýhàt	wan phrýhàt nâa	Next Thursday
	sùk	wan sùk nâa	Friday of Next week
	săw	wan sắw nâa	Saturday of next week
	aathít	wan aathít nâa	Sunday of next week

### 22.4 EXERCISES

- a) Assume that you have just arrived in Thailand. Call up your friend, Mr. Prasert. He invites you to dinner at his house so that you can meet his wife.

(Use the approximate date of your arrival in Thailand as a basis for responses.)

- b) The instructor points at various dates on the calendar asks the students what the date is. (This should be continued until all students can give any date in the year readily).
- c) Student A asks Student B his birthdate. Student B responds with the correct information.
- d) Student A asks Student B how long he has been doing various things (below are some examples). Student A responds with the correct information.
1. living in the Washington area (or some other area)
  2. studying Thai
  3. married
  4. sitting here, etc.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- e) The students question each other about things they have wanted to do in the past and whether or not other people wanted them to do these things. Below is a sample exchange:

A: m̄ya s̄lp pii maa l̄sw ph̄m j̄ak pen m̄o

B: khun ph̄o j̄ak h̄j khun pen m̄o r̄ypl̄aw

A: m̄j j̄ak kh̄r̄p . kh̄w j̄ak h̄j ph̄m pen kh̄ruu

A: Ten years ago I wanted to be a doctor.

B: Did your father want you to be a doctor?

A: No, he didn't. He wanted me to be a teacher.

### 22.5 VOCABULARY

áafarikaa (thaw̄f̄p)	Africa (continent)
aathít	week
imphiir̄ian	Imperial (name of a hotel in Bangkok)
cam... d̄aj	to remember
ch̄ummon	hour (60 minutes)
deewít	David
dyan	month
hanl̄o	Hello
j̄ak	to want to, would like to
-jon	ending of the months that have 30 days
kanjaa (jon)	September
karákkadaa(khom)	July
-khom	ending of months that have 31 days
kh̄r̄tsàkàr̄at (kh̄o s̄o)	Christian Era
kumphaa(phan)	February
l̄əəj	at all (after a negative); so, then, consequently

# THAI BASIC COURSE

---

maa lésw	ago
maryynníi	the day after tomorrow
meesǎa(jon)	April
miinaa(khom)	March
míthunaa(jon)	June
mókkaraa(khom)	January
phák	to stay at, to stop at (hotel, etc.)
-phan	ending for month of February
phrýt(sa)cikkaa(jon)	November
phrýtsaphaa(khom)	May
phútthá sàkàràat (phoosǎo)	Buddhist Era
rêem	to start
rópkuam	to bother, trouble (someone)
rǎ, rǎk, rǎk, rǎk, rǎk, rǎ-	particle often used with statement of negation
rûam rýdii	Ruam Rudi, name of a lane off Sukhumwit Road
sǐnhǎa(khom)	August
sǔnthoon	Sunthorn (male first name)
sùttháaj	last
thíi lésw	ago
tântèe	from (such and such a time or starting point), since
thanwaa(khom)	December
thíi lésw	last
thùuk	to be right, correct
tòklon	right, O.K., to agree (to something)
tulaa(khom)	October
waansyyn(níi)	the day before yesterday
wanthíi	date

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### LESSON TWENTY-THREE

#### 23.0 BASIC DIALOG: Conversation About Length of Residence

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| A: khun jùu myan thaj maa dâj<br>kìi pii lếw                         | How long have you been<br>living in Thailand? |
| B: sỏn pii kwàa lếw khráp  | More than two years.                          |
| A: lếw phyan khun la khráp<br>maa jùu naan lếw rỏe                   | And your friend? Has<br>he been here long?    |
| B: kháw phên maa khráp   | He just came.                                 |
| A: kháw ca jùu kìi pii khráp   | How many years will he<br>be (here)?          |
| B: jàan nỏj sỏj pii, jàan mảak<br>sỉi pii                            | At least two years. At<br>most four years.    |
| A: thammaj kháw thýn phũt<br>phaasảa thaj dâj chát janjan<br>lakhráp | How is it that he speaks<br>Thai so clearly?  |
| B: phró kháw khỏj rian maa<br>kỏn khráp                              | He studied it previously.                     |
| A: thỉnảj khráp  | Where?  |
| B: thỉ ameerikaa   | In America.                                   |
| A: kháw rian jùu naan thảwrảj khráp                                  | How long did he study?                        |
| B: sỉp dyan khráp  | Ten months.                                   |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 23.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG

- a) After constructions giving numerical amounts kwàa is translated as 'more than'. For example,

<u>sǒn</u> <u>pī</u> <u>kwàa</u>	'More than 2 years'
<u>sìp</u> <u>lít</u> <u>kwàa</u>	'More than 10 liters'

When used with bàat 'baht' (Thai currency), the position of kwàa is important, thus

<u>sìp</u> <u>bàat</u> <u>kwàa</u>	means	'more than ten baht but less than eleven',
but <u>sìp</u> <u>kwàa</u> <u>bàat</u>	means	'more than ten but less than twenty'.

- b) phên 'just' occurs just before the main verb in the sentence and refers to the recent past.

<u>kháw</u> <u>phên</u> <u>maa</u>	'He just came.'
------------------------------------	-----------------

- c) phûut thoorasàp means 'to talk on the telephone.'

### 23.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) The verbs jùu, and maa may be used in conjunction with dâj and lěw to indicate whether (1) an activity is complete or incomplete, and (2) whether it lasted for a long or short period of time. When verbs are used in this manner, they may be called Aspect Particles.

1. When jùu is used as an aspect particle, it indicates that the activity referred to continued for a particular period of time. jùu does not itself indicate the time of an action but may be used in combination with time expressions as in the following example.

<u>kháw</u> <u>ca</u> <u>rian</u> <u>nánsǎy</u> <u>jùu</u> <u>sǒn</u> <u>pī</u>	'He'll be studying for 2 years (no more or less)'.
---	--



## THAI BASIC COURSE

2. When maa... lěsw occur together as aspect markers there is indication that the action originated in the past and is continuing into the present.

kháw thamnaan maa 2 pii lěsw

'He has been working for 2 years (and still is)'.

3. dâj + Time Expression refers only to the passage of a specific period of time; when it is followed by lěsw, there is indication that the period of time referred to continues into the present, when used without time or aspect particles, it is interpreted as 'indefinite past time'.

kháw thamnaan dâj 2 pii

'He worked for 2 years.'

kháw thamnaan dâj 2 pii lěsw

'He's been working for 2 years (and still is working)'.

In the chart below the use and meaning of jùu, dâj, maa, and lěsw are illustrated:

MAIN SENTENCE	Aspect Particles and Time Expressions				Meaning
kháw thamnaan	jùu		2 pii		Past Time; Specific Period of Time <sup>1</sup>
kháw thamnaan	jùu	dâj	2 pii		
kháw thamnaan		dâj	2 pii		
kháw thamnaan	jùu	...	.....		Present Progressive <sup>2</sup>
kháw <u>kamlan</u> thamnaan	jùu	...	.....		
kháw thamnaan	{jùu maa		2 pii	lěsw	Present Perfect <sup>3</sup>
kháw thamnaan	{jùu maa	dâj	2 pii	lěsw <sup>4</sup>	
kháw thamnaan		dâj	2 pii	lěsw	
kháw <u>ca</u> thamnaan	...	...	2 pii		Future <sup>5</sup>
kháw <u>ca</u> thamnaan	jùu	...	2 pii		Future, Specific period of time

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

1. He worked (for) two years.
2. He is working.
3. He has been working...
4. He has been working... (focus on starting point)
5. He will be working two years.

Special note: If either maa or jùu occurs in the main sentence, it can not occur as a particle,

thus kháw maa jùu myan thaj dâj 2 pii lésw

(Two years have passed since he came to live in Thailand).

'He's been living in Thailand for 2 years.'

Neither maa dâj 2 pii lésw nor jùu dâj 2 pii lésw can occur after kháw maa jùu myan thaj.

- b) thammaj 'why' may occur at the beginning of the sentence or at the end. Its position is determined by the expected answer, thus

1. thammaj is at the end of the sentence if the response is a Verb Phrase indicating purpose, thus

Q: paj thammaj                    'Why are you going?'  
    (What is the purpose?)

A: paj sýy khǎon                'To shop.'

2. thammaj is at the beginning of the sentence if the response expected normally begins with phró 'because', and provides an explanation as to why certain actions took place or why certain situations exist, thus

Q: thammaj paj sýy thîinân        'Why did you buy there?'  
     thammaj mâj sýy thîinîi        'Why not shop here?'

A: phró thîinân (khǎon)            'Because things are  
     thùuk kwàa                        cheaper there.'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

3. thammaj always occurs at the beginning of negative questions.
4. thýn may occur with thammaj. It serves as an intensifier of the question. Observe the following example:

thammaj khun mâj jàak jùu wòochintân

'Why don't you like living in Washington?'

thammaj khun thýn mâj jàak jùu wòochintân

'How is that you don't like living in Washington?'

### 22.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. khun jùu myan thaj maa (dâj) { kîi pii                      lếw { naan thâwràj How long have you been living in Thailand?	phỏm jùu myan thaj maa (dâj) sỏn pii lếw Two years.
2. khun thamnaan thînfîi maa (dâj) { kîi pii                      lếw { naan thâwràj How long have you been working here?	phỏm thamnaan thînfîi maa (dâj) lắaj pii lếw Several years.
3. khun rian phaasǎa thaj maa (dâj) kîi dyan lếw How many months have you been studying Thai?	phỏm rian phaasǎa thaj maa (dâj) hầa dyan lếw Five months.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>4. khun pen khruu maa (dâj)<br/>kîi pii lésw<br/>How many years have<br/>you been a teacher?</p>    | <p>phǒm pen khruu maa (dâj)<br/>(nỳn) pii kwàa lésw<br/>More than a year.</p> |
| <p>5. khun rúucàk kháw maa<br/>(dâj) naan thâwràj lésw<br/>How long have you<br/>been knowing him?</p> | <p>phǒm rúucàk kháw maa<br/>(dâj) sǎam pii lésw<br/>Three years.</p>          |
| <p>6. khun tènṇaan maa (dâj)<br/>kîi pii lésw<br/>How many years have<br/>you been married?</p>        | <p>phǒm tènṇaan maa (dâj)<br/>kỳap pii lésw<br/>Almost a year.</p>            |

### b) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- | <u>Question</u>  | <u>Response</u>   |
|--|---|
| <p>1. khun maa jùu thîinṇi dâj<br/>naan thâwràj lésw khráp<br/>How long ago was it that you<br/>came to live here?</p>       | <p>phǒm maa jùu thîinṇi dâj<br/>hòk dyan lésw khráp<br/>Six months (ago).</p>   |
| <p>2. khun maa thamṇaan thîinṇi<br/>dâj naan thâwràj lésw khráp<br/>How long ago was it that<br/>you came to work here?</p>  | <p>phǒm maa thamṇaan thîinṇi<br/>dâj nỳn pii lésw khráp<br/>One year (ago).</p> |
| <p>3. khun maa rian nǎnsǎy thîinṇi<br/>dâj kîi dyan lésw<br/>How many months ago was it<br/>that you came to study here?</p> | <p>phǒm maa rian nǎnsǎy thîinṇi<br/>dâj sǒṇ dyan lésw<br/>Two months (ago).</p> |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

4.   khun maa pen khruu thîinîi                     phǒm maa pen khruu thîinîi  
      dâj kîi pii léew                                     dâj kÿap nÿn pii léew khráp  
      How many years ago was it  
      that you came to be a  
      teacher here?   Almost a year (ago).

### c) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1.   lǎaj pii	khun tham râatchakaan maa dâj naan thâwràj léew How long have you been a government employee?	phǒm tham râatchakaan maa dâj lǎaj pii léew Several years.
2.   sǎam dyan	khun maa rian phaasǎa thaj thîi ef-és-aj dâj kîi dyan léew How many months have you been studying Thai at FSI?	phǒm maa rian phaasǎa thaj thîi éf-és-aj dâj sǎam dyan léew Three months.
3.   aathít kwàa	khun rian phaasǎa thâj maa dâj kîi aathít lèew How many weeks have you been studying Thai?	phǒm rian phaasǎa thaj maa dâj aathít kwàa léew More than a week.
4.   sǒɔŋ pii	khun rúucàk kháw maa dâj naan thâwràj léew How long have you been knowing him?	phǒm rúucàk kháw maa dâj sǒɔŋ pii kwàa léew More than two years.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |    |                   |   |   |
|----|-------------------|---|---|
| 5. | hâa dyan          | khun klàp maa ameerikaa<br>dâj dîi dyan lésw<br>How many months has<br>it been since you<br>came back to America? | phǒm klàp maa ameerikaa<br>dâj hâa dyan lésw<br>Five months.      |
| 6. | sǎam<br>chûamoon  | khun nân khoɔj kháw maa<br>dâj kîi chûamoon lésw<br>How many hours have<br>you been sitting<br>waiting for him?   | phǒm nân khoɔj kháw maa<br>dâj sǎam chûamoon lésw<br>Three hours. |
| 7. | khrŷn<br>chûamoon | raw khuj kan maa dâj kîi<br>naathii lésw<br>How many minutes have<br>you been conversing?                         | raw khuj kan maa dâj<br>khrŷn chûamoon lésw<br>A half hour.       |

### d) Transformation Drill

#### Pattern 1

1. khun rúucàk kháw maa naan  
lésw  
 You've been knowing him  
 for a long time.
2. khun thamṇaan thŷinŷii maa  
naan lésw  
 You've been working here  
 for a long time.

#### Pattern 2

- khun rúucàk kháw maa naan  
lésw rǎkhráp  
 Have you been knowing  
 him for long?
- khun thamṇaan thŷinŷii maa  
naan lésw rǎkhráp  
 Have you been working  
 here long?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 3. khun rian phaasǎa thaj maa<br>naan léɛw<br>You've been studying<br>Thai for a long time.           | khun rian phaasǎa thaj maa<br>naan léɛw rǎkhráp<br>Have you been studying<br>Thai for long?           |
| 4. khun jùu thîinîi maa naan<br>léɛw<br>You've been living here<br>for a long time.                   | khun jùu thîinîi maa naan<br>léɛw rǎkhráp<br>Have you been living<br>here long?                       |
| 5. khun sâap ryâṇṇîi maa naan<br>léɛw<br>You've been knowing<br>about this matter<br>for a long time. | khun sâap ryâṇṇîi maa naan<br>léɛw rǎkhráp<br>Have you been knowing<br>about this matter for<br>long? |
| 6. khun jàak hǎn kháw maa naan<br>léɛw<br>You've been wanting to<br>see him for a long time.          | khun jàak hǎn kháw maa naan<br>léɛw rǎkhráp<br>Have you been wanting<br>to see him for long?          |
| 7. khun chōp kháw maa naan<br>léɛw<br>You've liked her for a<br>long time.                            | khun chōp kháw maa naan<br>léɛw rǎkhráp<br>Have you liked her long?                                   |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### e) Response Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. khun maa jùu myan̄thaj dâj naan lé̄sw rěkháp Have you been living in Thailand long?	phên̄ maa kháp I just came.
2. khun maa khooj phôm dâj naan lé̄sw rěkháp Have you been waiting for me long?	phên̄ maa kháp I just came.
3. khun maa rian phaasăa thaj dâj naan lé̄sw rěkháp Have you been studying Thai for long?	phên̄ maa kháp I just started.
4. khun rúucàk kháw maa naan lé̄sw rěkháp Have you been knowing him for long?	phên̄ rúucàk kháp I just met him.
5. khun rian nân̄sŷy lêmníi maa naan lé̄sw rěkháp Have you been reading this book long?	phên̄ rian kháp I just began.

### f) Expansion Drill

thammaj

thammaj lakhráp

thammaj thŷn̄ chát lakhráp

thammaj thŷn̄ chát jan̄nán lakhráp

thammaj thŷn̄ phŷut dâj chát jan̄nán lakhráp

thammaj thŷn̄ phŷut phaasăa thaj dâj chát jan̄nán lakhráp

thammaj kháw thŷn̄ phŷut phaasăa thaj dâj chát jan̄nán lakhráp



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### g) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- kháw phên maa myan thaj . thammaj kháw thýn phûut phaasǎa  
thaj dǎj chát janǎn lakhráp  
He just came to Thailand. How is that he can speak  
Thai so clearly?
- kháw mǎj chǎp aakaat rǎon . thammaj kháw thýn jǎak paj jùu  
myan thaj lakhráp  
He doesn't like hot weather. How is that he wants to  
go to Thailand?
- kháw mǎj khǎej maa rian thǎi ameerikaa . thammaj kháw thýn  
phûut phaasǎa ankrít dǎj dǐi lakhráp  
He has never studied in America. How is that he speaks  
English (so) well?
- kháw bòok wǎa kháw mǎj mǐi nǎen . thammaj kháw thýn sýy  
rót lakhráp  
He said he didn't have any money. How is it that he speaks  
buying a car?

### h) Substitution Drill

#### Cue

#### Pattern

thammaj (khun) (thýn) mǎj paj thamnaan

Why is it that you aren't going to work?

- phûut            thammaj khun thýn mǎj phûut  
Why is it that you don't talk?
- chǎp kháw      thammaj khun thýn mǎj chǎp kháw  
Why is that you don't like him?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

3. māj jāak jùu thammaj khun thýn māj jāak jùu wóochintān  
 wóochintān Why is it that you don't like to live  
 in Washington?
4. māj maa rian thammaj khun thýn māj maa rian nānsýy  
 nānsýy How is it that you aren't studying?
5. māj khāwcaj thammaj khun thýn māj khāwcaj  
 How does it happen that you don't understand?
6. māj khàp rót thammaj khun thýn māj khàp rót maa roonrian  
 maa roonrian Why is it that you don't drive to school?

### 1) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. rian maa kòon	thammaj khāw thýn phūut thaj dāj chāt How does it come about that he speaks Thai so well?	(phró) khāw khəej rian maa kòon Because he studied previously.
2. māj chōp aakàat nǎaw	thammaj khun thýn māj jāak paj noorawee How is that you don't want to go to Norway?	(phró) phǒm māj chōp aakàat nǎaw Because I don't like cold weather.
3. māj sabaaj	thammaj mýawaanníi khāw thýn māj maa thamnaan Why was it that he didn't come to work yesterday?	(phró) khāw māj sabaaj Because he was ill.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |    |  |  |   |
|----|--|--|---|
| 4. | khàp rót<br>mâj pen<br><br>Why isn't your wife<br>driving?   | thammaj phanrajaa khun<br>thýn mâj khàp rót<br><br>Because she doesn't<br>know how.                          | (phró) kháw khàp rót<br>mâj pen                                 |
| 5. | thaan<br>ráatchakaan<br>jàak hâj phǒm<br>rúu phaasǎa<br>thaj<br><br>Why did you have to<br>come to study Thai? | thammaj khun thýn tôn<br>maa rian phaasǎa thaj<br><br>Because the Govern-<br>ment wanted me to<br>know Thai. | (phró) thaan ráatcha-<br>kaan jàak hâj phǒm<br>rúu phaasǎa thaj |
| 6. | mâj wâan<br><br>Why didn't you take<br>your car to get it<br>repaired?   | thammaj khun thýn mâj<br>aw rót paj kêe<br><br>Because I wasn't<br>free.                                     | (phró) phǒm mâj wâan  |

### j) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- |    | <u>Question</u>  | <u>Response</u>   |  |
|----|--|---|--|
| 1. | kháw rian phaasǎa thaj jùu kǐi<br>pii<br><br>How many years did he study<br>Thai?    | kháw rian jùu nýn pii<br><br>He studied one year.                                       |  |
| 2. | khun pen thahǎan jùu kǐi pii<br><br>How many years were you<br>a soldier?            | phǒm pen thahǎan jùu sǎon pii<br><br>I was a soldier for two<br>years.                  |  |
| 3. | khun fan théep jùu kǐi chûamoon<br><br>How many hours did you listen<br>to the tape? | phǒm fan théep jùu khrýn<br>chûamoon<br><br>I listened to the tape<br>for half an hour. |  |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>4. khun phûut thoorasàp jùu<br/>naaŋ thâwraŋ<br/>How long did he talk on<br/>the telephone?</p>    | <p>kháw phûut thoorasàp jùu<br/>jîisîp hâa naathîi<br/>He talked 25 minutes<br/>on the phone.</p> |
| <p>5. kháw thamŋaan jùu thîi<br/>wianŋan kîi pii<br/>How many years did he<br/>work in Vientiane?</p> | <p>kháw thamŋaan jùu thîinân<br/>sǒŋ pii khryŋ<br/>He worked there two<br/>and a half years.</p>  |

### 23.4 COMPREHENSION EXERCISES (Listen to the passages and answer the questions.)

- a) mýa pii 1941 - thýŋ 1943 khun thoóm pen thahǎan jùu  
thîi ookinaawaa . kháw pen jùu sǒŋ pii, dǎawníi  
khun thoóm pen khâarâatchakaan krasuaŋ tàaŋ prathêet

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. khun thoóm khœj pen thahǎan máj	khœj
2. thîi nǎj	thîi ookinaawaa
3. pen jùu kîi pii	sǒŋ pii
4. tântèe pii khoosǒ araŋ thýŋ khoosǒ araŋ	1941 - 1943
5. dǎawníi kháw thamŋaan araŋ	kháw pen khâarâatchakaan krasuaŋ tàaŋprathêet

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- b) myâcháawníi khun prichaa paj talàat . kháw phóp phýan  
thíi talàat . kháw khuj kàp phýan jùu sǒɔŋ chûamoon

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. myâcháawníi khun prichaa phóp khraj	kháw phóp phýan
2. thínǎj	thíi talàat
3. kháw khuj kàp phýan jùu naan thâwràj	kháw khuj kàp phýan jùu sǒɔŋ chûamoon

- c) místə samít thamnaan thíi krasuanṭaan prathêet maa  
dâj lǎaj pii léew . kháw khœj paj jùu lǎaj prathêet .  
kháw khœj paj pen kɔŋsǔn thíi chianmàj jùu sǎam  
pii . weelaaníi , kháw jùu thíi wochintân

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. místə samít thamnaan thíi krasuan ṭaanprathêet maa dâj kǐi pii léew	lǎaj pii léew
2. kháw khœj paj jùu ṭaan prathêet mǎj	khœj kháw khœj paj jùu lǎaj prathêet
3. kháw khœj paj jùu myanṭhaj mǎj	khœj , kháw khœj paj pen kɔŋsǔn thíi chianmàj
4. kháw pen kɔŋsǔn jùu thíi chianmàj kǐi pii	kháw pen jùu sǎam pii

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 23.5 EXERCISES

- a) Different students will find out how long other students have been doing different kinds of activities. The following are some examples: (1) living here, (2) learning Thai, (3) married, (4) playing some sport, (5) knowing how to do something, such as driving a car, etc.
- b) One student will give a short biography of himself. Other students will question him about certain parts of it, in particular how long some parts of it lasted (egs. how long he was in the armed forces, etc.).
- c) One student says he went some particular place. A second student asks him why he went there. When the first student gives a reason, the second one asks him why he didn't go some other place. The first student gives his reasons.

### 23.6 VOCABULARY

ookinaawaa	Okinawa
chát	plain(ly), clear(ly), distinct(ly)
jàaŋ mâak	at most
jàaŋ nǒɔj	at least
lít	liter
maa kǝn	previously
noɔrawee	Norway
phêŋ	just
thýŋ	that, so, then, if it comes to the point that

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### LESSON TWENTY-FOUR

#### 24.0 BASIC EPISODE: Part I

khun thoomás kamlan rian phaasǎa thaj jùu thǎi roonrian  
sǎon phaasǎa khǎon krasuan tǎanprathêet . khǎw rian maa  
dǎj sǎon dyan léew . khǎw ca rian ìik sìi dyan , léew  
ca paj myan̄thaj . khǎw ca paj jùu myan̄thaj jàan̄nǎoj  
raaw sǎon pii, jàan̄mǎak sìi pii . khǎw ca phaa phanraja  
lé lǔuklǔuk khǎon khǎw paj dǔaj . khǎw kà wǎa khǎw ca  
òok càak woohintǎn wanthǎi sìp karákadaakhom, ca khàp  
rót paj bǎan phǎomêe khǎw thǎi rát pensilweenia . khǎw  
ca phák jùu thǎinǎn hǎa wan, léew khǎw ca khàp rót paj  
njuhók . khǎw ca lon̄ rya thǎi njuhók lé paj khǎn thǎi  
farǎnsèet . càak farǎnsèet, khǎw ca bin paj room,  
eethén, teecharaan, niw delhi lé krun̄thêep. khǎw  
ca mǎj wé thǎaw teecharaan lé niw delhi tè khǎw ca  
wé thǎaw room sìi wan lé eethén hǎa wan . khǎw kà  
wǎa khǎw ca thǎy krun̄thêep raawraaw wanthǎi n̄y sǎnhǎa.

#### 24.1 QUESTIONS ON THE BASIC EPISODE

1. khun thoomás kamlan rian phaasǎa thaj jùu thǎinǎj
2. khǎw rian maa dǎj naan thǎwràj léew
3. khǎw ca rian paj ìik kǎi dyan
4. léew khǎw ca paj nǎj
5. khǎw ca paj jùu myan̄thaj kǎi pii
6. khǎw ca phaa khraj paj dǔaj

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

7. kháw kà ca òok càak wòochintân mýaràj
8. kháw ca paj nǎj kòon . paj janṇaj
9. thammaj kháw tōon paj thīi niw jók
10. kháw ca paj khýn rya thīinǎj
11. càak farànsèet , kháw ca paj myanṇ thaj dooj araj
12. kháw ca wé thīaw thīinǎj bān
13. kháw kà ca thýn myanṇ thaj mýaràj

### 24.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. sǒon dyan, myanṇ thaj	kháw ca rian ìik <u>sǒon dyan</u> , lésw ca paj <u>myanṇ thaj</u> He'll study for two more months, then go to Thailand.
2. sǐp wan, myanṇ juan	kháw ca rian ìik <u>sǐp wan</u> , lésw ca paj <u>myanṇ juan</u> He'll study for ten more days, then go to Viet Nam.
3. hòk aathít chianṇmàj	kháw ca rian ìik <u>hòk aathít</u> , lésw ca paj <u>chianṇmàj</u> He'll study for six more weeks, then go to Chiangmai.
4. nýn pii, phamāa	kháw ca rian ìik <u>nýn pii</u> , lésw ca paj <u>phamāa</u> He'll study for one more year, then go to Burma.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

5. sǒŋ sàpdaa      kháw ca rian ìik sǒŋ sàpdaa, lésw ca paj laaw  
    He'll study for two more weeks, then  
    go to Laos.
6. nỳn pii, sawít      kháw ca rian ìik nỳn pii, lésw ca paj sawít  
    He'll study for one more year, then  
    go to Switzerland.

### b) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. 3 aathít	khun ca rian ìik kǐi aathít How many more weeks will you study?	ìik sǎam aathít Three more weeks.
2. 4 pii	khun ca thamŋaan ìik kǐi pii How many more years will you work?	ìik sìi pii Four more years.
3. 10 pii	khun ca pen khâarâatchakaan ìik kǐi pii How many more years will you be a civil servant?	ìik sǐp pii Ten more years.
4. 15 naathii	khun ca jyn khooj kháw ìik kǐi naathii How many more minutes will you wait for him?	ìik sìphâa naathii Fifteen more minutes.
5. 3 wan	khun ca thǎaw ìik kǐi wan How many more days will you be on vacation?	ìik sǎam wan Three more days.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

6. 2 pii                      khun ca pracam thîi myan thaj                      ðik sǝon pii  
                                  ðik kîi pii  
                                  How many more years  
                                  will you be stationed  
                                  in Thailand?    Two more years.

### c) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. nỳn pii, 2 pii	jàan nóoj <u>nỳn pii</u> , jáan mâak <u>sǝon pii</u>
2. 20 naathii, 30 naathii	jàan nóoj <u>jîisíp naathii</u> , jáan mâak <u>sǝamsíp naathii</u>
3. sǝon dyan, sîi dyan	jàan nóoj <u>sǝon dyan</u> , jáan mâak <u>sîi dyan</u>
4. nỳn wan, cèt wan	jàan nóoj <u>nỳn wan</u> , jáan mâak <u>cèt wan</u>
5. sǝon aathít, sǎam aathít	jàan nóoj <u>sǝon aathít</u> , jáan mâak <u>sǎam aathít</u>
6. 2 chûamoon, 3 chûamoon	jàan nóoj <u>sǝon chûamoon</u> , jáan mâak <u>sǎam chûamoon</u>

### d) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. wan thîi sîp karákadaa	kháw ca òok càak wǝochintân wantthîi thâwràj  On what date will he leave Washington?	kháw kà (wâa kháw) ca òok càak wǝochintân wan thîi sîp karákadaa  He estimates he will leave on July 10.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>2. raaw dyan nâa    phyân khun ca maa<br/>                                   thŷŋ mŷaràj<br/>                                   When will your<br/>                                   friend come?</p>           | <p>kháw kà (wâa kháw) ca<br/>                                   maa thŷŋ raaw dyan nâa<br/>                                   He estimates he will<br/>                                   arrive next month.</p>   |
| <p>3. wancan nâa        khun ca paj aw rôt<br/>                                   mŷaràj<br/>                                   When will you go<br/>                                   get the car?</p>            | <p>phôm kàa (wâa phôm) ca<br/>                                   paj aw wancan nâa<br/>                                   I plan to go get the<br/>                                   car next Monday.</p>   |
| <p>4. raaw ìik sǎam    khun ca bòok kháw<br/>                                   sǐi wan            mŷaràj<br/>                                   When will you<br/>                                   tell him?</p> | <p>phôm kà (wâa phôm) ca<br/>                                   bòok kháw raaw ìik sǎam<br/>                                   sǐi wan<br/>                                   I plan to tell him in<br/>                                   three or four days.</p> |

e) Combination Drill    (Combine sentences 1 and 2 into 3.)

Sentences 1 and 2

Sentence 3

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>1. kháw ca kháp rôt<br/>            kháw ca paj njujók</p>       | <p>kháw ca kháp rôt paj njujók<br/>                                   He'll drive to New York.</p>           |
| <p>2. kháw ca dǎen...<br/>            kháw ca paj roonrian</p>      | <p>kháw ca dǎen paj roonrian<br/>                                   He'll walk to school.</p>                |
| <p>3. kháw ca lon rya<br/>            kháw ca paj loondoön</p>      | <p>kháw ca lon rya paj loondoön<br/>                                   He'll take a boat to London.</p>      |
| <p>4. kháw ca khŷn rôtmee<br/>            kháw ca paj ajúthajaa</p> | <p>kháw ca khŷn rôtmee paj ajúthajaa<br/>                                   He'll go to Ayuthaya by bus.</p> |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 5.   kháw ca nân ryabin<br>kháw ca paj myan thaj  | kháw ca nân ryabin paj myan thaj<br>He'll take a plane to Thailand.   |
| 6.   kháw ca khÿn rót faj<br>kháw ca paj chianmàj | kháw ca khÿn rót faj paj chianmàj<br>He'll take a train to Chiangmai. |

### f) Substitution Drill

- | <u>Cue</u>                        | <u>Pattern</u>  |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| 1.   roonrsem eerawan, hâa<br>wan | kháw ca phák jùu thîi <u>roonrsem</u><br><u>eerawan hâa wan</u><br>He'll stay at the Erawan Hotel<br>for five days. |
| 2.   bân phÿan, sŏn aathít        | kháw ca phák jùu thîi <u>bân phÿan</u><br><u>sŏn aathít</u><br>He'll stay at his friend's<br>house for two weeks.   |
| 3.   chaa j thalee, nÿn dyan      | kháw ca phák jùu thîi <u>chaa j thalee</u><br><u>nÿn dyan</u><br>He'll stay at the beach<br>for a month.            |
| 4.   parîit, 4 chûamoon           | kháw ca phák jùu thîi <u>parîit sîi</u><br><u>chûamoon</u><br>He'll stay in Paris for four<br>hours.                |
| 5.   bân phŏm, nÿn pii            | kháw ca phák jùu thîi <u>bân phŏm</u><br><u>nÿn pii</u><br>He'll stay at my house for<br>one year.                  |

6. thfinfi, sãam naathii khaw ca phak juu thfinfi sãam naathii  
He'll stay here three minutes.

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. māj wé	khun ca wé thīaw thīi room rýplàaw Are you going to stop in Rome?	plàaw khráp No.
2. wé	khun ca māj wé thīaw thīi teeharan rýkhráp Aren't you going to stop in Teheran?	wé khráp Yes, I am.
3. māj wé	khun ca wé thīi bâan phǝm rýplàaw Are you going to stop at my house?	plàaw khráp No.
4. wé	khun ca māj wé thīi hōŋkoŋ rýkhráp Aren't you stopping at Hong Kong?	wé khráp Yes, I am.
5. māj wé	khun ca wé thīaw thīi jīipùn rýplàaw Are you stopping in Japan?	plàaw khráp No.
6. wé	khun ca māj wé thīi haawaaj rýkhráp Aren't you stopping at Hawaii?	wé khráp Yes, I am.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### h) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. rya, njujóok, farànsèet	kháw ca loŋ <u>rya</u> thîi <u>njujóok</u> paj khÿn thîi <u>farànsèet</u> He'll get on a boat in New York and get off in France.
2. khrÿanbin, wóochintân, krunthêep	kháw ca khÿn <u>khrÿanbin</u> thîi <u>wóochintân</u> lé loŋ thîi <u>krunthêep</u> He'll get on a plane in Washington and get off in Bangkok.
3. rótfaj, ajúthajaa, chianmàj	kháw ca khÿn <u>rótfaj</u> thîi <u>ajúthajaa</u> lé loŋ thîi <u>chianmàj</u> He'll get on the train in Ayuthaya and get off in Chiangmai.
4. ryabaj, pàaknám, baanpuu	kháw ca loŋ <u>ryabaj</u> thîi <u>pàaknám</u> lé khÿn thîi <u>baanpuu</u> He'll get on a sail boat at Paknam and get off at Bangpu.
5. thésksîi, hŭalamphoon, prajsanii klaan	kháw ca khÿn <u>thésksîi</u> thîi <u>hŭalamphoon</u> lé loŋ thîi <u>prajsanii</u> <u>klaan</u> He'll get in a taxi at Hualampong (Station) and get off at the Main Post Office.
6. ryacâan, thâapracan, sirirâat	kháw ca loŋ <u>ryacâan</u> thîi <u>thâapracan</u> lé khÿn thîi <u>sirirâat</u> He'll get on a rented boat at Pracan landing and get off at Siriraj.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 1) Sentence Combination Drill

#### Sentence 1 and 2

1. kháw cam dâj  
kháw mii phýan khon thaj  
khon nyn

2. kháw cam dâj  
khun phák jùu thîinǎj

3. kháw cam dâj  
khun phûut wâa araj

4. kháw cam dâj  
khun khœj paj myan̄thaj

5. kháw cam dâj  
kháw phóp khun thîi  
loondoon

6. kháw cam dâj  
khun pen khâarâatchakaan  
krâsuan̄ tãan̄ prathêet

#### Sentence 3

kháw cam dâj wâa (kháw) mii phýan  
khon thaj khon nyn  
He remembered he had a Thai  
friend.

kháw cam dâj wâa khun phák jùu  
thîinǎj  
He remembered where you were  
staying.

kháw cam dâj wâa khun phûut wâa araj  
He remembered what you said.

kháw cam dâj wâa khun khœj paj  
myan̄thaj  
He remembered that you had  
been in Thailand.

kháw cam dâj wâa kháw phóp khun  
thîi loondoon  
He remembered he met you  
in London.

kháw cam dâj wâa khun pen  
khâarâatchakaan krâsuan̄ tãan̄  
prathêet  
He remembered that you  
were a State Department  
civil servant.

24.3 BASIC EPISODE: Part II

khun thoomás maa thǎy krunthēep mǎa wan thǎi sǎw  
sǐnhǎakhom . khǎw phák jǔu thǎi roongreem imphiirīan  
tron sǎw rǔam rýdii . phanrajaa lé lǔuklǔuk khǎw  
khǎw chǎp roongreem níi mǎak phǎw jǔu klǎj sathǎanthūt ,  
ráanaahǎan lé ráan khǎajkhǎw . thǎi roongreem mii  
sǎ wǎajnáam. khǎw wǎaj náam kan thúkwan

khun thoomás maa jǔu myan thaj dǎj sǎam wan . khǎw  
cam dǎj wǎa khǎw mii phyǎn khon thaj khon nyn . phyǎn  
khonníi khǎw rian jǔu kǎp khǎw thǎi mahǎawítthajalaj  
jeel mǎa sǐp pii thǎi léew . khǎw khǎw rian jǔu chán  
diaw kǎp phyǎn khonníi lǎaj pii . khǎw chǎp kan mǎak  
tè khun thoomás mǎj sǎap wǎa phyǎn khǎw jǔu thǎi nǎj .  
khǎw cam dǎj wǎa phyǎn khonníi chǎy khun sǔnthoon  
naamsakun mahǎasák . wannyn khǎw pǎet sǎmut thoorasǎp .  
khǎw phǎp chǎy khun sǔnthoon . khǎw thoo paj hǎa khun  
sǔnthoon thǎi bǎan . khun sǔnthoon díicaj mǎak . khǎw  
cheen khun thoomás lé khrǎpkhrua paj thaen khǎaw thǎi  
bǎan . khǎw maa ráp khun thoomás lé khrǎpkhrua thǎi  
hooten lé phaa paj bǎan khǎw . bǎan khun sǔnthoon sǎaj  
mǎak . khun sǔnthoon jǎak hǎj khun thoomás lé khrǎpkhrua  
phák jǔu kǎp khǎw . khǎw chuan khun thoomas tè khun  
thoomas mǎj jǎak rǎpkuan khun sǔnthoon.



### 24.4 QUESTIONS ON BASIC EPISODE: Part II

1. khun thoomás maa thǎn krunthêep mǎaràj
2. kháw phák jùu thǎinǎj
3. khrǎopkhrua khǎon khun thoomás chǎop roongræm thǎi  
kháw phák jùu mǎj . phró araj
4. khun thoomás khǎej mǐi phǎan thaj mǎj
5. kháw rúucàk kan dǎj janraj
6. khun thoomás sǎap mǎj wǎa phǎan khǎon kháw jùu thǎinǎj
7. kháw cam chǎy lé naamsakun khǎon phǎan kháw dǎj mǎj
8. kháw phóp khun sǎnthoon dǎj janraj
9. khun sǎnthoon dǐicaj mǎj
10. kháw chǎen khun thoomás lé khrǎopkhrua paj bǎan rýplàaw
11. khun thoomás paj bǎan khun sǎnthoon janraj
12. khun sǎnthoon jǎak hǎj khun thoomás lé khrǎopkhrua phák  
jùu kǎp kháw mǎj
13. kháw tham janraj
14. thammaj khun thoomás thǎn mǎj phák bǎan khun sǎnthoon

### 24.5 EXERCISES

One student will describe a travel experience he has had using the basic episode as a model. Other students will ask questions about it.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 24.6 VOCABULARY

eethén	Athens
baanpuu	Bangpu (name of a tambon)
chaaj	edge, rim, border
chaajthalee	the beach
diicaj	to be glad
haawaaaj	Hawaii
hônkon	Hong Kong
jeel	Yale (University)
kà	to guess, estimate
mahǎasàk	Mahasak (last name)
niw delhii	New Delhi
pàaknáam	Pakram (name of an Amphoe)
pensilweenia	Pennsylvania
pracam	to be stationed
rópkuuan	to trouble, bother
ryabaj	sail boat
ryacâaŋ	rented boat
sàpdaa / sàppadaa	week (elegant usage)
sà wâajnáam	swimming pool
sawít	Switzerland
sirirâat	Siriraj, name of the hospital in Thonburi
sŭnthoon	Sunthorn (male first name)
teeharaan	Teheran
thalee	sea
thoomás	Thomas
wé	to stop in, over

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### LESSON TWENTY-FIVE

#### 25.0 BASIC DIALOG: Making an Acquaintance

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| A: pen araj paj khráp<br>mâj sabaaj rě  | What's the matter with you? Aren't you well?   |
| B: plàaw khráp, mâj dâj pen araj<br>nuân noon<br>mŷakhyynnŷi paj naanlŷan<br>lœej noon dŷk paj nœoj                             | Nothing's the matter.<br>I'm sleepy.<br>Last night I went to a party so I got to bed a little late.                  |
| A: sanùk máj khráp  | Was it fun? (Did you have a good time?)  |
| B: sanùk mâak   | Yes, it was. (I certainly did.)  |
| A: phóp khraj bâan  | Who did you meet there?<br>(Who was there?)  |
| B: lăaj khon khráp<br>phôm dâj phŷan màj lăaj khon<br>ôo, phôm phóp khonthaj khon<br>nyŋ<br>kháw bœok wâa pen phŷan kàw<br>khun | A lot of people.<br>I made a lot of new friends.<br>Oh, I ran into a Thai.<br>He said he was an old friend of yours. |
| A: kháw chŷy araj   | What was his name?   |
| B: phôm cam mâj dâj<br>kháw hâj naambât phôm<br>tè phôm lyym aw maa   | I can't remember.<br>He gave me his card, but I forgot to bring it.  |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 25.1 VOCABULARY NOTES

- a) pen araj (paj) 'What's the matter (with you)?' is the normal way to inquire about what pain or ailment someone has.

1. If one has some kind of disease, he may respond as follows:

phǒm pen wàt 'I have a cold.'  
phǒm pen khâj 'I have a fever.'  
phǒm pen khâjwàt 'I have the flu.'

Or he may respond as follows:

phǒm pen rôok bít 'I have dysentery.'  
phǒm pen rôok sâjtan 'I have appendicitis.'  
phǒm pen rôok àhiwaa 'I have cholera.'

2. If one has an ache or pain, he will give its location:

phǒm pùat hǔa (Lit. I ache in the head.)  
'I have a headache.'  
phǒm pùat thóon (Lit. I ache in the area of the  
intestines.)  
'I have a stomach ache.'

- b) sanùk means 'to be amusing, to be fun, to have a good time, etc.' It may have a place, thing, person, or activity as subject.
- c) dâj has the meaning 'get, obtain, procure' when used as the main verb, as in the sentence phǒm dâj phýan māj lăaj khon 'I made a lot of new friends.'
- d) There are several ways to indicate 'lateness' in Thai. The choice is determined by the time of day referred to. Observe the following chart:

## THAI BASIC COURSE

Time of Day	Early	Late
Morning	cháaw tèe cháaw	sǎaj
Late in the day	wan tèe wan	khâm
Evening	hǔakhâm tèe hǔakhâm	dỳk
Anytime	rew	cháa

- e) When tèe (often ta) occurs before cháaw, wan, etc., it indicates that the speaker considers the earliness to be unexpected or unusual.

- f) b̀ya means 'to be bored'; n̂ab̀ya means 'boring'. Observe the following examples:

phǒm b̀ya (kháw, duu n̂anŝy, etc.) 'I'm bored (with him, studying, etc.).'

kháw tham ĥj phǒm b̀ya (He causes me to be bored.)  
'He bores me.'

n̂an̂ r̂yan̂n̂i n̂ab̀ya 'This movie is boring.'

- g) saǹuk means 'to have fun, have a good time, enjoy oneself' or 'to be fun, entertaining'. Observe the following examples:

kháw saǹuk 'He's having a good time.'

tham̂aan tĥin̂n̂i m̂j saǹuk 'Working here is not fun.'

kháw pen khon saǹuk 'He's a fun person.'

- h) læj 'so' is a word used to connect conditional sentences with result sentences, thus

kháw pen khon nâabyà raw læj mâj jàak khuj kakháw  
'He's a dull person so we don't want to talk with him.'

- i) hâj 'to give' is followed by the object and then by the recipient of the object.

kháw hâj nânsýy phǒm 'He gave a book to me.'

## 25.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

### a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. kháw maa thamnaan sǎaj thúkwan tèe wanníí kháw  
maa { tèe cháaw  
          ta  
He comes to work late everyday, but today he came early.
2. kháw kláp bâan khâm thúkwan tèe wanníí kháw kláp  
bâan { tèe wan  
          ta  
He goes home late everyday, but today he went home early.
3. kháw khâw noon dýk thúk khyyn tèe khyynníí kháw  
noon { tèe hǔakhâm  
          ta  
She goes to bed late every night, but tonight she went to bed early.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

4. kháw maa cháa samǎe tɛɛ wanníí maa rew.

He always comes late, but today he came early.

5. khruu khon nán òok càak hōŋ cháa samǎe tɛɛ wanníí  
kháw òok càak hōŋ rew.

That teacher always comes out of the room  
late, but today she came out early.

### b) Transformation Drill

#### Pattern 1

1. kháw khâw noon thīaŋ khyyn  
He went to bed at midnight.

2. kháw thaان aahǎankhām weelaa  
hāa thūm  
She ate dinner at 11 p.m.

3. kháw tỳyn noon tīi hāa  
He got up at 5 a.m.

4. kháw maa roonriian weelaa moon  
cháaw khryŋ  
He come to school at 7:30 a.m.

5. kháw bòok wāa kháw ca klàp  
maa wan thīi sīp tɛɛ kháw  
klàp maa wan thīi hāa  
He said he'd return on the  
tenth, but he returned on  
the fifth.

#### Pattern 2

- kháw khâw noon dỳk.  
He went to bed late.

- kháw thaان dỳk.  
She ate late.

- kháw tỳyn noon cháaw  
He got up early.

- kháw maa roonriian tɛɛ  
cháaw  
He came to school early.

- kháw klàp maa rew.

He came back early.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>6. kháw khâw noon dỳk thúk khyyn<br/>tèe khyynnîi kháw khâw noon<br/>weelaa sǝon thûm</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He goes to bed late every<br/>night, but tonight he went<br/>to bed at 8 p.m.</p> | <p>kháw khâw noon tèe hǔakhâm</p> <p style="text-align: right;">He went to bed early.</p> |
|---|---|

### c) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. kháw pen araj paj What's the matter with him?	kháw mâj sabaaj He's ill.
2. khun pen araj paj  What's the matter with you?	phǎm pùat , sǐisà { hǔa I have a headache.
3. khun cim pen araj What's the matter with Jim?	kháw pen wàt He has a cold.
4. phanrajaa khun pen araj paj What's the matter with your wife?	kháw pen khâj She has a fever.
5. khun pen araj paj What's the matter with you?	phǎm mâj dâj pen araj. Nothing.
6. khun pen araj(paj) What's the matter with you?	phǎm pen khâjwàt I have the flu.
7. kháw pen araj (paj) What's the matter with him?	kháw pen rôok bìt He has dysentery.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>8. lûukchaaj khun pen araj(paj)<br/>         What's the matter with<br/>         your son?</p>    | <p>kháw pùat thóon<br/>         He has a belly ache.</p>   |
| <p>9. khun phôo khun pen araj(paj)<br/>         What's the matter with<br/>         your father?</p> | <p>kháw mâj sabaaj mâak<br/>         kháw pen rôok àhiwaa<br/>         He's very ill. He has<br/>         cholera.</p> |

### d) Substitution Drill

#### Cue

#### Pattern

- |                      |   |
|----------------------|---|
|                      | <p>naanlîan sanuk máj<br/>         Was the party fun?</p>                     |
| 1. nánsyǎ            | <p><u>nánsyǎ</u> sanuk máj<br/>         Is the book amusing?</p>              |
| 2. nǎn               | <p><u>nǎn</u> sanuk máj<br/>         Was the movie fun?</p>                   |
| 3. krunthêep         | <p><u>krunthêep</u> sanuk máj<br/>         Is Bangkok fun?</p>                |
| 4. rian phaasǎa thaj | <p><u>rian phaasǎa thaj</u> sanuk máj<br/>         Is studying Thai fun?</p>  |
| 5. jùu thîinîi       | <p><u>jùu thîinîi</u> sanuk máj<br/>         Is it enjoyable living here?</p> |
| 6. khuj kàp kháw     | <p><u>khuj kàp kháw</u> sanuk máj<br/>         Is talking to her fun?</p>     |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### e) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. very	naan sanùk máj Is the work amusing?	sanùk mâak Very amusing.
2. not at all	naan sanùk máj Is the work amusing?	mâj sanùk ləəj Not at all.
3. very	nánsŷy lêmnií sanùk máj Is this book amusing?	sanùk mâak Very amusing.
4. not at all	jùu thîinîi sanùk máj Is living here fun?	mâj sanùk ləəj Not at all.
5. very	rian phaasăa thaj sanùk máj Is studying Thai fun?	sanùk mâak It's a lot of fun.
6. not at all	khuj kàp kháw sanùk máj Is talking to her fun?	mâj sanùk ləəj Not at all.
7. very	kháw phûut sanùk máj Is what he says amusing?	sanùk mâak Very amusing.
8. not at all	năŋ sanùk máj Was the movie fun?	mâj sanùk ləəj Not at all.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### f) Lexical Drill

#### Pattern 1

1. naan māj sanùk  
The working isn't amusing.
2. thamnaan thīnīi māj sanùk  
Working here isn't enjoyable.
3. nǎn ryanīi māj sanùk  
This movie isn't amusing.
4. nānsyǎ lēmīi māj sanùk  
This book isn't amusing.
5. rian phaasǎa thaj māj sanùk  
Studying Thai isn't fun.

#### Pattern 2

1. naan nāabǎa  
The work's dull.
2. thamnaan thīnīi nāabǎa  
Working here is boring.
3. nǎn ryanīi nāabǎa  
This movie is dull.
4. nānsyǎ lēmīi nāabǎa  
This book is boring.
5. rian phaasǎa thaj nāabǎa  
Studying Thai is boring.

### g) Lexical Drill

#### Pattern 1

1. raw sanùk  
We're having fun.
2. myākhyyn thúk khon sanùk  
Last night everybody  
had fun.
3. phyan phǒm sanùk  
My friend is having a good time.
4. phǒm sanùk  
I'm having fun.

#### Pattern 2

1. raw māj bǎa  
We are not (being) bored.
2. myākhyynnīi māj mīi khraj bǎa  
Last night nobody found  
it dull.
3. phyan phǒm māj bǎa  
My friend isn't bored.
4. phǒm māj bǎa  
I'm not being bored.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### h) Lexical Drill

#### Pattern 1

1. raw mâj sanùk  
We're not enjoying ourselves.

#### Pattern 2

- raw b̀ya  
We are bored.
- thúk khon b̀ya  
Everybody is being bored.

2. mâj mii khraj sanùk  
Nobody's having fun.

3. khun cœn mâj sanùk  
John is not enjoying himself.

- khun cœn b̀ya  
John is finding it dull.

4. phǒm mâj sanùk  
I'm not having a good time.

- phǒm b̀ya  
I'm being bored.

### 1) Substitution Drill

#### Cue

#### Pattern

kháw pen khon sanùk  
He's an amusing person.

1. phyân khun khonnán phyân khun khonnán pen khon sanùk  
That friend of yours is an amusing person.

2. khun praphâat khun praphâat pen khon sanùk  
Mr. Prapas is an amusing person.

3. khun phôo phǒm khun phôo phǒm pen khon sanùk  
My father is an amusing person.

4. khun khun pen khon sanùk  
You are an amusing person.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

5. nákrían màj khonnán      nákrían màj khonnán pen khon sanùk  
That new student is an amusing person.

### j) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. mýa khyynníi phǒm paj naanlǎan lǎej noon dýk paj nõoj  
Last night I went to a party, so I got to bed late.
2. kháw thǎaw mâak (kháw) lǎej mâj sabaaj  
He goes out a lot, so he's not well.
3. kháw riíp paj myanthaj (kháw) lǎej mâj mii weelaa  
wé thǎaw júróop  
He was in such a hurry to get to Thailand, that he didn't have time to stop off in Europe.
4. phǒm khít wâa khun sâap léew (phǒm) lǎej mâj dâj  
bòok khun  
I thought you already knew, so I didn't tell you.
5. phǒm riíp òok càak bâan (phǒm) lǎej lyym aw nǎen maa  
I left home in such a hurry, that I forgot to bring any money.
6. thǎawníi mâj mii thǎicòotrót phǒm lǎej tǎon maa rótme  
There's no place to park around here, so I had to take the bus.
7. wanníi, phanrajaa phǒm tǎon cháj rót phǒm lǎej tǎon  
maa thǎeksíi  
Today my wife had to use the car, so I had to come by taxi.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

8. kháw pen khon nâabyà raw læj mâj jaàk khuj kàp kháw  
He's such a dull person that we don't want to  
talk with him.

9. wanní phanrajaa ka lûukphǒm paj thîaw kan phǒm læj  
tǒn jùu bâan khon diaw  
Today my wife and children went out, so I had  
to stay home alone.

10. phûujǐn khonnán khít wâa khun tènnaan léew (kháw) læj  
mâj jaak paj thîaw kàp khun  
That woman thought you were married, so she didn't  
want to go out with you.

11. kháw phûut phaasǎa ankrít mâj dâj phǒm læj tǒn  
phûut phaasaathaj kàp kháw  
She doesn't speak English, so I must talk Thai to her.

12. phǒm wé bâan phýan læj klàp bâan cháa paj nǒj  
I stopped at a friend's house, so I got home late.

k) Transformation Drill (Make a statement expressing what is  
in the conversational exchange using  
læj.)

### Pattern 1 and 2

1. sǒmsàk: khun sawàt, thammaj khun  
thýn noon dýk paj  
Why did you go to  
bed so late?

sawàt: phró phǒm paj naanlián  
Because I went to  
a party.

### Pattern 3

khun sawàt paj naanlián  
kháw læj noon dýk paj nǒj  
Somsak went to a party  
so he went to bed late.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

2. sǒmsàk: thammaj khun coon thýn  
mâj sabaaj

Why isn't John well?

- sawàt: phró kháw thaان mâak paj  
nòoj

Because he ate  
too much.

- khun coon thaان mâak paj  
nòoj kháw læej mâj sabaaj

John ate too much,  
so he isn't well.

3. sǒmsàk: khun sawàt, thammaj khun  
mâj wé thîaw júroòp

Why didn't you  
stop in Europe?

- sawàt: phró phǒm mâj mii weelaa

Because I didn't  
have time.

- khun sawàt mâj mii weelaa  
kháw læej mâj dâj wé thîaw  
júroòp.

Sawat didn't have time,  
so he didn't stop off  
in Europe.

4. sǒmsàk: thammaj khun coon maa  
rótmee

Why did John come  
by bus?

- sawàt: phró kháw khàprót mâj pen

Because he can't drive.

- khun coon khàprót mâj pen  
læej tǒn maa rótmee.

John can't drive, so  
he came by bus.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

5. sǒmsàk: khun sawàt, thammaj khun  
thýn phûut phaasǎa aṅkrít  
kàp kháw

Why do you speak  
English with them?

sawàt: phró kháw phûut phaasǎa  
thaj mǎj pen

Because they can't  
speak Thai.

kháw phûut phaasǎa thaj  
mǎj pen khun sawàt lǎej  
tǒn phûut phaasǎa aṅkrít  
ka kháw

They can't speak Thai,  
so Sawat has to speak  
English with them.

6. sǒmsàk: thammaj khun cim mǎj  
chǒp phûujǐn khonnán  
Why doesn't Jim  
like that woman?

sawàt: phró phûujǐn khonnán  
mǎj sǎaj

Because that woman  
isn't pretty.

phûujǐn khonnán mǎj sǎaj  
khun cim lǎej mǎj chǒp  
kháw

That woman isn't pretty,  
so Jim doesn't like her.

7. sǒmsàk: khun prichaa khráp,  
thammaj khun thýn mǎj  
khâwcaj la khráp

Why didn't you  
understand?

sawàt: phró phǒm mǎj dǎj faṅ

Because I didn't  
listen.

khun prichaa mǎj dǎj faṅ  
kháw lǎej mǎj khâwcaj

Pricha didn't listen,  
so he didn't understand.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

8. sǒmsàk: khun sawàt khráp,  
mǎkhyynní, thammaj  
khun thýn ríip klàp  
la khráp  
Why were you in such  
a hurry to leave last  
night, Sawat?

sawàt: phró phǒm byà	mǎkhyynní khun sawàt byà kháw <u>lǎej</u> ríip klàp
Because I was bored.	Last night Sawat was bored, so he left in a hurry.

### 1) Substitution Drill

#### Cue

#### Pattern

kháw hâj naambàt phǒm  
He gave me his card.

1. nánsǎy lêm níí      kháw hâj nánsǎy lêm níí phǒm  
He gave me this book.

2. nǎen      kháw hâj nǎen phǒm  
He gave me some money.

3. klǎnthàajrûup      kháw hâj klǎnthàajrûup phǒm  
He gave me a camera.

4. wítthajú      kháw hâj wítthajú phǒm  
He gave me a radio.

5. bæe thoorasàp      kháw hâj bæe thoorasàp phǒm  
She gave me her telephone number.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

6. rûup                      kháw hâj rûup phǒm  
                                    She gave me a picture.
7. pàakaa                   kháw hâj pàakaa phǒm  
                                    They gave me a pen.
8. samùt                    kháw hâj samùt phǒm  
                                    They gave me a notebook.

### m) Substitution Drill

#### Cue

#### Pattern

- phǒm dâj phyân màj lǎaj khon.  
I made many new friends.
1. nán̄sǔy                    phǒm dâj nán̄sǔy lǎaj lêm  
                                    I got many books.
2. nán̄sǔy diidi              phǒm dâj nán̄sǔy diidi lǎaj lêm  
                                    I procured many good books.
3. n̄een (róoj)              phǒm dâj n̄een lǎaj róoj  
                                    I earned many hundred (baht).
4. naalikaa                phǒm dâj naalikaa lǎaj ryan  
                                    I obtained several watches.
5. rûup                      phǒm dâj rûup lǎaj baj  
                                    I got many pictures.
6. raanwan (jàan)          phǒm dâj raanwan lǎaj jàan  
                                    I earned many prizes.

.....

- n) Response Drill (Give negative answers to the questions.)

413

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 25.3 EXERCISES

- a) One student asks another what is the matter with him. The second responds with some type of ailment.
- b) One student asks another whether he considers certain people, places, things, or activities to be amusing or fun. The second responds according to his opinion. The questions may be specific (the person you met at the party last night, etc.) or they may be general (learning Thai, etc.)
- c) Student A will ask Student B why he did or didn't do something (ex: Why did you go to bed late last night?). Student B will give a reason (ex: Because I went to a party). Student C will pretend he didn't understand and will ask Student A what was said (ex: Excuse me, I didn't understand. What did he say?). Student A will tell him. Use the following examples as a model:

Student A: mǎkhyǎnnǐi, thammaj khun thǎy noon dǎk paj

Student B: phǎo phóm paj ñaanlǎan

Student C: khǎothót, phóm mǎj khǎwcaj, khǎw bòok  
wǎa araj na khráp

Student A: mǎkhyǎnnǐi, khǎw paj ñaanlǎan læej noon  
dǎk paj nõoj

### 25.4 VOCABULARY

bǎa	to be bored
dǎj	to get, obtain, procure
hǎa (hǎa)	head
(pen) khǎj	(to have) (a) fever
(pen) khǎjwát	(to have) flu
lǎuknót (khon)	subordinate
lyym	to forget

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

nâabyà	to be dull
naŋ (rŷaŋ)	movie (story)
nuânnoon	to be sleepy
pùat	to ache, have a pain
raaŋwan (jàaŋ)	prize (kind)
(pen) rôok àhiwaa	(to have) cholera
(pen) rôok bít	(to have) dysentery
(pen) rôok sâjtan	(to have) appendicitis
sanùk	to be amusing, to be fun, to have a good time
sǐisà	head (elegant word)
tès {	very early
ta }	
thóon	stomach, intestinal area
(pen) wát	(to have) a cold

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### LESSON TWENTY-SIX

#### 26.0 BASIC DIALOG: Discussion of Wedding Gifts

- |                                    |   |
|------------------------------------|---|
| A: khun sawàt há?                  | Mr. Sawat, may I ask you something?   |
| thăam araj nòoj, dâj máj           |   |
| B: jindii há?                      | Gladly.   |
| A: wan aathít níi, phôm dâj        | This Sunday I received an invitation to a party.  |
| ráp chœen paj naanlián             |   |
| B: naan araj há?                   | What kind of a party?   |
| A: naan tènnaan                    | A wedding.  |
| phôm māj sâap wâa                  | I don't know what I should buy to give them.  |
| ca sýy araj hâj khâw dii           |   |
| B: hâj khǒoncháj sihá              | Give something to use.  |
| A: chên araj mân                   | What for example?   |
| B: chên khrýan khrua               | Kitchen utensils for the bride, electrical devices or pretty things to decorate the house with. |
| sámrap cawsăaw,                    |   |
| khrýan cháj faj fáa                |   |
| rý khǒon sǔajsǔaj                  |   |
| sámrap tèn baan                    |   |
| A: toonthi khun tènnaan,           | When you got married, what are some of the presents you got?                                    |
| khun dâj khǒonkhwǎn                |   |
| araj mân há?                       |   |
| B: phôm dâj thán nœen lé khǒon há? | I got money and things.   |
| phýan baan khon kô hâj khǒon,      | Some friends gave things; some gave money. Most of the relatives gave money.                    |
| baan khon kô hâj nœen              |   |
| jâat jâat sùan mâak hâj nœen       |   |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 26.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG

- a) Note the following variant forms of the male and female polite particles:

<u>Statement:</u>		<u>Formal</u>	<u>Informal</u>
	Male	khráp	há?
	Female	khâ	hâ/há
<u>Question:</u>			
	Male	khráp	há?
	Female	khâ	há

- b) The relationship between cheen 'to invite' and dâj ráp cheen 'to be invited' is similar to the active: passive voice relationship in English.

<u>khâw cheen phôm paj naanlîan</u>	'They invited me (to go) to a party.'
<u>phôm dâj ráp cheen paj naanlîan</u>	'I was invited (to go) to a party.'

- c) Compounds like thaan + roonrian refer to institutions as agents rather than as places. Observe the following examples:

<u>thaan roonrian hâj nânsýy phôm</u>	'The school gave me some books.'
<u>thaan râatchakaan hâj nêen roonrian pii la pèet phan bàat</u>	'The government gives 8,000 baht a year to the school.'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 26.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) The object complement of hâj 'to give' normally precedes the personal complement as in the following example:

kháw hâj nánsǎy phǒm 'He gave me a book.'

1. Specifier phrases of the object complement follow immediately after it (i.e. before the personal complement).

kháw hâj nánsǎy thîi kháw plɛɛ 'He gave me some books  
phǒm he had translated.'

kháw hâj nánsǎy sǒɔŋ lêm nán 'He gave me those two  
phǒm books.'

2. Quantifier phrases of the object complement occur after the personal complement:

kháw hâj nánsǎy phǒm sǒɔŋ lêm 'He gave me two books.'

kháw hâj nánsǎy kháw khon la 'He gave them two books  
2 lêm apiece.'

- b) Constructions of the type khon la 2 lêm 'two books apiece' are called Distributive constructions. They are used to refer to the distribution of objects according to a certain ratio. The distribution may refer to space as in the example above, or it may refer to time. Examples of each type are given below:

1. Space distribution:

kháw hâj nánsǎy nákrian khon 'He gave the students  
la sǒɔŋ lêm two books apiece.'



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 2. Time distribution:

kháw hâj nən khoncháj dyan      'He gave his servant  
la 800 bàat      800 baht a month.'

- c) kô frequently occurs before the main verb phrase in each of the sentences in parallel sentence constructions. It is not translated.

nákrian baan khon kô kèn, baan      'Some students are good;  
khon kô māj kèn      some aren't.'

- d) When Noun Phrases with more than one noun head are replaced by Classifier Phrases, the classifier used in the replacement is determined by the types of nouns in the Noun Phrase:

<u>Noun Phrase</u>	<u>Classifier Phrase Replacement</u>
<u>thán khruu lé mǎo</u> 'Both teachers and doctors.'	<u>thán sǎon khon</u> 'both kinds of people'
<u>thán nən lé aahǎan</u> 'Both money and food'	<u>thán sǎon jàan</u> 'both kinds of things'
<u>thán krunthēep lé chianmāj</u> 'Both Bangkok and, Chiangmai.'	<u>thán sǎon hēen</u> (or) <u>thán sǎon myan</u> 'both places' (or) 'both cities'

- e) When dīi occurs with questions, it may indicate that the person asking the question is requesting advice (whether a certain course of action is good, suitable, or advisable) or is asking for a suggestion. The response, if short and definite, usually ends with sikhráp.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

<u>Question</u> + <u>dii</u>	<u>Response</u>
phǒm ca hâj araj <u>dii</u> 'What shall I give?'	hâj khǒŋcháj <u>sihá</u> 'Give something useful.'

### 26.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Transformation Drill

<u>Pattern 1 and 2</u>	<u>Pattern 3</u>
1. kháw chœen phǒm paj ñaanlían They invited me to a party.	phǒm dâj ráp chœen paj ñaanlían I got an invitation to a party.
2. kháw chœen phǒm paj ñaan tœŋŋaan khǒŋ kháw She invited me to her wedding.	phǒm dâj ráp chœen paj ñaan tœŋŋaankhǒŋ kháw I received an invitation to her wedding.
3. kháw chœen phǒm paj prachum thîi myan bǒssatân He invited me to a meeting in Boston.	phǒm dâj ráp chœen paj prachum thîi myan bǒssatân I received an invitation to a meeting in Boston.
4. kháw mâj dâj chœen phǒm paj ñaan thîi sathǎanthûut He didn't invite me to the party at the Embassy.	phǒm mâj dâj ráp chœen paj ñaan thîi sathǎanthûut I didn't get an invitation to the party at the Embassy.
5. kháw mâj dâj chœen phǒm paj ñaan nákrían kàw He didn't invite me to the party for former students.	phǒm mâj dâj ráp chœen paj ñaan nákrían kàw I didn't get an invitation to the party for former students.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### b) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. kháw hâj araj khun khráp What did he give you?	kháw hâj nən phǒm khráp He gave me some money.
2. thaən roonrian hâj araj khun khráp What did the school give you?	thaən roonrian hâj nǎnsǎy rian phǒm khráp The school gave me a textbook.
3. toon thîi khun tənnaən, naaj khǒon khun hâj araj khun khráp What did your boss give you when you got married?	toon thîi phǒm tənnaən naaj khǒon phǒm hâj wítthajú phǒm khráp When I got married, my boss gave me a radio.
4. wan khrít-samâat pii níi, khun ca hâj araj phanraja khun khráp What are you going to give your wife this Christmas?	phǒm khít wâa phǒm ca hâj khrýaŋkhrua kháw khráp I think I'll give her kitchen implements.
5. phǐichaa khun hâj araj khun khráp What did your older brother give you?	phǐichaa phǒm hâj pàakkaa phǒm khráp. My older brother gave me a pen.
6. khun ca hâj araj lûukchaa khun khráp What are you going to give your son?	phǒm ca hâj dín-sǎo lé samùt lûukchaa phǒm khráp I'm going to give my son a pencil and a notebook.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>7. phŷan phŷan khun hâj khǒɔŋ<br/>khwǎn araj khun khráp</p> <p>What kind of presents did<br/>your friends give you?</p> | <p>kháw hâj nən phǒm khráp</p> <p>They gave me money.</p>  |
| <p>8. nákp̄haasáa khon nán hâj<br/>araj khun khráp</p> <p>What did that linguist<br/>give you?</p>                         | <p>kháw hâj nǎnsǎy thŷi kháw<br/>plɛɛ phǒm khráp</p> <p>He gave me a book<br/>he translated.</p> |

### c) Recognition and Familiarization Drill.

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
<p>1. khun phǒɔ khun mɛɛ khǒɔŋ khun hâj nən khun thǎwraɯj khráp</p> <p>How much money did your parents give you?</p>	<p>khun phǒɔ khun mɛɛ khǒɔŋ phǒm hâj nən phǒm hǎa phan bàat khráp</p> <p>My parents gave me five thousand baht.</p>
<p>2. kháw hâj nən khoncháɯj kháw dyan la thǎwraɯj khráp</p> <p>How much does he give his servants per month?</p>	<p>kháw hâj nən khoncháɯj kháw dyan.la sǎirǒɔɯj bàat khráp</p> <p>He gives his servants four hundred baht per month.</p>
<p>3. thaanrǎatchakaan hâj nən roonrian pii la thǎwraɯj khráp</p> <p>How much does the government give the school a year?</p>	<p>thaanrǎatchakaan hâj nən roonrian pii la pɛɛt phan bàat khráp</p> <p>The government gives the school 8,000 baht a year.</p>

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>4. thaangroonrian hâj nânsýy<br/>nákrian khon la kîi lêm<br/>khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">How many books per student<br/>does the school give?</p>   | <p>thaangroonrian hâj nânsýy<br/>nákrian khon la sǎon lêm<br/>khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">The school gives two books<br/>to each student.</p>   |
| <p>5. thaangráan hâj khǎon khwǎn<br/>kháw kîi chín khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">How many presents did<br/>the shop give them?</p>   | <p>thaangráan hâj khǎon khwǎn<br/>kháw sǎam chín khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">The shop gave them<br/>three presents.</p>   |
| <p>6. kháw hâj khǎonkhwǎn khun<br/>kîi jàan khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">How many kinds of presents<br/>did he give you?</p>  | <p>kháw hâj khǎonkhwǎn (kèε)<br/>phǎm jàan diaw khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He gave me one kind of<br/>present.</p>   |
| <p>7. kháw hâj nânsýy hōnsamùt<br/>kîi lêm khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">How many books did he<br/>give to the library?</p>  | <p>kháw hâj nânsýy (kèε)<br/>hōnsamùt hâa sǐp lêm khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He gave fifty books to<br/>the library.</p>   |
| <p>8. thaangkrasuanṭaanprathêet hâj<br/>ṇen khâa nânsýy khun khon<br/>la thâwraj khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">How much did the State<br/>Department give each<br/>person for books?<br/>(lit. give you per person.)</p> | <p>thaangkrasuanṭaanprathêet hâj<br/>ṇen khâa nânsýy raw khon<br/>la sǎam sǐp dǎo lâa</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">The State Department gave<br/>us 30 dollars per person<br/>for books.</p> |
| <p>9. khun hâj ṇen lûuk wan la<br/>thâwraj khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">How much money per day<br/>do you give your child?</p>  | <p>phǎm hâj ṇen lûuk wan la<br/>sǎon bàat khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">I give him/her 2 baht<br/>per day.</p>  |

NOTE: kèε 'to' may be used in rather formal style or in cases where ambiguity might occur as in the examples above in which the receiver might be confused with possessor.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### d) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. khraj hâj nânsŷy sŏŋ lêm nĭi khun khráp Who gave you these two books?	nâkphaasăa hâj (nânsŷy sŏŋ lêm nĭi) phŏm khráp The linguist gave me these two books.
2. khraj hâj samùt sĭi lêm nĭi khun khráp Who gave you these four notebooks?	phŷan phŏm hâj samùt sĭi lêm nĭi phŏm khráp My friend gave me these four notebooks.
3. khraj hâj pàakkaa dâam nĭi khun khráp Who gave you this pen?	khun ànúróot hâj pàakkaa dâam nĭi phŏm khráp Anuroj gave me this pen.
4. khraj hâj rŭup bajnĭi khun khráp Who gave you this picture?	phátthanaakoon khon nán hâj rŭup bajnĭi phŏm khráp That community development worker gave me this picture.
5. khraj hâj phĕenthĭi sŏŋ phĕen nĭi khun khráp Who gave you these two maps?	boorisàt námman hâj phĕenthĭi sŏŋ phĕennĭi phŏm khráp The gasoline company gave me these two maps.
6. khraj hâj nânsŷy phaasăa thaj sĭp lêm nĭi kĕe hŏnsamùt khráp Who gave these ten Thai language books to the library?	krasuan kaantàanprathĕet ameerikan hâj nânsŷy sĭp lêm nĭi kĕe hŏnsamùt khráp The American Department of State gave these ten books to the library.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### e) Transformation Substitution Drill

Instructor: kháw hâj nánsǎy lêm níi phǎm  
: nánsǎy sǎw lêm

Student: kháw hâj nánsǎy phǎm sǎw lêm

Continue by substituting the following items in the appropriate structure.

1. pàakkaa dâam níi
2. kâwîi sǎam tua
3. nən camnuan níi
4. nən hâa rǎw bàat
5. nən khâa aahǎan
6. bâan lǎw níi
7. dǐnsǎw thên nán
8. weelaa sǎw chûamoon

### f) Sentence Construction Drill

Using the cue words given student 1 will form a question with hâj as the main verb. Student 2 will give an appropriate answer. (Study the examples below carefully.)

Example 1.

I: phýan phýan , araj, khun

S 1: phýan phýan hâj araj khun khráp

S 2: kháw hâj nánsǎy phǎm khráp

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### Example 2:

- I: phŷan phŷan , khun, nán̄sŷy kǐi lēm  
S 1: phŷan phŷan hāj nán̄sŷy khun kǐi lēm khráp  
S 2: kháw hāj nán̄sŷy phǒm sǒŋ lēm khráp

### Example 3:

- I: phŷan phŷan , khun, nán̄sŷy lēm níi, rŷy  
S 1: phŷan phŷan hāj nán̄sŷy lēm níi khun rŷy khráp  
S 2: khráp (or) plàaw khráp

### Example 4:

- I: khraj, khun, nán̄sŷy sǒŋ lēm níi  
S 1: khraj hāj nán̄sŷy sǒŋ lēm níi khun khráp  
S 2: khruu hāj nán̄sŷy sǒŋ lēm níi phǒm khráp

Continue by using the following cue words:

1. cāwnāathŷi juusít, khun , araj
2. khun praphâat, khun, phĕenthŷi prathĕetthaj, kǐi phĕen
3. krasuan̄tāan̄prathĕet, nākrian, nĕen khāan̄n̄sŷy, khon la thāwràj
4. khun, phanrajaa khun, khǒŋkhwǎn, thúk pii, rŷplàaw
5. khraj, khun, samùt lēm níi
6. khraj, khun, samùt sǒŋ lēm
7. khraj, khun, tó tua níi
8. kháw, khun, nĕen kǐi bàat
9. kháw, khon cháj, nĕen, dyan la, kǐi bàat
10. khun cǒŋ, khun, pàakkaa dāam níi, rŷy
11. kháw, phǒm, weelaa, nŷn chūamoon



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### g) Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. khun sýy araj hâj phanrajaa khun khráp What did you buy your wife?	phǒm sýy pàakkaa hâj kháw nỳn dâam khráp I bought her a pen.
2. wan khrítsamâat pii nâa khun ca sýy araj hâj phanrajaa khun khráp What are you going to buy your wife for Christmas next year?	phǒm ca sýy naalikaa hâj kháw khráp I'm going to buy a watch for her.
3. wan tènnaan khǒon phýan khun khun sýy araj hâj kháw khráp What did you buy for your friend on his wedding day?	phǒm sýy khǒon sǎmràp tèn bâan hâj kháw khráp I bought things for deco- rating the house for him.
4. pii thîi lésu phanrajaa khun sýy araj hâj khun What did your wife buy for you last year?	kháw sýy sýa hâj phǒm nỳn tua She bought a shirt for for me.
5. khun ca sýy araj hâj phýan khun What are you going to buy for your friend?	phǒm khít wâa ca sýy nánsýy diidi hâj kháw I think I'll buy him some good books.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### h) Familiarization Drill

1. A: khun sǒmsǐi hâj rūup phǒm  
Miss Somsri gave me some pictures.
- B: khun dâj rūup càak khun sǒmsǐi kǐi baj khráp  
How many pictures did you get from Miss Somsri?
- A: phǒm dâj rūup càak khun sǒmsǐi hâa baj khráp  
I got five pictures from Miss Somsri.
2. A: khun phǎo khun mĕe hâj nĕn phǒm  
My parents gave me some money.
- B: khun dâj nĕn càak khun phǎokhun mĕe kǐi bàat khráp  
How many baht did you get from your parents?
- A: phǒm dâj nĕn càak khunphǎo khun mĕe lǎaj rǎoj  
bàat khráp  
I got several hundred baht from my parents.
3. A: thaang sathǎanthûut hâj nǎnsǎy tǎantǎan kĕe  
roongrian raw.  
The Embassy gave various books to our school.
- B: raw dâj nǎnsǎy càak sathǎanthûut kǐi lĕm khráp  
How many books did we get from the Embassy?
- A: raw dâj nǎnsǎy tǎan tǎan càak sathǎanthûut raaw  
raaw sǎamsǐp lĕm khráp  
We got about 30 different books from the Embassy.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

4. A: krasuan tàanprathêet hâj nən khâa nânsŷy raw  
The State Department gave us money for  
buying books.

B: raw dâj nən khâa nânsŷy khon la thâwràj khráp  
How much money did each person get for  
buying books?

A: raw dâj nən khâa nânsŷy khon la sǎamsĭp doolâa khráp  
We got 30 dollars a person (for buying books).

### 1) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. khŏnkhwǎn	phŏm dâj <u>khŏnkhwǎn</u> I got presents.
2.	phŏm dâj <u>nən lǎaj rŏoj</u> I got several hundred (baht).
3. naan	phŏm dâj <u>nən</u> I got work.
4. bāan	phŏm dâj <u>bāan</u> I got a house.
5. khŏncháj	phŏm dâj <u>khŏncháj</u> I got things to use.
6. nânsŷy 2 lēm	phŏm dâj <u>nânsŷy sŏon lēm</u> I got two books.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| 7. khrýaŋ fajfáa               | phóm dâj <u>khrýaŋ fajfáa</u><br>I got electrical equipment.           |
| 8. wítthajú                    | phóm dâj <u>wítthajú</u><br>I got a radio.                             |
| 9. thii wii                    | phóm dâj <u>thii wii</u><br>I got a TV.                                |
| 10. kâwii màj                  | phóm dâj <u>kâwii màj</u><br>I got a new chair.                        |
| 11. bæe thoorasàp<br>khǒŋ kháw | phóm dâj <u>bæe thoorasàp</u> khǒŋ kháw<br>I got her telephone number. |
| 12. khaŋsɛn dii                | phóm dâj <u>khaŋsɛn dii</u><br>I got good grades.                      |

### j) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- | <u>Question</u>  | <u>Response</u>  |
|--|--|
| 1. phóm khaŋ ca hâj araj kháw<br>What shall I give him?                        | hâj náŋsýy sikhráp<br>Give a book.   |
| 2. phóm khaŋ ca sýy araj hâj<br>phanrajaa dii<br>What shall I give my<br>wife? | sýy khrýaŋkhrua hâj kháw<br>sikhráp<br>Buy some kitchen<br>utensils for her. |
| 3. phóm khaŋ ca thǎam khraj dii<br>Who shall I ask?                            | thǎam nákpahasǎa sikhráp<br>Ask the linguist.                                |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

4. phǒm khuan ca thaen thîi                      thaen thîi ráannîi sikráp  
ráannǎj dii  
Which restaurant shall                      Eat at this restaurant.  
I eat at?
5. phǒm khuan ca paj janŋaj dii                      paj rótfaj sikhráp  
How shall I go?                      Go by train.

### k) Expansion Drill

1. araj dii  
sýy araj dii  
khuan ca sýy araj hâj kháw dii  
phǒm ca sýy khǒŋkhwǎn araj hâj kháw dii
2. khraj dii  
cheen khraj dii  
ca cheen khraj dii  
raw khuan ca cheen khraj dii
3. khraj dii  
thǎam khraj dii  
khuan ca thǎam khraj dii  
phǒm khuan ca thǎam khraj dii
4. nǎj dii  
thîinǎj dii  
thaen thîinǎj dii  
thaen aahǎan thîinǎj dii  
thaen aahǎan khlaanwan thîinǎj dii  
khuan ca thaen aahǎan klaanwan thîinǎj dii  
raw khuan ca thaen aahǎan klaanwan thîinǎj dii

5. nǎj dii  
 bòt nǎj dii  
 rian bòt nǎj dii  
 khuan ca rian bòt nǎj dii  
 raw khuan ca rian bòt nǎj dii
6. nǎj dii  
 wan nǎj dii  
 lían wan nǎj dii  
 mii ñaanlían wan nǎj dii  
 khuan ca mii ñaanlían wan nǎj dii  
 raw khuan ca mii ñaanlían wan nǎj dii
7. janñaj dii  
 tham janñaj dii  
 khuan ca tham janñaj dii  
 phǒm khuan ca tham janñaj dii

1) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

sámràp means 'for' in the sense of function (for doing such and such).

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. hōñnám hōñníi, <u>sámràp</u> khraj Who is this toilet for?	hōñnám hōñníi, <u>sámràp</u> phūujǐn This toilet is for women. (māj chāj <u>sámràp</u> phūuchaaj) It's not for men.
2. kâwīi tuaníi, <u>sámràp</u> khraj Who is this chair for?	kâwīi tuaníi, <u>sámràp</u> khruu This chair is for the teacher. (māj chāj <u>sámràp</u> nákrían) It's not for students.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 3. khrŷaṅkhrua chútníi,<br><u>sámràp</u> khraj<br>Who is this set of kitchen<br>utensils for?  | khrŷaṅkhrua chútníi <u>sámràp</u><br>câwsăaw<br>It's for the bride.<br>(mâj chăj <u>sámràp</u> câwbàaw.)<br>It's not for the groom. |
| 4. ṇeen camnuan níi, pen ṇen<br><u>sámràp</u> tham araj<br>What is this amount of<br>money for (for doing<br>what)?  | ṇeen camnuan níi pen ṇen<br><u>sámràp</u> sŷy aahăan<br>This sum of money is<br>for food.   |
| 5. náṅsŷy lêm níi, cháj <u>sámràp</u><br>tham araj khráp<br>What is this book used<br>for?   | náṅsŷy lêm níi, cháj <u>sámràp</u><br>sŏon nákrían<br>This book is used for<br>teaching students.                                   |
| 6. hŏṇníi cháj <u>sámràp</u> tham<br>araj<br>What is this room used<br>for?  | hŏṇníi cháj <u>sámràp</u> prachum<br>nákrían<br>This room is used for<br>student meetings.  |
| 7. bâan lăaj lăṅ thŷi jùu tronkan<br>khăam kàp sathăanthûut pen<br>thŷi <u>sámràp</u> tham araj khráp<br>What are the (several)<br>houses opposite the<br>Embassy for? | pen thŷi <u>sámràp</u> phanáṅṇaan<br>sathăanthûut jùu khráp<br>They are for Embassy<br>employees to live in.                        |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### m) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1.   thīi roonrian sǒn phaasǎa<br>kháw cháj nánsǎy araĵ<br>What books do they use<br>at the language school? | thīi roonrian sǒn phaasǎa,<br>kháw cháj nánsǎy khǒn roonrian<br>At the language school<br>they use the school's<br>books. |
| 2.   khun cháj rót araĵ<br>What kind of car<br>did you use?  | phǒm cháj rót ameerikan<br>I used an American car.  |
| 3.   kháw cháj nǝn wan la kǐi<br>doo lǎa<br>How many dollars does<br>he spend per day?                       | kháw cháj nǝn wan la hǎa<br>sǐp sen.<br>He spends 50 cents<br>a day.  |
| 4.   thīi myan thaj, kháw cháj<br>nǝn araĵ<br>What kind of money do<br>they use in Thailand?                 | thīi myan thaj, kháw cháj<br>nǝn bàat<br>In Thailand they use<br>'bahts'.   |
| 5.   khun cháj araĵ (sámràp)<br>khǎn nánsǎy<br>What do you use for<br>writing?                               | phǒm cháj thǎn pàakkaa lé<br>dinsǒ (sámràp) khǎn nánsǎy<br>I use both pen and pencil<br>for writing.                      |

### n) Expansion Drill

1.   baan khon pen thahǎan  
      nákrian baan khon pen thahǎan  
      nákrian thīinīi baan khon pen thahǎan



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

2. baan lêm dii  
nán̄sǎy baan lêm dii  
nán̄sǎy phaasǎa thaj baan lêm dii
3. baan khr̄yan cháj māj dāj  
khr̄yan baan khr̄yan cháj māj dāj  
khr̄yan fajfáa baan khr̄yan cháj māj dāj
4. baan tambon māj mií náam  
tambon baan tambon māj mií náam  
tambon thīi jùu klaj klaj baan tambon māj mií náam

### o) Substitution Drill

#### Cue

#### Pattern

- |                    |   |
|--------------------|---|
| 1. ph̄yan          | <u>ph̄yan</u> baan khon kô hāj khǎon, baan<br>khon kô hāj n̄en<br>Some friends gave things; some, money.            |
| 2. khruu           | <u>khruu</u> baan khon kô hāj khǎon, baan khon<br>kô hāj n̄en<br>Some teachers gave things; some, money.            |
| 3. mǎo             | <u>mǎo</u> baan khon kô hāj khǎon, baan khon kô<br>hāj n̄en<br>Some doctors gave things; some, money.               |
| 4. khâarâatchakaan | <u>khâarâatchakaan</u> baan khon kô hāj khǎon,<br>baan khon kô hāj n̄en<br>Some employees gave things; some, money. |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

5. cāwnāathīi                      cāwnāathīi baan khon kō hāj khōn, baan  
khon kō hāj nēn  
Some officials gave things; some, money.

### p) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. kēn	nākrian baan khon kō <u>kēn</u> , baan khon kō māj <u>kēn</u> Some students are good; some aren't.
2. sǔaj	nākrian baan khon kō <u>sǔaj</u> , baan khon kō māj <u>sǔaj</u> Some students are pretty; some aren't.
3. phūujǐn	<u>phūujǐn</u> baan khon kō sǔaj, baan khon kō māj sǔaj Some women are pretty; some aren't.
4. dīi	phūujǐn baan khon kō <u>dīi</u> , baan khon kō māj <u>dīi</u> Some women are good; some aren't.
5. nānsǔy	<u>nānsǔy</u> baan lēm kō dīi, baan lēm kō māj dīi Some books are good; some aren't.
6. sanùk	nānsǔy baan lēm kō <u>sanùk</u> , baan lēm kō māj <u>sanùk</u> Some books are amusing; some aren't.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### q) Substitution Drill (Using baan with time expressions)

#### Cue

#### Pattern

1. wan                      baan wan kháw kô maa, baan wan kháw kô mâj maa  
Some days he comes, some he doesn't.
2. chûamoon              baan chûamoon kháw kô maa, baan chûamoon kháw kô  
mâj maa  
Some hours he comes; some he doesn't.
3. khrán                    baan khrán kháw kô maa, baan khrán kháw kô mâj maa  
Some times he comes, some times he doesn't.
4. wan                      baan wan kháw kô maa, baan wan kháw kô mâj maa  
Some days he comes, some he doesn't.
5. paj thamnaan        baan wan kháw kô paj thamnaan, baan wan kháw kô  
mâj paj thamnaan  
Some days he goes to work, some he doesn't.
6. jùu bân                baan wan kháw kô jùu bân, baan wan kháw kô mâj  
jùu bân  
Some days she's at home; some she isn't.
7. aakàat dii            baan wan aakàat kô dii, baan wan aakàat kô mâj dii  
Some days the weather's fine; some it isn't.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### r) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
<p>1. khun rúucàk thǎn sǎamii lé  <u>phanrajaa rýkhráp</u>            Do you know both the            husband and wife?</p>	<p>khráp, phǎm rúucàk kháw  <u>thǎn sǎon khon</u>            Yes, I know both of            them.</p>
<p>2. khun chǎop thǎn phaasǎathaj  <u>lé aahǎanthaj rýkhráp</u>            Do you like both the Thai            language and Thai food?</p>	<p>khráp, phǎm chǎop thǎn  <u>sǎon jàan</u>            Yes. I like both (things).</p>
<p>3. khun khǎej jùu thǎn farànsèet  <u>lé sapeen rýkhráp</u>            Have you lived in both            France and Spain?</p>	<p>khráp, phǎm khǎej jùu thǎn  <u>sǎon prathêet</u>            Yes, I have lived in            both countries.</p>
<p>4. khun phûut dâj thǎn phaasǎa  <u>ciin lé phaasǎa rátsia rýkhráp</u>            Can you speak both            Chinese and Russian?</p>	<p>khráp, phǎm phûut dâj thǎn  <u>sǎon phaasǎa</u>            Yes, I can speak both            languages.</p>
<p>5. khun khǎej jùu thǎn chianmǎj  <u>lé krunchêep rýkhráp</u>            Have you lived in both            Chiangmai and Bangkok?</p>	<p>khráp, phǎm khǎej jùu thǎn  <u>sǎon hèn</u>            Yes, I have lived            in both places.</p>
<p>6. khun hâj thǎn nǎn lé aahǎan            kháw rǎy khráp            Did you give him both            money and food?</p>	<p>khráp, phǎm hâj kháw thǎn  <u>sǎon jàan</u>            Yes, I gave him both            things.</p>

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

7.   kháw dâj khaɛɛn dii thán khraaw      khráp, kháw dâj khaɛɛn dii  
       thîi léɛw lé khraawníi ryy knráp      thán sǒɔn khraaw (khrán)  
       Did he get good grades both              Yes, he got good  
       the time before and this                  grades both times.  
       time?

### s) Noun Compound Drill

Form Noun Compounds like    khryaŋ +  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Noun} \\ \text{Verb} \end{array} \right.$

	<u>Verb</u> or <u>Noun</u>		<u>Noun Compound</u>
1.	cháj            'to use'	khryaŋcháj	'things to see'
2.	khrua          'kitchen'	khryaŋkhrua	'kitchen utensils'
3.	khǎan          'to write'	khryaŋkhǎan	'writing equipment'
4.	tènɔ̌n bâan    'to decorate a house'	khryaŋtènɔ̌nbâan	'house decoration'

## 26.4 EXERCISES

- a) Students will discuss invitations they have received specifying type of activity, time, and place.
- b) Students will discuss various gifts they have given and received.
- c) One student will ask another's opinion about something he is considering doing (giving a gift, etc.). The second will give his opinion.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 26.5 VOCABULARY

anúrôot	Anuroj (male first name)
bæe	number
camnuan	amount
câwsăaw (khon)	bride
cháj	to use (to do something), be used for, to spend (money)
chín	piece (classifier for things)
chút	set of (something)
há/hâ	the male and female polite particles informal for khráp or khâ, in responses
jàaŋ	classifier for things
jâat/jâatjâat	relative(s)
kàw	old (of non living things), former (of living and non living things)
kæe	to, for
khâa	fee, cost, price, value
khansən (khansən)	grade, score point(s)
khoncháj (khon)	servant
khŏŋcháj (jàaŋ, an, chín)	something useful, utensils
khryaŋ cháj fájfáa (khryaŋ)	electrical
khryaŋ faj fáa (khryaŋ)	electrical equipment
khryaŋkhrua (khryaŋ)	kitchen utensils
khryaŋ ryan (khryaŋ)	furniture
krasuaŋ kaantàaŋ prathêet	State Department, Foreign Ministry
khraaw	time(s) (occasion)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

khráŋ	time(s) (occasion) classifier for time
khrítsamâat	Christmas
<u>la</u> or <u>lá</u>	per, a, the
mâŋ	some, any (pronominal, another form of <u>bâaŋ</u> )
naaj (khon)	boss
nákphaasáa (khon)	linguistic scientist
nákrian kàw (khon)	former student
phanáknaan (khon)	employee
pháthanaakoon (khon)	community development worker
plæ	to translate
prachum	meeting
sámràp	for
si	particle indicating definiteness or emphasis
súanmâak	most of, in the main
tèŋ	to decorate
thii wii (khrýaŋ)	TV
wítthajú (khrýaŋ, an)	radio

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### LESSON TWENTY-SEVEN

#### 27.0 BASIC DIALOG: Sending a Servant for a Taxi

naaj:	chûaj rîak thêksîi hâj (phôm) khan nyn bòok khâw wâa paj săthoon lœej cátsamèk paj nòj	Please call a taxi for me. Tell him (I'm) going to Sathorn a little past JUSMAG.
khoncháj:	ca hâj khâw khooj dûaj máj khá	Will you have him wait?
naaj:	mâj tôn	That's not necessary.
	(khoncháj klàp maa)	(The servant returns)
naaj:	dâj rôt máj	Did you get one?
khoncháj:	dâj khà	Yes, I did.
naaj:	khâw aw thâwràj	How much does he want?
khoncháj:	síp hâa bàat khà	Fifteen baht.
naaj:	mâj phœn paj lǎ thammadaa, weelaa chán rîak een , khâw khít pèet bàat thâwnán	That's not too much? Usually when I get one myself, they charge only 8 baht.
khoncháj:	toonníi, kamlan lœek naan.thêksîi hăa jâak khâ.tòò mâj khôj dâj	It's quitting time now. Taxis are hard to find. Bargaining is hardly possible.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 27.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG AND VOCABULARY NOTES

- a) chán 'I' is rarely used by men except when speaking to persons of inferior social status. Women use it more often. They used it (1) with persons of inferior social status, (2) to strangers, acquaintances, friends and intimates.<sup>1</sup>
- b) khít thâwràj 'figured or reckoned as how much?' is a reduced form of khít raakhaa thâwràj 'the price is reckoned as how much?' or khít khâadoojsaan thâwràj 'The fare is reckoned as how much?'.
- c) After stative verbs like phsɛɲ 'expensive', kɛən paj may occur with the meaning 'excessively, too'. paj occurs in the same position as a reduced form of kɛən paj.
- d) toon thîi and weelaa both refer to time and may be translated 'when'; however, weelaa usually refers to a special occasion; weelaa phǒm mǎj khâwcaj 'When (ever) I don't understand', whereas, toon thîi refers to a particular period of time toon thîi khun pen dèk 'When you were a child'.

### 27.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) hâj occurs in constructions of the following kind:
1. As main verb in the sentence (see 26.2a),
  2. As secondary verb with the meaning 'for the benefit or, in place of someone else', chuâj khàp rôt hâj (phǒm) 'Please drive for me' khâw tham aahǎan hâj khun thaan 'He makes food for you (to eat).'
  3. Or as the main verb with a sentence complement. In constructions of this type it has causative meaning. khun ca hâj lûuk khun rian araj 'What are you going to have your children study?'

---

<sup>1</sup>See Noss, pg. 100.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- b) The verbs bòok 'tell', khǎo 'request', anujâat 'permit' and sàj 'order' (like jaak, see 22.2b) are followed by hâj plus Sentence Complement when the utterance tends to be causative in effect.

kháw bòok hâj phǒm khooj kháw

'He told me to wait for him.'

kháw anujâat hâj phǒm rian phaasǎathaj

'He permitted me to study Thai.'

Compare the following two sentences:

1. kháw hâj phǒm khooj kháw 'He had me wait for him.

The manner in which the request or command is delivered is not specified.

2. kháw bòok hâj phǒm khooj kháw 'He told me to wait for him.'

The manner in which the command or request is delivered is specified.

- c) een occurs at the end of clauses and has the meaning 'by himself, herself, themselves, etc., without outside help or influence'<sup>1</sup>.

phǒm paj sýy (kaafɛɛ) een kháp

'I went to buy coffee myself'.

(Nobody bought it for me.)

---

<sup>1</sup>See Noss, pg. 93

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 27.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. khraj tòò raakhaa <u>hâj</u> khun khráp Who did your bargaining for you?	phÿan khon thaj khǒon phǒm tòò (raakhaa) <u>hâj</u> phǒm khráp A Thai friend of mine did the bargaining for me.
2. khraj khàp rót <u>hâj</u> khun khráp Who drove the car for you?	phǒm khàp <u>een</u> khráp I drove (it) myself. (mâj mi khraj khàp hâj) No one drove for me.
3. khraj tham aahǎan <u>hâj</u> khun thaan khráp Who cooks for you?	phanrajaa phǒm tham (aahǎan) <u>hâj</u> phǒm khráp My wife cooks for me.
4. phÿan khun paj sýy kaafɛɛ <u>hâj</u> khun rýy khráp Did your friend go buy coffee for you?	plàaw khráp, phǒm paj sýy (kaafɛɛ) <u>een</u> khráp No, I bought (it) myself.
5. khraj khǎan còtmǎaj chabàp níi <u>hâj</u> khun khráp Who wrote this letter for you?	phǒm khǎan <u>een</u> khráp I wrote it myself.
6. khraj hǎa bǎan <u>hâj</u> khun khráp Who looked for a house for you?	phǒm hǎa <u>een</u> khráp I looked myself.
7. khraj sýy aahǎan hâj khun khráp Who bought food for you?	phanrajaa phǒm sýy <u>hâj</u> phǒm khráp My wife bought it for me.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### b) Substitution Transformation Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern 1</u>	<u>Pattern 2</u>
1. phanrajaaj phǒm	phǒm māj dāj tham aahǎan een I don't cook for myself.	<u>phanrajaaj phǒm</u> tham hāj (phǒm) My wife cooks for me.
2. phŷan phǒm	phǒm māj dāj khŷan còtmǎaj chabàp nŷi een I didn't write this letter myself.	<u>phŷan phǒm</u> khŷan hāj A friend of mine wrote it for me.
3. khun thǎawoon	phǒm māj dāj sŷy nánsŷy lēm nŷi een I didn't buy this book myself.	<u>khun thǎawoon</u> sŷy hāj Thaworn bought it for me.
4. khon khàprót	phǒm māj dāj khàp rót een I didn't drive myself.	<u>khon khàprót</u> khàp hāj The chauffeur drove for me.
5. kháw	phǒm māj dāj paj sòn còtmǎaj een I didn't send the letter myself.	<u>kháw</u> sòn hāj He sent it for me.
6. kháw	phǒm māj dāj khít een I didn't originate the idea myself.	<u>kháw</u> khít hāj He thought of it for me.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### c) Response Drill

Example 1:

- |      |                            |                             |
|------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| T:   | pàakkaa, phŷan             | pen, friend                 |
| S 1: | sýy araj khráp             | What did you buy?           |
| S 2: | sýy <u>pàakkaa</u> khráp   | I bought a pen.             |
| S 1: | sýy hâj khraj khráp        |                             |
| S 2: | sýy hâj <u>phŷan</u> khráp | I bought (it) for a friend. |

Example 2:

- |      |                          |                               |
|------|--------------------------|-------------------------------|
| T:   | nánsŷy, tua een          | book, oneself                 |
| S 1: | sýy araj khráp           | What did you buy?             |
| S 2: | sýy <u>nánsŷy</u> khráp  | I bought a book.              |
| S 1: | sýy hâj khraj khráp      | Who did you buy it for?       |
| S 2: | sýy àan <u>een</u> khráp | I bought (it) to read myself. |

Continue the drill by having two students form questions and answers like those above using the following cue words:

1. nánsŷy, tua een
2. kaafɛɛ, khruu
3. samùt, tua een
4. aahǎan, phanrajaa
5. khǒɔŋ khwǎn, phŷan
6. rót, tua een

Figure 1. The study area and the location of the sampling stations. The map shows the coastline of the study area with sampling stations marked by numbers 1 through 10. The inset map shows the location of the study area within the larger context of the region.

d) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	chũaj riak thêksîi hâj { chãn khan nyn phôm }
	Please call a taxi for me.
1. sòn nãnsỷ lêmnan	chũaj <u>sòn</u> <u>nãnsỷ</u> <u>lêmnan</u> hâj nõoj
	Please send me that book.
2. khàp rôt	chũaj <u>khàp</u> <u>rôt</u> hâj nõoj
	Please drive the car for me.
3. tham aahăan	chũaj <u>tham</u> <u>aahăan</u> hâj nõoj
	Please cook for me.
4. sỹ nãnsỷyphim	chũaj <u>sỷ</u> <u>nãnsỷyphim</u> hâj nõoj
	Please buy newspapers for me.
5. chabàp nyn	chũaj sỹ nãnsỷyphim hâj <u>chabàp</u> <u>nyn</u>
	Please buy a newspaper for me.
6. nõoj	chũaj sỹ nãnsỷyphim hâj <u>nõoj</u>
	Please buy a newspaper for me.
7. tòo thoorasàp	chũaj <u>tòo</u> <u>thoorasàp</u> hâj nõoj
	Please make a phone call for me.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### e) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. kháw aw nánsǎy maa hâj phǒm  
He brought a book to me.
2. kháw khǎan còtmǎaj paj hâj khunmĕe kháw  
He wrote a letter to his mother.
3. kháw sǒn còtmǎaj hâj phǒm  
He sent a letter to me.
4. kháw khǎaj rót hâj phǒm  
He bought a car for me.
5. kháw sǒn phaasǎa thaj hâj phǒm  
He taught Thai to me.

### f) Substitution Drill

#### Cue

#### Pattern

- |                 |  |
|-----------------|--|
|                 | (khun) ca hâj <u>kháw</u> <u>khooj</u> <u>máj</u><br>Will you have him wait?               |
| 1. paj kǐi moon | (khun) ca hâj kháw <u>paj</u> <u>kǐi</u> <u>moon</u><br>At what time will you have him go? |
| 2. phǒm         | (khun) ca hâj <u>phǒm</u> paj kǐi moon<br>At what time will you have me go?                |
| 3. tham araj    | (khun) ca hâj phǒm <u>tham</u> <u>araj</u><br>What will you cause me to do?                |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |                   |   |
|-------------------|---|
| 4. lûuk khun      | (khun) ca hâj <u>lûuk khun</u> tham araj<br>What will you have your children do?    |
| 5. rian araj      | (khun) ca hâj lûuk khun <u>rian araj</u><br>What will you have your children study? |
| 6. sýy araj       | (khun) ca hâj lûuk khun <u>sýy araj</u><br>What will you have your children buy?    |
| 7. phǒm           | (khun) ca hâj <u>phǒm</u> sýy araj.<br>What will you have me buy?                   |
| 8. tham janŋaj    | (khun) ca hâj phǒm <u>tham janŋaj</u><br>How will you have me do (it)?              |
| 9. bòok kháw máj  | (khun) ca hâj phǒm <u>bòok kháw máj</u><br>Will you have me tell him?               |
| 10. khoɔj thŋinǎj | (khun) ca hâj phǒm <u>khoɔj thŋinǎj</u><br>Where will you have me wait?             |

### g) Substitution Drill

#### Cue

#### Pattern

kháw hâj théksŋi khoɔj  
He had the taxi wait.

- |                  |  |
|------------------|--|
| 1. phǒm          | kháw hâj <u>phǒm</u> khoɔj<br>He had me wait.                |
| 2. paj sýy khǒɔŋ | kháw hâj phǒm <u>paj sýy khǒɔŋ</u><br>He let me go shopping. |



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |                      |   |                                  |
|----------------------|---|----------------------------------|
| 3. phák phòn         | kháw hâj phǒm <u>phák phòn</u>              | He let me take a rest.           |
| 4. mǎo hâj           | <u>mǎo hâj</u> phǒm phák phòn               | The doctor had me take a rest.   |
| 5. thaán jaa         | mǎo hâj phǒm <u>thaán jaa</u>               | The doctor had me take medicine. |
| 6. jùt thamnaan      | mǎo hâj phǒm <u>jùt thamnaan</u>            | The doctor had me stop working.  |
| 7. naaj phǒm hâj     | <u>naaj phǒm hâj</u> phǒm jùt thamnaan      | My boss had me stop working.     |
| 8. thoo maa hǎa khun | naaj phǒm hâj phǒm <u>thoo maa hǎa khun</u> | My boss had me call you.         |

### h) Transformation-Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. kháw phûut kàp khoncháj 'chuâj riâk théksîi hâj khan nyŋ'	kháw hâj khoncháj tham araj	kháw hâj khoncháj riâk théksîi hâj kháw
He said to a servant 'call a taxi for me'.	What did he have the servant do?	He had the servant call a taxi.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |   |  |
|---|---|--|
| <p>2. kháw phûut kàp<br/>khun 'paj hǎa<br/>khun cǝon nǝɔj'</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He said to you,<br/>'Go see John'.</p>  | <p>kháw hâj khun<br/>tham araj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">What did he<br/>have you do?</p>                          | <p>kháw hâj phǎm paj<br/>hǎa khun cǝon</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He had me go to<br/>see John.</p>                            |
| <p>3. mĕe phûut kàp<br/>lûuk 'nân lon'</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">The mother said<br/>to her child,<br/>'Sit down'.</p>   | <p>mĕe hâj lûuk<br/>tham araj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">What did the<br/>mother have<br/>her child do?</p>         | <p>mĕe hâj lûuk nân<br/>lon</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">The mother had<br/>her child sit<br/>down.</p>                          |
| <p>4. khruu phûut kàp<br/>nákrian 'phûut<br/>taam khruu'</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">The teacher said<br/>to the student<br/>'Say after me'.</p>   | <p>khruu hâj nákrian<br/>tham araj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">What did the<br/>teacher have<br/>the student do?</p> | <p>khruu hâj nákrian<br/>phûut taam khruu</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">The teacher had<br/>the student repeat<br/>after her.</p> |
| <p>5. khun sawàt phûut<br/>kàp khun sǝmsàk<br/>'chuâj sǝn nǎnsǎy<br/>lĕmnán hâj phǎm<br/>nǝɔj'.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Sawat said to<br/>Somsak 'Please<br/>send me that<br/>book'.</p> | <p>khun sawàt hâj<br/>khun sǝmsàk tham<br/>araj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">What did Sawat<br/>have Somsak do?</p>   | <p>khun sawàt hâj khun<br/>sǝmsàk sǝn nǎnsǎy</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Sawat had Somsak<br/>send him a book.</p>              |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 1) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. kháw bòok hâj phǒm bòok khun  
He told me to tell you.
2. kháw sàŋ hâj phǒm bòok khun  
He ordered me to tell you.
3. kháw khǎo hâj phǒm bòok khun  
He requested me to tell you.
4. kháw anújaât hâj phǒm bòok khun  
He allowed me to tell you.

### j) Transformation-Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
(Student 1 to Student 2)	(Teacher)	(Student 2)
1. 'chuâj bòok hâj khun coon paj hǎa phǒm nõj  'Please tell John to come to see me'.	kháw bòok hâj khun tham araj  What did he tell you to do?	kháw bòok hâj phǒm chuâj bòok hâj khun coon paj hǎa kháw  He told me to tell John to go to see him.
2. 'paj dǎawní'  Go now.	kháw sàn hâj khun tham araj  What did he order you to do?	kháw sàn hâj phǒm paj dǎawní  He ordered me to go now.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

- |  |   |   |
|--|---|---|
| <p>3. 'karunaa athíbaaj<br/>nòoj, dâj máj<br/>khráp'</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Please explain.</p>                        | <p>kháw khǎo hâj khun<br/>tham araj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">What did he<br/>ask you to do?</p>           | <p>kháw khǎo hâj phǎm<br/>athíbaaj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He asked me to<br/>explain.</p>   |
| <p>4. 'jyyn jùu thîinîi,<br/>jàa paj nǎj'.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Stand here.<br/>Don't go</p>                         | <p>kháw sǎn hâj khun<br/>tham araj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">What did he<br/>order you to<br/>do?</p>      | <p>kháw sǎn hâj phǎm<br/>jyyn jùu thîinîi,<br/>mâj hâj phǎm paj nǎj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He ordered me to<br/>stand here, not<br/>to go anywhere.</p> |
| <p>5. 'khun khoj phǎm<br/>duâj nakhráp'</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Wait for me.</p>  | <p>kháw bòok hâj khun<br/>tham araj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">What did he tell<br/>you to do?</p>          | <p>kháw bòok hâj phǎm<br/>khoj kháw</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He told me to<br/>wait for him.</p>  |
| <p>6. 'karunaa phûut<br/>cháacháa nòoj<br/>dâj máj khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Could you please<br/>speak slowly.</p> | <p>kháw khǎo hâj khun<br/>tham araj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">What did he<br/>request you<br/>to do?</p>   | <p>kháw khǎo hâj phǎm<br/>phûut cháacháa nòoj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He asked me to<br/>speak slowly.</p>   |
| <p>7. 'pèet nǎnsǎy dâj'</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">You can open<br/>your book.</p>   | <p>kháw anujâat hâj<br/>khun tham araj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">What did he<br/>permit you<br/>to do?</p> | <p>kháw anujâat hâj<br/>phǎm pèet nǎnsǎy</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He permitted<br/>me to open<br/>the book.</p>   |
| <p>8. 'paj dâj'</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">You may go.</p>   | <p>kháw anujâat hâj<br/>khun tham araj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">What did he<br/>let you do?</p>           | <p>kháw anujâat hâj<br/>phǎm paj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He let me go.</p>   |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

k) Transformation Drill (Change pattern 1 to 2 or vice versa.)

### Pattern 1

1. thaarâatchakaan sàŋ hâj  
phôm rian phaasăa thaj

The government ordered  
me to study Thai.

2. khâw anújâat hâj phôm  
òok kòon weelaa

He permitted me to  
leave before time.

3. khâw bòok hâj khun chuâj  
riâk thêksîi hâj khâw

He told you to call  
a taxi for him.

4. khâw sàŋ hâj phôm khooj  
jùu thiîniî kòon

He ordered me to  
wait here first.

5. khâw anújâat hâj phôm  
rian phaasăa thaj (dâj)

He permitted me to  
study Thai.

6. phanrajaa phôm khǎo hâj  
phôm paj sýy khǎon hâj  
khâw

My wife asked me to  
go shopping for her.

### Pattern 2

- thaarâatchakaan hâj phôm  
rian phaasăathaj

The government had  
me study Thai.

- khâw hâj phôm òok kòon  
weelaa

He had me leave before  
time.

- khâw hâj khun chuâj riâk  
thêksîi hâj khâw

He had you call a taxi  
for him.

- khâw hâj phôm khooj jùu  
thiîniî kòon

He had me wait  
here first.

- khâw hâj phôm rian  
phaasăa thaj (dâj)

He had me study  
Thai.

- phanrajaa phôm hâj phôm  
paj sýy khǎon hâj khâw

My wife had me go  
shopping for her.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

7. kháw sàŋ hâj thêksîi  
khàp rôt cháacháa

He ordered the taxi  
to drive slowly.

- kháw hâj thêksîi khàp rôt  
cháacháa

He had the taxi  
drive slowly.

1) Transformation Drill

(Change from direct to  
indirect statement.)

Pattern 1 (direct)

1. kháw bòok phǒm wâa jàa  
duu nǎnsǎy

He said to me, 'Don't  
look at your book.'

2. kháw sàŋ phǒm wâa jàa  
bòok khraŋ

He ordered me, 'Don't  
tell anybody.'

3. khruu bòok nákrîan wâa jàa  
phûut phaasǎa aŋkrît kan

The teacher said to  
the students, 'Don't  
speak English.'

4. kháw khǎo phǒm wâa jàa  
phûut ryânní

He requested me, 'Don't  
talk about this subject.'

5. kháw bòok thêksîi wâa jàa  
khàp rôt rew

He said to the taxi  
(driver), 'Don't  
drive fast.'

Pattern 2 (indirect)

- kháw bòok mâj hâj phǒm  
duu nǎnsǎy

He told me not to  
look at my book.

- kháw sàŋ mâj hâj phǒm  
bòok khraŋ

He ordered me not  
to tell anybody.

- khruu bòok mâj hâj nákrîan  
phûut phaasǎa aŋkrît kan

The teacher told the  
students not to speak  
English.

- kháw khǎo mâj hâj phǒm  
phûut ryânní

He asked me not to talk  
about this matter.

- kháw bòok mâj hâj thêksîi  
khàp rôt rew

He told the taxi  
(driver) not to  
drive fast.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

6. kháw bòok phǎm wâa jàa  
sýy khǎon ráannán  
He said to me, 'Don't  
shop in that shop.'

kháw bòok mâj hâj phǎm  
sýy khǎon ráannán  
He told me not to  
shop in that shop.

7. mǎo bòok phǎm wâa jàa  
dýym námkhloon  
The doctor said to  
me, 'Don't drink  
canal water.'

mǎo bòok mâj hâj phǎm  
dýym námkhloon  
The doctor told me  
not to drink canal  
water.

### m) Transformation Drill

#### Pattern 1

1. kháw sàj mâj hâj phǎm  
bòok khraj  
He ordered me not  
to tell anyone.
2. kháw mâj anújâat hâj phǎm  
paj rya  
He didn't permit me  
to go by boat.
3. khruu bòok mâj hâj nákrían  
phûut phaasǎa ankrít kan  
The teacher told the  
students not to speak  
English.

#### Pattern 2

kháw mâj hâj phǎm bòok  
khraj  
He didn't let me  
tell anyone.

kháw mâj hâj phǎm paj rya  
He didn't let me go  
by boat.

khruu mâj hâj nákrían phûut  
phaasǎa ankrít kan  
The teacher didn't  
let the student  
speak English.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>4. kháw khǎo mǎj hǎj phǎm<br/>phûut ryǎnní</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He asked me not to<br/>talk about this<br/>matter.</p> | <p>kháw <u>mǎj</u> <u>hǎj</u> phǎm phûut<br/>ryǎnní</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He didn't let me<br/>talk about this<br/>matter.</p> |
| <p>5. kháw <u>bòok</u> <u>mǎj</u> <u>hǎj</u> phǎm maa</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He told me not to come.</p>                    | <p>kháw <u>mǎj</u> <u>hǎj</u> phǎm maa</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He didn't let me come.</p>  |

### n) Substitution Drill

#### Cue

#### Pattern

- |                          |   |
|--------------------------|---|
|                          | <p><u>rót</u> <u>théksíi</u> hǎa jâak</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">It's hard to find a taxi.</p>                                      |
| 1. ráan nán              | <p><u>raan</u> <u>nán</u> hǎa jâak</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">It's hard to find that shop.</p>                                      |
| 2. bâan kháw             | <p><u>bâan</u> <u>kháw</u> hǎa jâak</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">It's hard to find his house.</p>                                     |
| 3. nánsǎy lêm ní         | <p><u>nánsǎy</u> <u>lêmní</u> hǎa jâak</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">It's hard to find this book.</p>                                  |
| 4. khoncháj diidi        | <p><u>khoncháj</u> <u>diidi</u> hǎa jâak</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">It's hard to find good servants.</p>                            |
| 5. bâan diidi            | <p><u>bâan</u> <u>diidi</u> hǎa jâak</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">It's hard to find good houses.</p>                                  |
| 6. nákrían kènkèn jàanní | <p><u>nákrían</u> <u>kènkèn</u> <u>jànní</u> hǎa jâak</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Smart students like this<br/>are hard to find.</p> |



## THAI BASIC COURSE

### o) Response Drill (Respond negatively to the question.)

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. jâak máj	mâj jâak
2. hăa jâak máj	hăa mâj jâak
3. tham jâak máj	tham mâj jâak
4. khĭan jâak máj	khĭan mâj jâak
5. òok sĭan jâak máj	òok sĭan mâj jâak
6. àan jâak máj	àan mâj jâak
7. khâwcaj jâak máj	khâwcaj mâj jâak
8. duu jâak máj	duu mâj jâak
9. phóp jâak máj	phóp mâj jâak
10. dâj jâak máj	dâj mâj jâak
11. cháj jâak máj	cháj mâj jâak
12. khàp jâak máj	khàp mâj jâak
13. rian jâak máj	rian mâj jâak
14. fan jâak máj	fan mâj jâak
15. khăaj jâak máj	khăaj mâj jâak
16. khít jâak máj	khít mâj jâak
17. thăam jâak máj	thăam mâj jâak
18. thaam jâak máj	thaam mâaj jâak
19. cam jâak máj	cam mâj jâak

### p) Substitution Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. khamthăam khĭon kháw, tòop	khamthăam khĭon kháw tòok jâak máj	tòop mâj jâak { ehá rook khráp
	Is his question hard to answer?	No, it isn't.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |  |  |                                     |
|--|--|-------------------------------------|
| 2.    bāan khun, hǎa                       | bǎan khun hǎa jâak máj<br>Is your house<br>hard to find?                           | hǎa mâj jâak əhá<br>No, it isn't.   |
| 3.    jaa níi, thaان                       | jaa níi thaان jâak máj<br>Is this medicine<br>hard to take?                        | thaان mâj jâak əhá<br>No, it isn't. |
| 4.    aahǎan thaj,<br>tham                 | aahǎan thaj tham<br>jâak máj<br>Is it hard to<br>make Thai food?                   | tham mâj jâak əhá<br>No, it isn't.  |
| 5.    kham thaj,<br>sakòt                  | kham thaj sakòt<br>jâak máj<br>Is it hard to<br>drive this car?                    | sakòt mâj jâak əhá<br>No, it isn't. |
| 6.    rót khaanníi,<br>khàp                | rót khanníi khàp<br>jâak máj<br>Is it hard to<br>drive this car?                   | khàp mâj jâak əhá<br>No, it isn't.  |
| 7.    pratuu baan<br>níi, pìt              | pratuu baanníi pìt<br>jâak máj<br>Is this door<br>hard to shut?                    | pìt mâj jâak əhá<br>No, it isn't.   |
| 8.    kháw phûut<br>phaasǎa aṅkrít,<br>faṅ | kháw phûut phaasǎa<br>aṅkrít faṅ jâak máj<br>Is his English hard<br>to understand? | faṅ mâj jâak əhá<br>No, it isn't.   |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

9. tua nánssýy thaj, tua nánssýy thaj khǎan khǎan mâj jâak əhá  
khǎan jâak máj  
Is it hard to  
write Thai letters? No, it isn't.
10. phûujǎn thaj, phûujǎn thaj rúucàk rúucàk mâj jâak əhá  
rúucàk jâak máj  
Is it hard to  
get to know  
Thai women? No, it isn't.
11. nánssýy lêm níi, nánssýy lêm níi àan àan mâj jâak əhá  
àan jâak máj  
Is it hard to  
read this book? No, it isn't.
12. naamsakun naamsakun khonthaj cam mâj jâak əhá  
khonthaj, cam cam jâak máj  
Are Thai names hard  
to remember? No, they aren't.

### q) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- | <u>Question</u>  | <u>Response</u>   |
|--|---|
| 1. <u>weelaa</u> nákrían phûut phít,<br>khruu khuan ca tham janŋaj<br>When a student speaks<br>incorrectly, what<br>should the teacher do? | <u>weelaa</u> nákrían phûut phít,<br>khruu khuan ca kēs<br>When a student speaks<br>incorrectly, the teacher<br>should correct (him). |
| 2. <u>weelaa</u> khun mâj khâwcaj,<br>khun thǎam khraj<br>When you don't understand,<br>what do you do?                                    | <u>weelaa</u> phǒm mâj khâwcaj,<br>phǒm thǎam khruu<br>When I don't understand,<br>I ask the teacher.                                 |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

3. weelaa khun phóp khonthaj,  
khun phûut phaasǎa araj  
kakháw

When you meet a Thai,  
what language do you  
speak to him?

- weelaa phǎm phóp khonthaj,  
phǎm phûut phaasǎa thaj  
kakháw

When I meet a Thai,  
I speak Thai to him..

4. weelaa khun mâj sabaaj,  
khun paj hǎa khraj

When you are not well,  
whom do you go to see?

- weelaa phǎm mâj sabaaj,  
phǎm paj hǎa mǎo

When I'm not well, I  
go to the doctor's.

5. weelaa khun jùt phák,  
khun tham araj bâan

When you take a break,  
what do you do?

- weelaa phǎm jùt phák,  
phǎm khuj kàp phýan

When I take a break,  
I talk to friends.

6. weelaa khun tòop khruu,  
khun khít pen phaasǎa  
araj

When you answer the  
teacher, what language  
do you think in?

- weelaa phǎm tòop khruu,  
phǎm mák ca khít pen  
phaasǎa ankrít kòon

When I answer the  
teacher, I usually  
think first in English.

### r) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. hǎa mǎo	weelaa khun mâj sabaaj, khun tham janraj  When you are not well, what do you do?	weelaa phǎm mâj sabaaj, phǎm mák ca paj <u>hǎa mǎo</u>  When I'm not well, I usually go to the doctor's.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |    |            |   |   |
|----|------------|---|---|
| 2. | mâj        | weelaa kháw phûut rew<br>rew khun khâwcaj máj<br>When he speaks<br>fast, do you<br>understand.                                  | weelaa kháw phûut rew<br>rew, phǒm <u>mâj</u> khâwcaj<br>When he speaks<br>fast, I don't<br>understand.                   |
| 3. | àan náŋsǎy | weelaa khun wâaŋ,<br>khun tham araj<br>When you are free,<br>what do you do?  | weelaa phǒm wâaŋ,<br>phǒm <u>àan náŋsǎy</u><br>When I'm not<br>busy, I read.  |
| 4. | duu náŋsǎy | weelaa khun ca sòp,<br>khun khuan tham araj<br>When you are going<br>to have a test,<br>what would you do?                      | weelaa phǒm ca sòp<br>phǒm khuan <u>duu náŋsǎy</u><br>When I'm going to<br>have a test, I<br>should study.                |
| 5. | aŋkrít     | weelaa khun tòp khruu,<br>khun khít pen phaasǎa<br>araj<br>When you answer<br>the teacher, what<br>language do you<br>think in? | weelaa phǒm tòp khruu,<br>phǒm khít pen phaasǎa<br>aŋkrít<br>When I answer the<br>teacher, I think<br>in English.         |
| 6. | kêe        | weelaa khun phûut phít,<br>khruu khuan ca tham<br>jaŋŋaj<br>When you speak<br>incorrectly,<br>what should the<br>teacher do?    | weelaa phǒm phûut phít,<br>khruu khuan ca <u>kêe</u><br>When I speak<br>incorrectly,<br>the teacher<br>should correct me. |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |    |   |  |  |
|----|---|--|--|
| 7. | thăam khruu<br>weelaa khun mâj khâwcaj,<br>khun tham janŋaj<br>When you don't<br>understand, what<br>do you do?   | weelaa phǒm mâj khâwcaj,<br>phǒm <u>thăam khruu</u><br>When I don't<br>understand, I<br>ask the teacher.   |  |
| 8. | paj thaان<br>kaafɛɛ<br>weelaa khun jùt phák<br>khun tham araaj<br>When you take a<br>break, what do<br>you do?  | weelaa phǒm jùt phák,<br>phǒm <u>paj thaان kaafɛɛ</u><br>When I take a<br>break I go drink<br>coffee.  |  |
| 9. | paj chaaj<br>thalee<br>weelaa aakaat rón,<br>khon ameerikan sùan<br>mâak chǒp paj thîaw<br>thîinǎj<br>When the weather's<br>hot, where do most<br>Americans like to<br>go on vacations? | weelaa aakaat rón,<br>khon ameerikan sùan<br>mâak chǒp <u>paj<br/>chaajthalee</u><br>When the weather's<br>hot, most Americans<br>like to go to the<br>seashore. |  |

### s) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- | <u>Question</u>   | <u>Response</u>   |
|---|---|
| 1. <u>toon thîi</u> khun pen dèk, khun<br>rian nánsǎy thîinǎj<br>When you were a child,<br>where did you go to<br>school? | <u>toon thîi</u> phǒm pen dèk, phǒm<br>rian nánsǎy thîi tàncaŋwàt<br>When I was a child,<br>I studied in the<br>provinces (outside<br>Bangkok). |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

2. toon thîi kháw maa hǎa khun,  
khun paj nǎj

When he came to see  
you, where were you  
gone?

3. toon thîi khun jùu thîi  
prathâet wíatnaam, khun  
mii tamnèɛŋ araj

When you were stationed  
in Vietnam, what was  
your position (rank)?

4. toon thîi khun rêem rian  
phaasǎa thaj màj màj, khun  
khít wǎa phaasǎa thaj jáak  
máj

When you had just  
begun to study Thai,  
did you think it was  
hard?

5. toon thîi khun jan jùu thîi  
ameerikaa, khun rúucàk kháw  
léɛw rýjan

Did you meet him  
while you were in  
America?

6. toon thîi khun jan jùu thîi  
ameerikaa, khun rian phaasǎa  
thaj thîinǎj

When you were in America,  
where did you study Thai.

- toon thîi kháw maa hǎa phǎm,  
phǎm paj sýy khǒŋ khǎaŋŋòk

When he came to see  
me, I had gone out  
shopping.

- toon thîi phǎm jùu thîi  
prathâet wíatnaam, phǎm  
pen roŋ koŋsǔn

When I was stationed  
in Vietnam, I was  
consul.

- toon thîi phǎm rêem rian  
phaasǎathaj màj, phǎm khít  
wǎa phaasǎathaj jáak mǎak

When I first began  
to study Thai, I  
thought it was very  
hard.

- toon thîi phǎm jan jùu thîi  
ameerikaa, phǎm jan mǎj  
rúucàk kháw

I didn't know him  
when I was in  
America.

- toon thîi phǎm jan jùu thîi  
ameerikaa, phǎm rian phaasǎa  
thaj thîi roŋrian sǒn phaasǎa

When I was in America,  
I studied Thai at a  
language school.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### t) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. raw rian jùu thîi wóochintân	khun rúcàk kháw mýaraj  When were you acquainted with him?	phǒm rúcàk kháw toon thîi <u>raw rian jùu thîi</u> <u>wóochintân</u>  I knew him when we were studying in Washington.
2. khun òok paj khâan nòok	kháw maa mýaraj  When did he come?	kháw maa toon thîi <u>òok paj khâan nòok</u>  He came as you were leaving.
3. tèenṇaan	khun dâj khǒṇkhwǎn lǎaj jàan mýaraj  When did you get a lot of gifts?	phǒm dâj khǒṇkhwǎn lǎaj jàan toon thîi <u>phǒm tèenṇaan</u>  I got a lot of presents when I married.
4. raw mâj jùu	mii khon maa hǎa mýaraj  When did people come to see (us)?	mii khon maa hǎa toon thîi <u>raw mâj jùu</u>  People came to see us while we were not in.
5. phýan phǒm	toon thîi khun mâj sabaaj, khraj tham aahǎan hâj khun  Who cooked for you while you were sick?	<u>phýan phǒm</u> tham aahǎan hâj toon thîi phǒm mâj sabaaj  My friend cooked for me while I was sick.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

6.   thîi lópburii      toon sǎnkhraam lôok      phǎm jùu thîi lópburii  
                          khrán thîi 2, khun      toon sǎnkhraam lôok  
                          jùu thîinǎj      khrán thîi sǎn  
                          Where were you      I was living in  
                          living during      Lopburi during  
                          World War II?      World War II.

### u) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1.   toon thîi phǎm rian phaasǎa thaj jùu thîi éf-és-aj,  
      weelaa phǎm phûut phít, khon thaj mák ca kĕe hǎj  
          When I was studying Thai at the FSI, when  
          (ever) I made a mistake, a Thai usually  
          corrected it.
2.   toon thîi raw jan ameerikaa, weelaa phanrajaa  
      paj sýy aahǎan, phǎm paj chûaj phanrajaa samĕe  
          When we were still living in America, when  
          (ever) my wife went to buy food, I always  
          helped her.
3.   toon thîi raw jùu naj ameerikaa, weelaa phanrajaa  
      phǎm mǎj wǎan, phǎm chûaj tham aahǎan cháaw hǎj khǎw  
          When we were living in America, when (ever)  
          my wife was busy, I made breakfast for her.
4.   toon thîi phǎm thamnaan krasuan tàan prathĕet màj màj  
      weelaa khǎw chĕen phǎm paj naanlǎan, phǎm paj samĕe  
          When I had just begun working at the Foreign  
          Ministry, when (ever) they invited me to a  
          party, I always went.

v) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. kháw mâj dâj páj khondiaw khrôpkhrua khôongkháw  
paj duâj

He didn't go alone. His family went too.

2. wanní phôm ca paj thúra thîi thanaakhaan lé ca  
paj hăa phyan thîinân duâj

Today I'm going to the bank on business and  
I will see a friend there also.

3. kháw pen khon suăj lé dii duâj

She is a beautiful person and good too.

4. phôm mâj dâj rian phûut thâwnán tè rian àan lé  
khŷan duâj

I didn't just learn to speak but to read  
and write also.

5. kháw hâj théksiî paj sòn lé hâj khooj kháw duâj

He had the taxi pick him up and had it  
wait for him too.

6. kháw pen khâarâatchakaan lé nákkaanmyan duâj

He's a government employee and a politician too.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 27.3 EXERCISES

- a) Student A asks Student B to call a taxi for him. They discuss destination, where he will stop on the way, how long the driver will have to wait, what the cost will be, and whether the cost is too high or not. When Student B points out that it will be hard to get a taxi at that particular time, Student A says he will call one himself.

NOTE: Use the Basic Dialog as a guide only.

- b) Student A asks Student B whether he does any of the following things for himself or whether he has someone do them for him; and if so, who does them for him.
- |                             |                         |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. drive a car              | 5. call taxis           |
| 2. go shopping              | 6. make telephone calls |
| 3. bargain                  | 7. other activities     |
| 4. buy food or other things |                         |
- c) Student A asks Student B what he told (ask, let, ordered, requested, wanted) someone to do and if he did it. Use the following exchange as a model:

A: khun bòok (khỏỏ, anújâat, sàŋ) hâj kháw (phýan khun, etc.) tham araj

B: phỏm bòok (khỏỏ, etc.) hâj kháw khỏỏj jùu thĩnĩĩ  
(thaan jaa, thoo maa hǎa khun, etc.)

A: (kháw) khỏỏj (thaan, etc.) rýplàaw khráp

B: plàaw khráp or khráp

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 27.4 VOCABULARY

anujâat	permit
... (hâj)	
athíbaaj	explain
een	by himself, herself, themselves, etc., without outside help of influence.
òok siǎn	to pronounce, to voice
baan	classifier for <u>door</u>
chán	I, me. Man speaking to persons of inferior status. Women use it more often with persons of inferior social status, to strangers, acquaintances, friends and intimates.
chabàp	classifier for letter or newspaper
duâj	too, also
hâj	for the benefit or in place of someone else
jùt	to stop
jùt pháak	to take a break
kêe	to correct
kæen paj	excessively
khâadoojsaan	fare
khamthǎam (khôo)	question
khít	to figure or reckon, to think
khon khàprót	chauffeur, driver
khǎo	to request
lòok	world
mâj khôoj (ca)	hardly, rather
mák ca	usually, likely to
nákkaanmyan (khon)	a politician
phák phòn	to rest

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

phɛɛŋ	to be expensive
phìt	to be incorrect, a mistake
raakhaa	price
sakòt	to spell (words)
sàŋ (hâj)	to order
sǎŋkhraam	war
sòɔp	to test, be tested
taam	to follow, after, along
tamnéɛŋ	position (rank)
tòɔ (raakhaa)	to bargain
tòɔ (thoorasàp)	to make a phone call

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### LESSON TWENTY-EIGHT

#### 28.0 BASIC DIALOG: Conversation With a Taxi Driver

David:	théksíi.	Taxi!
khon khàp théksíi:	paj nǎj khráp	Where to?
(Taxi driver)		
David:	paj pratunám, aw thâwràj	How much to Pratnam?
khon khàp:	sìp sǒɔŋ bàat khráp	Twelve baht.
David:	cèt bàat, dâj máj	How about seven?
	klâj khêsníi eɛŋ	It's right near here.
khon khàp:	mâj wǎj rǎkhráp	Can't do it.
	thǎɛwnán rǒt tít	The traffic's heavy over there.
David:	nán, pèet bàat, paj máj	Then, can you do it for eight?
	khəəj paj dâj pèet bàat	I've been for eight (before).
khon khàp:	kâaw bàat kôlɛɛwkan, paj máj	Let's say nine baht. Do you want to go?
David:	paj kô paj	If we're going, let's go.
	chûaj khàp cháa cháa	Please drive slowly.
	nòɔj nakhráp	

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

(théksîi khàp rew mâak.

khun deewít ləəj phûut wâa '...')

(The taxi goes very fast,

so David says, '....')

David: khun khráp, jàa khàp  
rew nák sikhráp

Say, don't drive so fast.

karunaa khàp cháa  
cháa nòoj, dâj máj  
khráp

Could you please slow  
down a little?

### 28.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) In affirmative requests stative verbs (dii, cháa, etc.) usually occur in reduplicated form when used as modifiers of other verbs.

phûut cháa cháa nòoj nakhráp 'Speak a little slower.'

nòoj 'a little' usually occurs after the stative verb and serves to soften the request.

In negative requests the stative verb is not usually reduplicated.

jàa phûut rew nák nakhráp 'Don't speak so fast.'

nák 'so, so much' may occur after the stative verb.

- b) In the construction jùu klâj klâj khêe nîi een, een is used to emphasize the shortness of the distance.

- c) ròk is also pronounced ròk, ròok, ròk, rò, when followed by khráp or khâ or ə when followed by há. It is used with statements of negation, or contradiction, or when correcting a misapprehension. It makes a statement milder or less abrupt.

mâj wăj ròkhráp

'I can't do it.'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- d) ná or na with kháp at the end of a sentence indicates that a comment is being made and attention is being called to it. No response to it is necessary, but if one is made, it is kháp.

A: khòokkhun mâak ná 'Thanks very much.'  
B: kháp (I heard you.)

Request = khàp diidii { ná 'Drive well.'  
                              nakhráp

- e) Notice the difference in usage between sí, si, and sí, sí is used to request some one to do something. If it is to be done for the speaker, nòoj or thii may be used to soften the request.

khàp cháacháa nòoj sí (or sikhráp) 'Slow down a bit.'

If the speaker is urging someone to do something that he has failed to do on the first request, or urging someone to do something that obviously needs doing, he may use sí.

khàp cháacháa (nòoj) sí 'Slow down (as I asked you to)'

- f) kô léew kan is a phrase which is used in affirmative sentences to indicate preference for a particular course of action and to urge another to agree to it. English equivalents vary from example to example:

kâaw bàat kô léew kan 'Let's say nine baht.'

waanníi khun khàprót kô 'How about you driving today!?'  
léew kan



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 28.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	paj <u>pratuunám</u> , aw thâwràj How much to Pratunam?
1. sɿjêek râatprasǎn	paj <u>sɿjêek râatprasǎn</u> , aw thâwràj How much to Ratprasong Corner?
2. roonǎn khiŋ	paj <u>roonǎn khiŋ</u> , aw thâwràj How much to King's Cinema?
3. phiɪ éks	paj <u>phiɪéks</u> , aw thâwràj How much to the P. X.?
4. thammasàat	paj <u>thammasàat</u> , aw thâwràj How much to Thammasart (University)?
5. juusít, thanǎn sǎathǎontâj	paj <u>juusít thanǎn sǎathǎon tâj</u> , aw thâwràj How much to USIS on South Sathorn?
6. roonphajaabaan mitchân	paj <u>roonphajaabaan mitchân</u> , aw thâwràj How much to the Mission Hospital?
7. roonreem khéppitôn saphaan khwaaj	paj <u>roonreem khéppitôn saphaan khwaaj</u> , aw thâwràj
8. pathumwan	paj <u>pathumwan</u> , aw thâwràj How much to Patoomwan Corner?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

9.   thanŏn sukhŭmwít                      paj thanŏn sukhŭmwít tron klâjklâj  
      tron klâjklâj sŏoj                    sŏoj jfislŭp hâa, aw thâwràj  
      jfislŭp hâa                              How much to Sukhumwit Street, right  
   near Lane 25?
10.   thanŏn râatdamneen                paj thanŏn râatdamneen tron  
      tron anúsăawariī                   anúsăawariī prachaathíppataj,  
      prachaathíppataj                   aw thâwràj  
   How much to Rachadamnoen Street  
   right at the Freedom Monument?

### b) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1.   kháp cháacháa nŏoj nakhráp  
      Drive a little slower.
2.   maa cháawcháaw nŏoj nakhráp  
      Come a bit earlier.
3.   phŭut dandŭn nŏoj nakhráp  
      Speak a bit louder.
4.   paj rewrew nŏoj nakhráp  
      Go a little faster.
5.   klàp maa rewrew nŏoj nakhráp  
      Come back a bit sooner.
6.   duu nánŭsŭy māk māk nŏoj nakhráp  
      Study a little bit more.
7.   thaan māk māk nŏoj nakhráp  
      Eat a little more.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### c) Sentence Construction Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. phûut , cháa	phûut <u>cháacháa</u> nòoj nakhráp Speak a little slower.
2. khàp , cháa	khàp <u>cháacháa</u> nòoj nakhráp Drive a little slower.
3. klàp maa , rew	klàp maa <u>rewrew</u> nòoj nakhráp Come back a little sooner.
4. thaان , mâak	thaان <u>mâakmâak</u> nòoj nakhráp Eat a little more.
5. jùu , naan	jùu <u>naannaan</u> nòoj nakhráp Stay a while longer.
6. tham (aahǎan), mâak	tham <u>mâakmâak</u> nòoj nakhráp Do a bit more.
7. phûut , dan	phûut <u>dandan</u> nòoj nakhráp Speak a little louder.
8. phûut kàp kháw , dii	phûut kàp kháw <u>dii dii</u> nòoj nakhráp Speak a little better with him.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### d) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. jàa khàp rew nák nakhráp  
Don't drive so fast.
2. jàa phûut rew nák nakhráp  
Don't speak so fast.
3. jàa phûut khôj nák nakhráp  
Don't speak so softly.
4. jàa dœen cháa nák nakhráp  
Don't walk so slowly.
5. jàa maa cháa nák nakhráp  
Don't come so late.
6. jàa maa sǎaj nák nakhráp  
Don't come so late (in the morning).
7. jàa paj naan nák nakhráp  
Don't be gone for so long.

### e) Transformation Drill

#### Affirmative

1. khàp cháacháa nòoj nakhráp  
Drive a little slower.
2. maa cháawcháaw nòoj nakhráp  
Come a little earlier.

#### Negative

- jàa khàp rew nák nakhráp  
Don't drive so fast.
- jàa maa sǎaj nák nakhráp  
Don't come so late.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>3. paj rewrew nòoj nakhráp<br/>Go a little faster.</p>         | <p>jàa paj cháa nák nakhráp<br/>Don't go so slow.</p>         |
| <p>4. phûut khôjkhôj nòoj nakhráp<br/>Speak a little softer.</p>  | <p>jàa phûut dan nák nakhráp<br/>Don't speak so loud.</p>     |
| <p>5. klàp rewrew nòoj nakhráp<br/>Come back a little sooner.</p> | <p>jàa klàp cháa nák nakhráp<br/>Don't come back so late.</p> |
| <p>6. maa cháawcháaw nòoj nakhráp<br/>Come a little earlier.</p>  | <p>jàa maa sǎaj nák nakhráp<br/>Don't come so late.</p>       |

### f) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- |             |   |      |                                  |
|-------------|---|------|----------------------------------|
| 1. sǎaj can | { | ná   |                                  |
|             | } | nahá | Very pretty, isn't it?           |
| 2. sǎaj     | { | ná   |                                  |
|             | } | nahá | Pretty, isn't it?                |
| 3. kèn can  | { | ná   |                                  |
|             | } | nahá | Very expert, isn't it?           |
| 4. dii      | { | ná   |                                  |
|             | } | nahá | Good, isn't it?                  |
| 5. chát can | { | ná   |                                  |
|             | } | nahá | Very clear (distinct), isn't it? |
| 6. phæen    | { | ná   |                                  |
|             | } | nahá | Expensive, isn't it?             |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |     |          |   |               |                                     |
|-----|----------|---|---------------|-------------------------------------|
| 7.  | naan can | } | ná<br>nahá    | A very long time, isn't it?         |
| 8.  | cháa can | } | ná<br>nahá    | Very slow, isn't it?                |
| 9.  | rew can  | } | ná<br>nakhráp | Very fast (quick), isn't it?        |
| 10. | klaɰ can | } | ná<br>nahá    | Very far, isn't it?                 |
| 11. | mâak     | } | ná<br>nahá    | (It's) a lot, isn't it?             |
| 12. | mâak can |   | ná<br>nahá    | (It's) a very great deal, isn't it? |

### g) Transformation Drill

From the situation given in Column 1, one student makes a comment (as a reaction to the situation) to another student.

<u>Situation</u>	<u>Comment</u>
1. faràɰ khonnán phûut phaasǎa thaj çat mâak That Westerner speaks Thai very distinctly.	faràɰ khonnán phûut phaasǎa thaj çat can ná That Westerner speaks Thai very distinctly, doesn't he?
2. kháw pen khon nâabyà He's a bore.	kháw pen khon nâabyà ná He's a bore, isn't he?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 3. phûujǵn khonnií sǵaj mâak<br>That woman is very<br>pretty.                          | phûujǵn khonnií sǵaj caŋ ná<br>That woman is very<br>pretty, isn't she?                              |
| 4. phaasǵa thaj nǵi jâak<br>Thai is hard.  | phaasǵa thaj nǵi jâak ná<br>Thai is hard, isn't it?  |
| 5. phyân khun pen khon sanùk<br>Your friend is an<br>amusing person.                   | phyân khun pen khon sanùk ná<br>Your friend is an<br>amusing person,<br>isn't he?                    |
| 6. phûuchaaŋ khonnán lēn thennít<br>kēn mâak<br>That fellow plays<br>tennis very well. | phûuchaaŋ khonnán lēn thennít<br>kēn caŋ ná<br>That fellow plays<br>tennis very well,<br>doesn't he? |
| 7. mǵo khonnán dii mâak<br>That doctor is very<br>good.                                | mǵo khonnán dii caŋ ná<br>That doctor is very<br>good, isn't he?                                     |
| 8. bâan khun praphâat jùu<br>klaŋ mâak<br>Mr. Prapas' house is<br>very far.            | bâan khun praphâat jùu klaŋ<br>caŋ<br>Mr. Prapas' house is<br>very far, isn't it?                    |
| 9. wanníí aakàat dii<br>Today the weather's<br>fine.                                   | wanníí aakàat dii ná<br>Today the weather's<br>fine, isn't it?                                       |
| 10. thǵinǵi khǵoŋ phēēŋ mâak<br>Here things are<br>very expensive.                     | thǵinǵi khǵoŋ phēēŋ caŋ ná<br>Here things are<br>very expensive,<br>aren't they?                     |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

11. thěwníí rôt tít mâak

The traffic is very  
heavy in this section.

thěwníí rôt tít can ná

The traffic is very heavy  
in this section, isn't it?

### h) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. khàp cháacháa nòoj sikhráp

Slow down a bit.

2. maa cháacháaw nòoj sikhráp

Come a little earlier.

3. phûut dandan nòoj sikhráp

Speak a little louder.

4. paj rewrew nòoj sikhráp

Go a little faster.

5. duu nânssýy mâakmâak nòoj sikhráp

Study a little more.

### i) Transformation Drill

#### Situation

(khun khàp rôt rew)

(khun maa sǎaj thúkwan)

(khun phûut khôj mâak)

#### Request

khàp cháacháa nòoj sikhráp

Drive a little slower.

maa cháawcháaw nòoj sikhráp

Come a bit earlier.

phûut dandan nòoj sikhráp

Speak a little louder.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

(khun paj cháa mâak)

paj rewrew nòoj sikhráp  
Go a little earlier.

(khun thamnaan cháa)

tham rewrew nòoj sikhráp  
Work a little faster.

(khun thaان nòoj)

thaان mâak mâak nòoj sikhráp  
Eat a little more.

(khun phûut mâj dii)

phûut dii dii nòoj sikhráp  
Speak a little better.

### j) Transformation Drill

#### Affirmative Request

1. khàp cháacháa nòoj sikhráp  
Drive slower.
2. maa cháawcháaw nòoj sikhráp  
Come earlier.
3. paj rewrew nòoj sikhráp  
Go sooner.
4. khuj kan khôj khôj nòoj sikhráp  
Converse more quietly.
5. thamnaan rewrew nòoj sikhráp  
Work faster.

#### Negative Request

- jàa khàp rew nák sikhráp  
Don't drive so fast.
- jàa maa sǎaj nák sikhráp  
Don't come so late.
- jàa paj cháa nák sikhráp  
Don't go so late.
- jàa khuj kan dan nák sikhráp  
Don't converse in such  
loud voices.
- jàa tham cháa nák sikhráp  
Don't work so slowly.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### k) Transformation Drill

Change Pattern 1 to 2 with na, which has the meaning: 'a reminder to...'; change Pattern 1 to 3 with si, which has the meaning 'you are urged to...'.

<u>Pattern 1</u>	<u>Pattern 2</u>	<u>Pattern 3</u>
1. paj	paj nakhráp	paj sikhráp
2. maa	maa nakhráp	maa sikhráp
3. phûut	phûut nakhráp	phûut sikhráp
4. tòop	tòop nakhráp	tòop sikhráp
5. paj rewrew	paj rewrew nakhráp	paj rewrew sikhráp
6. phûut phaasǎathaj	phûut phaasǎathaj nakhráp	phûut phaasǎathaj sikhráp
7. jàa phûut phaasǎa aṅkrít	jàa phûut phaasǎa aṅkrít nakhráp	jàa phûut phaasǎa aṅkrít sikhráp

### 28.3 EXERCISES (The instructor reads the sentences describing the situation and a student makes an appropriate response.)

1. khun kamlaṅ ca khýn théksǐi . khun mâj jàak hâj théksǐi kàp rôt rew . khun phûut wâa '.....'.
2. khun kamlaṅ nân théksǐi . khonkhàp khàp rew mâak . khun mâj jàak hâj kháw khàp rew.khun phûut wâa '.....'.
3. nákrían phûut sǎaṅ khôj kœn paj.khun jàak hâj kháw phûut daṅdaṅ . khun phûut wâa '.....'.

4. phrûnníi khun ca paj thîaw kàp phyên tềs cháaw . kháw ca tồoṇ maa phóp khun thîi bân . khun jàak hâj kháw maa cháaw cháaw . khun phûut wâa '.....'.
5. khun cim chuan phyên khuj saměe. khun mât jàak hâj khun cim chuan phyên khuj . khun phûut wâa '.....'.
6. khun coo hẻn phûujỷn khon nỷn . kháw suấj mầak . khun coo phûut kàp phyên wâa '.....'.
7. khun coon khít wâa wanníi aakàat dii mầak . khun coon phûut kàp phyên wâa '.....'.
8. khruu jàak hâj nákrían phûut phaasǎa thaj . khruu phûut wâa '.....'.
9. nákrían kamlan phûut phaasǎa aṇkrít kan . khruu jàak hâj kháw phûut phaasǎa thaj kan . khruu phûut wâa '.....'.

#### 28.4 VOCABULARY

anúsǎawarií (hẻn)	monument
een	is used to emphasize the shortness of the distance (in this lesson).
coo	Joe
dan	loud
khềs { níi nán	up to (such and such a point) that near (far), to that extent
khéppitôn	Capitol, name of a hotel in Bangkok
khôj	softly, low (of sound)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

kô léəw kan	used in affirmative sentences to indicate preference for a particular course of action and to urge another to agree to it.
măj wăj	can't do it, unable to, is incapable of (because of lack of physical strength of energy)
mítchân	Mission, name of a hospital in Bangkok
nák	so, so much
pathumwan	a section in Bangkok
prachaathíppataj	freedom and also the name of a monument in Bangkok
roonănġ khinġ	King's Cinema
rót tít	the traffic's heavy
tít	to get stuck (to, in), to connect, to stick (to), to attach (to)
saphaan khwaaj	Buffalo Bridge, name of the section in Bangkok on Phaholyothin Road
si, sġ, sí	to request someone to do something to urge someone to do something that he has failed to do on the first request or obviously needs doing
thěəwnán	over there, that area
thii	may be used in the place of <u>nòoj</u> to soften the request if it is to be done for the speaker.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### LESSON TWENTY-NINE

29.0 BASIC DIALOG: paj hăa araj thaان khâanônok  
'Going Out to Eat.'

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| A: phǒm ca paj hăa araj thaان khâanônok . paj dûajkan máj                    | I'm going to go out for something to eat. Want to go along?                 |
| B: paj<br>khun chuan khraj paj dûaj rýplàaw                                  | Yes.<br>Did you ask anybody(else) to go along?                              |
| A: mâj dâj chuan khraj phró<br>mâj miì khraj jùu                             | No, I didn't invite anybody because nobody was in.                          |
| B: khun sǒmsǐi lâ  | How about Somsri?   |
| A: mâj maa<br>pùaj   | She didn't come.<br>She's sick.   |
| B: nán, thaان sèt léew<br>thâa raw miì weelaa phoo<br>paj jîam khâw sàk nõoj | Then, after we have eaten, if we have time, let's go visit her for a while, |
| A: diì máj   | O.K.?   |
| B: awsi kh ráp<br>nán, raw rîip paj kan thè<br>dǎaw ca klàp maa mâj than     | Good idea!<br>Then let's hurry or we won't get back on time.                |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

### 29.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG AND OTHER NOTES

a) aw máj means 'Will you accept?' or 'Is it acceptable?' It is often used after sentences in which a proposal is made. The response to it is mâj aw khráp 'I won't (accept it)' or 'It isn't (acceptable)', or awsi khráp 'O.K.' or 'I'll accept (it)'. aw máj is similar in usage and meaning to dii máj in this particular sense.

b) As indicated in 11.16, khraj and araj are not always used as question words. They may also be used as indefinite pronouns:

(1) in questions with máj, rǎy, or rýplàaw, or

(2) as the object complement of certain verbs in affirmative and negative sentences, as below:

<u>mii khraj maa bâan máj</u>	'Is anyone coming.'
<u>mâj mii khraj maa</u>	'Nobody's coming.'
<u>khraj khraj kô bòok wâa</u>	'Everybody says Bangkok's
<u>krunthêep mâj sǔaj</u>	not pretty.'

Although both khraj and khon occur with indefinite meaning as object complements of the verb mii, they can not be used interchangeably. The difference in usage is illustrated below:

<u>Situation</u>	<u>Utterance</u>	<u>Meaning</u>
1. Mr. <u>A</u> had a house for sale, so he put an ad in the paper with his telephone number.	<u>A</u> to his secretary: <u>mii khon thoo maa</u> <u>bâan rýplàaw</u>	Did I get any calls (about that ad)?
2. Mr. <u>A</u> is expecting a call from some friends about a trip to Pataya.	<u>A</u> to his wife: <u>mii khraj thoo maa</u> <u>bâan rýplàaw</u>	Did anyone (of my friends) call?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

The usage in negative sentence is illustrated below:

1. There are several newly built houses on a street.      mâj mii khon jùu      'Nobody's living in those houses.'
2. Some one knocks on a door but gets no response.      mâj mii khraj jùu      'Nobody's home.'

### 29.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) sèt, and than are called completive verbs. They occur in the structure SENTENCE + COMPLETIVE VERB.

1. sèt 'to finish some activity (often of indefinite length and of temporary nature)'

kháw thamnaan sèt léew      'He has finished working.'

kháw jan tham mâj sèt      'He hasn't finished doing it yet.'

2. than means 'to accomplish something in time, to have time to', or 'to catch up to.'

phǒm maa roonrian mâj than      'I didn't come to school on time'.

3. After action verbs (paj, thaan, etc.) the question word máj indicates that a voluntary choice is possible, hence it is used in invitations, suggestions, etc. (See 9.1)

raw paj sýy khǒn.      'We are going shopping.'

paj dûajkan máj      'Want to go along?'

Responses to questions of this type may be:

Affirmative: paj sihá      'I would like to'  
(ready acceptance)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

Negative: mâj əhá  
khòopkhun

'Thanks, no.'  
(polite refusal)

- b) rýplàaw is used with action verbs to indicate 'past time'.

pa.j rýplàaw 'Did you go?'

pa.j khráp 'I did.'

There are two possible negative responses to this type of question: mâj dâj (pa.j) and mâj (pa.j). Choice of the mâj dâj form of the negative indicates that circumstances prevented the speaker from doing something. Choice of the mâj form indicates that the speaker did not do something out of choice. Observe the examples below:

mýawaanníi khun pa.j naanlían rýplàaw

'Did you go to the party yesterday?'

phǒm mâj dâj pa.j khráp (phró phǒm mâj wân)

'I didn't go (because I was busy.)'

phǒm mâj pa.j khráp (phró phǒm mâj jàak pa.j).

'I didn't go (because I didn't want to go.)'

- c) thè (thə, thət) 'why not, let's' is a sentence particle. It is used in making mild suggestions. When joint activity is called for, it occurs after kan.

raw pa.j kin khâaw kan thèkhráp 'Let's go eat.'

- d) dǎaw may occur as a sentence connective, with the meaning 'or else, otherwise'. In the examples below it is used to indicate that one event follows as the logical consequence of another.

raw rîip pa.j kan thèkhráp, dǎaw ca klàp maa mâj than

'Let's hurry; otherwise, we won't get back in time.'

jàa cháa nák nakhráp, dǎaw naan ca mâj sèt

'Don't be so slow, or else the work won't be finished.'



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 29.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Substitution Drill

##### Cue

##### Pattern

(phǒm) ca paj hǎa ara.j thaan, paj duâjkan máj khráp

I'm going to get something to eat. Want to come along?

1. thaان khâaw

ca paj thaan khâaw. paj duâjkan máj khráp

I'm going to eat. Want to come along?

2. sýy khǒn

ca paj sýy khǒn. paj duâjkan máj khráp

I'm going to eat. Want to come along?  
shopping?

3. sòn còtmǎaj

ca paj sòn còtmǎaj. paj duâjkan máj khráp

I'm going to mail a letter. Want to come along?

4. thaان kaafɛɛ

ca paj thaan kaafɛɛ paj duâjkan máj khráp

I'm going to drink coffee. Want to come along.

5. duu nǎn

ca paj duu nǎn paj duâjkan máj khráp

I'm going to a movie. Want to come along?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### b) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>		
		<u>No</u>	<u>Yes</u> (Reluctant acceptance)	<u>Yes</u> (Willing acceptance)
1.	ca paj hǎa araj thaان paj duâjkan máj	mâj əhá khòɔpkhun	paj kô paj paj kô paj	paj sihá paj sihá
2.	paj thaان kaafɛɛ kan máj	mâj əhá khòɔpkhun	paj kô paj	paj sihá
3.	paj duu nəŋ kan máj	mâj əhá khòɔpkhun	paj kô paj	paj sihá
4.	paj máj	mâj əhá khòɔpkhun	paj kô paj	paj sihá

### c) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. Yes	thaان máj Do you want to eat?	khòɔpkhun { khráp } há? Yes, thank you.
2. No	thaان máj Do you want to eat?	mâj əhá, khòɔpkhun No, thank you.
3. Yes	dỳym máj Do you want something to drink?	khòɔpkhun há Yes, thank you.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |     |                    |  |                                      |
|-----|--------------------|--|--------------------------------------|
| 4.  | No.                | kaafɛɛ máj<br>Do you want some coffee?   | mâj ɛhá, khòɔpkhun<br>No, thank you. |
| 5.  | No.                | aw máj<br>Would you <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; margin-left: 10px;"> <math>\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{like some?} \\ \text{accept any offer?} \end{array} \right.</math> </div> | mâj ɛhá, khòɔpkhun<br>No, thank you. |
| 6.  | Yes<br>(reluctant) | paj máj<br>Would you like to go?   | paj kô paj<br>Well, O.K.             |
| 7.  | Yes.               | duu máj<br>Do you want to look?  | khòɔpkhun há<br>Yes, thank you.      |
| 8.  | No.                | ààn máj<br>Do you want to read (it)?   | mâj ɛhá, khòɔpkhun<br>No, thank you. |
| 9.  | No.                | thaan dūajkan máj<br>Would you like to eat<br>together?  | mâj ɛhá, khòɔpkhun<br>No, thank you. |
| 10. | No.                | pāj dūajkan máj<br>Do you want to go along?  | mâj ɛhá, khòɔpkhun<br>No, thank you. |

### d) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. Yes.	sýy máj Want to buy it?	sýy Yes.
2. No.	sýy máj Want to buy it?	mâj sýy No.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |                       |  |                                |
|-----------------------|--|--------------------------------|
| 3. Yes                | duu máj<br>Want to look?   | duu<br>Yes.                    |
| 4. No                 | aw máj<br>Would you like some?<br>Will you accept my offer?  | mâj aw<br>No.                  |
| 5. No                 | maa máj<br>Would you like to come?   | mâj maa<br>No.                 |
| 6. Yes                | paj máj<br>Would you like to go?   | paj<br>Yes.                    |
| 7. Yes<br>(reluctant) | khǎaj máj<br>Would you like to sell (it)?  | khǎaj kô khǎaj<br>Well, maybe. |
| 8. No                 | rót khanní ca khǎaj máj<br>Will you sell this car?   | mâj khǎaj<br>No.               |
| 9. No                 | phrûnní ca paj naan máj<br>Are you going to the affair<br>tomorrow?                                  | mâj paj<br>No.                 |
| 10. Yes               | kháw ca hâj khun paj<br>tàncaŋwát, aw máj<br>They want you to go to the<br>provinces, are you going? | aw<br>Yes.                     |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### e) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u> (Past action)	<u>Response</u>
1. Yes	thaan rýplàaw Did you eat?	thaan Yes, I did.
2. No	dýym rýplàaw Did you have anything	mâj dâj dýym No, I didn't.
3. No	paj rýplàaw Did you go?	mâj dâj paj No, I didn't.
4. Yes	sýy rýplàaw Did you buy (it)?	sýy Yes, I did.
5. No	khǎaj rýplàaw Did you sell (it)?	mâj dâj khǎaj No, I didn't.
6. No	duu rýplàaw Did you look (at it)?	mâj dâj duu No, I didn't.
7. Yes	àan rýplàaw Did you read (it)?	àan Yes, I did.
8. No	aw rýplàaw Did you take it?	mâj dâj aw No, I didn't.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### f) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. m̄awaanníi, kháw paj naanlían rýplàaw khráp Did he go to the party yesterday?	kháw <u>māj</u> <u>paj</u> khráp (phró kháw <u>māj</u> <u>jàak</u> paj). He didn't go because he didn't want to.
2. m̄awaanníi, khun paj naanlían rýplàaw khráp Did you go to the party yesterday?	phǒm <u>māj</u> <u>dāj</u> <u>paj</u> khráp phró phǒm <u>māj</u> <u>wān</u> I didn't go because I was busy.
3. m̄akhyynníi, phyan khun thaان aahāan thaj rýplàaw. Did your friend eat Thai food last night?	kháw <u>māj</u> <u>thaan</u> khráp (phró kháw <u>māj</u> <u>chōp</u> aahāan thaj) He didn't because he doesn't like Thai food.
4. m̄akhyynníi, phyan khun thaان aahāan thaj rýplàaw Did your friend eat Thai food last night?	kháw <u>māj</u> <u>dāj</u> <u>thaan</u> khráp phró aahāan mòt He didn't because it was all eaten up.
5. khun sýy nānsýy rýplàaw khráp Did you buy the book?	phǒm <u>māj</u> <u>dāj</u> <u>sýy</u> khráp phró <u>māj</u> <u>mīi</u> <u>nēn</u> I didn't because I didn't have any money.
6. khun sýy nānsýy rýplàaw khráp Did you buy the book?	phǒm khít wāa phǒm ca <u>māj</u> <u>sýy</u> khráp phró phǒm <u>māj</u> <u>chōp</u> nānsýy lēm níi I thought I wouldn't buy it because I didn't like this book.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### g) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. thŷŋ weelaa phákw lésw, phákw thèkhráp  
It's break time. Take a break.
2. khâaŋnáj mii kâwíi, (raw) paj nân thîinân kan thèkhráp  
There are chairs inside. Let's go sit there.
3. thîaŋ lésw, paj thaán khâaw kan thèkhráp  
It's noon already. Let's go eat.
4. paj kan thèkhráp  
Let's go.
5. wanníi raw phûut phaasǎa tháj kan thèkhráp  
Today let's speak Thai.
6. kháw cháa kœen paj. raw thaán kan thèkhráp  
He's too late. Let's go ahead and eat.

### h) Transformation Drill (Reword the sentences using chuan.)

1. Teacher: kháw phûut káp phǒm 'wansǎwníi paj  
phátthajaa kan máj khráp'  
He said to me, 'Would you like to go  
to Pataya (with us) next Saturday?'  
Student: kháw chuan phǒm paj phátthajaa.  
He invited me to go to Pataya.
2. Teacher: kháw phûut káp phǒm 'wanníi raw phûut  
phaasǎa tháj kan thè'  
He said to me, 'Let's speak Thai today.'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

Student: kháw chuan phǒm phûut phaasǎa thaj

He invited me to speak Thai (with him).

1. khun cǝon phûut kàp phǒm 'jenníi raw paj hǎa  
aahǎan thaj thaان kan máj khráp
2. phýan khun phûut kàp phǒm 'phrýnníi , paj lén  
thennít kan máj khráp
3. mýawaanníi phanrajaa phǒm phûut kàp phǒm 'paj duu  
nǎn kan thè (raw paj duu nǎn kan)
4. kháw phûut kàp phǒm 'phrûnníi kháw ca mii kaanbanjaaj  
rýan myan thaj . paj fan dûajkan máj khráp'
5. kháw phûut kàp phǒm wǎa dýym kaafɛɛ máj khráp
6. kháw phûut kàp phǒm 'wanníi , thaان khǎaw kàp phǒm  
na khráp
7. kháw phûut kàp phǒm 'phǒm jáak hǎj khun paj thamnaan  
kàp phǒm

### 1) Substitution Drill

#### Cue

#### Pattern

1. phǒm

phǒm thamnaan sèt lésw

I've finished working.

2. raw

raw thamnaan sèt lésw

We've finished working.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |     |                |  |
|-----|----------------|--|
| 3.  | rian nánsǎy    | raw <u>rian</u> <u>nánsǎy</u> sèt léəw<br>We've finished studying.                 |
| 4.  | thaan aahǎan   | raw <u>thaan</u> <u>aahǎan</u> sèt léəw<br>We've finished eating.                  |
| 5.  | tham kàp khâaw | raw <u>tham</u> <u>kàp</u> <u>khâaw</u> sèt léəw<br>We've finished cooking.        |
| 6.  | sòop           | raw <u>sòop</u> sèt léəw<br>We've finished the test.                               |
| 7.  | khǎan còtmǎaj  | raw <u>khǎan</u> <u>còtmǎaj</u> sèt léəw<br>We've finished writing letters.        |
| 8.  | phǎm           | <u>phǎm</u> khǎan còtmǎaj sèt léəw<br>I've finished writing letters.               |
| 9.  | phûut          | phǎm <u>phûut</u> sèt léəw<br>I've finished talking.                               |
| 10. | thoorasàp      | phǎm <u>thoorasàp</u> sèt léəw<br>I've finished phoning.                           |
| 11. | fan wítthajú   | phǎm <u>fan</u> <u>wítthajú</u> sèt léəw<br>I've finished listening.               |
| 12. | phûut kàp kháw | phǎm <u>phûut</u> <u>kàp</u> <u>kháw</u> sèt léəw<br>I've finished talking to him. |
| 13. | sýy khǒon      | phǎm <u>sýy</u> <u>khǒon</u> sèt léəw<br>I've finished shopping.                   |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

14. sòn còtmǎaj                      phǎm sòn còtmǎaj sèt léew  
I've finished mailing the letter.

15. tham thúra                      phǎm tham thúra sèt léew  
I've finished my business.

### j) Recognition and Familiarization Drill (sèt as main verb.)

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. naan khǒn khun sèt máj khráp Is your work finished?	naan khǒn phǎm sèt léew khráp My work is finished.
2. naan khǒn phýan khun sèt máj khráp Is your friend's work finished?	naan khǒn phýan phǎm jan mǎj sèt khráp My friend's work isn't finished.
3. rūup khǒn khun sèt máj khráp Is your picture finished?	rūup khǒn phǎm sèt léew khráp My picture is finished.
4. bāan khǒn khun sèt léew rýjan khráp Is your house finished yet?	bāan khǒn phǎm jan mǎj sèt khráp My house isn't finished yet.
5. nánsýy khǒn khun sèt léew rýjan khráp Is your book finished yet?	nánsýy khǒn phǎm sèt léew khráp My book is finished already.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

k) Transformation Drill (Listen to the affirmative sentence and add a negative sentence with tè kháw jaŋ mâj sèt.)

### Pattern 1

1. phǒm thamŋaan sèt lésw  
I've finished working.
2. phǒm thaان khâaw sèt lésw  
I've finished eating
3. phǒm rian náŋsǎy sèt lésw  
I've finished studying
4. phǒm phûut thoorasàp sèt lésw  
I've finished telephoning
5. phǒm lēn thennǐs sèt lésw  
I've finished playing tennis
6. phǒm sòop sèt lésw  
I've finished my exams
7. phǒm sǎy khǒŋ sèt lésw  
I've finished shopping
8. phǒm tham thúra sèt lésw  
I've finished my business
9. phǒm khǎan còtmǎaj sèt lésw  
I've finished writing a letter

### Pattern 2

- tè kháw jaŋ tham mâj sèt  
but he hasn't yet.
- tè kháw jaŋ thaان mâj sèt  
but he hasn't yet.
- tè kháw jaŋ rian mâj sèt  
but he hasn't yet.
- tè kháw phûut mâj sèt  
but he hasn't yet.
- tè kháw jaŋ lēn mâj sèt  
but he hasn't yet.
- tè kháw jaŋ sòop mâj sèt  
but he hasn't yet.
- tè kháw jaŋ sǎy mâj sèt  
but he hasn't yet.
- tè kháw jaŋ tham mâj sèt  
but he isn't finished yet.
- tè kháw jaŋ khǎan mâj sèt  
but he isn't finished yet.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>10. phǒm thaان kaafɛs sèt lɛ́sw<br/>I've finished drinking coffee</p> <p>11. phǒm tham aahǎan sèt lɛ́sw<br/>I've finishing cooking</p> | <p>tè kháw jan thaان máj sèt<br/>but he hasn't yet.</p> <p>tè kháw jan tham máj sèt<br/>but she hasn't yet.</p> |
|---|---|

### 1) Expansion Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p><u>Example 1:</u></p> <p style="padding-left: 100px;">weelaa phoo máj</p> <p style="padding-left: 80px;">mii weelaa phoo máj</p> <p style="padding-left: 60px;">raw mii weelaa phoo máj</p> | <p>phoo máj      Is it enough?</p> <p>Is the time sufficient?</p> <p>Is there sufficient time?</p> <p>Do we have enough time?</p> |
|--|---|

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p><u>Example 2:</u></p> <p style="padding-left: 100px;">aahǎan phoo máj</p> <p style="padding-left: 80px;">mii aahǎan phoo máj</p> <p style="padding-left: 60px;">raw mii aahǎan phoo máj</p> | <p>phoo máj      Is it enough?</p> <p>Is the food sufficient?</p> <p>Is there sufficient food?</p> <p>Do we have enough food?</p> |
|--|---|

Continue the drill by having the teacher provide cue words which the student incorporates in the sentences given:

- | <u>Teacher</u>  | <u>Students</u>   |
|---|---|
| <p>1. phoo máj</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">khruu</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">mii</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">raw</p>   | <p>phoo máj</p> <p>khruu phoo máj</p> <p>mii khruu phoo máj</p> <p>raw mii khruu phoo máj</p>     |
| <p>2. phoo máj</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">nánsǎy</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">mii</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">khun</p> | <p>phoo máj</p> <p>nánsǎy phoo máj</p> <p>mii nánsǎy phoo máj</p> <p>khun mii nánsǎy phoo máj</p> |

- m) Expansion Drill

It's not sufficient.

time

The time is not sufficient.

there is

There isn't sufficient time.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

T: phǎm	I
S: phǎm mii weelaa mâj phoo khráp	I do not have sufficient time.

Continue by supplying the following sets of words and having the students make expansions like the one in the example above:

1. mâj phoo ... khruu ... mii ... raw
2. mâj phoo ... câwnâathîi ... mii ... raw
3. mâj phoo ... nɛn ... hâj phǎm ... kháw

### n) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

Notice the difference in usage between jîam and hǎa in the following drill.

1. khun sǎmsii mâj sabaaj . raw ca paj jîam kháw thîi  
roonphajaabaan

Somsri is not well. We'll go visit her at the hospital.

2. khun sǎmsii mâj sabaaj . khun sǎmsii paj hǎa mǎo  
thîi roonphajaabaan

Somsri is not well. Somsri went to see the doctor at the hospital.

3. phǎm mii thúra kakhun pradît . phǎm ca paj hǎa  
khun pradît.

I have business with Mr. Pradit. I'll go see him.

- I don't have any business with Pradit. I just want to meet and talk to him. I'll go visit him this evening.

- This Christmas I'm going to take my wife to visit my parents in Chicago.

- He wants to meet John. Please take him to see John.

- kháw maa jîam khun                      He came to visit you.

Continue the drill by having the students form sentences like those above using the following sets of cue words:

1. than máj khráp ... maa thamnaan ... khun ...  
m̄yacháawníi
2. than máj khráp ... paj duu nǎj ... khun ...  
m̄yakhyyinníi
3. than máj khráp ... klàp maa ... rian ... khun ...  
m̄yabàa.jníi

p) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. roonrrian khâw weelaa sǎam moon cháaw. phǎm maa thǎy  
roonrrian weelaa sǎam moon khrÿn  
phǎm maa roonrrian mâj than.  
School starts at 9:00.  
I came to school at 9:30  
I didn't come to school on time.
  
2. kaanprachum rêem weelaa bàaj sǎon moon tron. phǎm  
paj thǎy thǎiprachum weelaa bàaj sǎam moon  
phǎm paj prachum mâj than  
The meeting began at 2 p.m. sharp.  
I got to the meeting at 3:00.  
I didn't get to the meeting on time.
  
3. thǎithamnaan khâw weelaa { sǎon moon khrÿn cháaw  
{ pèet  
phǎm paj thǎy thǎi thamnaan weelaa { sǎam moon  
{ kǎaw



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

phǒm paj thamnaan māj than

The office opens at 8:30 a.m.

I got there at 9:00.

I didn't get to work on time.

4. raw thaان aahāan klaanwan sèt weelaa bàaj sǒn moon  
kwàa.roonrian khāw weelaa bàaj sǒn moon tron.

raw klàp maa rian māj than

We finished eating lunch after 2:00 a.m.

School starts at 2:00 p.m. sharp.

We didn't return to class on time.

5. weelaa sǒn naathii. phǒm tǒn khít khamtòp sǎam  
naathii.

phǒm khít (khamtòp) māj than

phǒm tòp māj than

The time (provided) was 2 minutes.

It took me 3 minutes to think of an answer.

I didn't think of the answer in time. (or)

I didn't answer in time.

6. khāw phūut rew kǎen paj. phǒm fan māj than

He speaks too fast.

I can't catch it.

7. phǒm ca bòk khāw té khāw paj léew. phǒm bòk  
khāw māj than

I was going to tell him, but he had already gone.

I wasn't in time to tell him.

q) Transformation Drill

T: roonrian khâw weelaa sǎam moon cháaw  
School starts at 9:00 a.m.

phǒm maa thǎy roonrian weelaa sǎam moon khrȳn  
I got to school at 9:30 a.m.

Cue words: maa roonrian            get to school

S: khun maa roonrian māj than  
You didn't get to school on time.

1. thīi thamnaan khǒn phǒm khâw weelaa sǒn moon cháaw  
mýacháawníi phǒm paj thǎy thīithamnaan weelaa sǎam  
moon cháaw

Cue words: mýacháawníi, paj thamnaan

2. kháw rêem phûut weelaa nyn thûm. phǒm paj thǎy  
thīinân weelaa thûm sǐisǐp hâa

Cue words: paj fan kháw phûut

3. kháw hâj weelaa phǒm tòop sǒn naathīi. phǒm cháj  
weelaa tham sǎam naathīi

Cue word: tòop

4. phǒm ca bòok kháw tè kháw paj lǐew

Cue word: tòop

5. rótmee òok càak pāaj weelaa thīan sǐp naathīi.

phǒm paj thǎy pāaj rótmee weelaa thīan sǐp hâa naathīi

Cue words: paj khyn rótmee.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

6. phǒm paj ráp kháw weelaa sǒn thûm. kháw òok càak  
bân weelaa nỳn thûm

Cue words: paj ráp kháw

7. ráankhǎajkhǒn pít weelaa hòk moon jen. phǒm paj  
thỳn thǐi ráan weelaa nỳn thûm.

Cue words: paj sýy khǒn

r) Sentence Combination Drill (Combine sentences 1 and 2  
using dǎaw as the sentence  
connective.)

1. raw rǐip paj kan the khráp  
raw ca klàp maa mǎj than

raw rǐip paj kan the khráp,  
dǎaw ca klàp maa mǎj than.

Let's hurry, otherwise we  
won't get back in time.

2. fǒn kamlan tòk  
jàa òok paj khâanòok,  
khun ca mǎj sabaaj

fǒn kamlan tòk, jàa òok paj  
khâanòok, dǎaw ca mǎj sabaaj

It's raining. Don't go  
outside, or you'll get  
sick.

3. rǐip paj kan thekhráp,  
raw ca mǎj mii weelaa thaان  
aahǎan klaanwan

rǐip paj kan thekhráp,  
dǎaw ca mǎj mii weelaa thaان  
aahǎan klaanwan

Let's hurry; otherwise, we  
won't have time to eat lunch.

4. jàa cháa nák nakhráp  
khun ca paj mǎj than

jàa cháa nák nakhráp,  
dǎaw ca paj mǎj than

Don't be so slow; otherwise,  
you won't get there in time.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

5. jàa phûut phaasǎa aṅkrít  
kan sikhráp  
khun ca lyym phaasǎa thaj  
jàa phûut phaasǎa aṅkrít kan  
sikhráp, dǎaw ca lyym phaasǎa-  
thaj  
Don't speak English, or you  
will forget Thai.
6. jàa duu náṅsǎy sikhráp  
khun ca òok sǎaṅ mǎj thùuk  
jàa duu náṅsǎy sikhráp,  
dǎaw ca òok sǎaṅ mǎj thùuk  
Don't look at your book, or  
your pronunciation will be  
bad.
7. tỳyn thèkhráp, sǎaj léew,  
khun ca paj thamṇaan mǎj  
than  
tỳyn thèkhráp, sǎaj léew,  
dǎaw ca paj thamṇaan mǎj than  
Get up. It's late already.  
Otherwise you won't get to  
work on time.
8. jàa cháj ṇēen mǎak nák  
khun ca mǎj mii ṇēn thǎaw  
juuròop  
jàa cháj ṇēen mǎak nák,  
dǎaw ca mǎj mii ṇēn thǎaw  
juuròop  
Don't spend so much money,  
otherwise you won't have any  
money for your trip to Europe.
9. jàa thamṇaan mǎak kēen paj  
khun ca mǎj sabaaj  
jàa thamṇaan mǎak kēen paj,  
dǎaw ca mǎj sabaaj  
Don't work too much, or  
you get sick.
10. jàa thǎaw mǎak  
khun ca sòop tòk  
jàa thǎaw mǎak, dǎaw ca sòop  
tòk  
Don't go out a lot (in the  
evenings) or you'll fail  
your exams.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### s) Completion Drill

Example: T: rīp paj kan thəkháp, dǎaw (raw) ca...  
S: rīp paj kan thəkháp, dǎaw (raw) ca klàp  
maa māj than

1. jàa noon dýk nák dǎaw ca...
2. jàa phūut rew nák dǎaw nákrian ca...
3. rīp paj thəkháp dǎaw ca...
4. phūut phaasǎa thaj kan sikhráp dǎaw ca...
5. jàa cháa nák sikhráp dǎaw naan ca...
6. jàa phūut naan kəen paj dǎaw kháw ca...
7. jàa thamnaan mǎak kəen paj dǎaw ca...

### t) Response Drill (Give a negative response.)

<u>Pattern 1</u> (Question)	<u>Pattern 2</u> (Negative Response)
1. khun chuan khraj paj dūaj rýplàaw Did you ask anyone to go along?	māj dǎj chuan khraj (lǎej) I didn't ask anyone (at all).
2. khun rúucàk khraj thǎinān bāaŋ māj Do you recognize anybody there?	māj rúucàk khraj (lǎej) No, I don't recognize anybody (at all).
3. phóp khraj bāaŋ rýplàaw Did you meet anybody?	māj phóp khraj (lǎej) I didn't meet anybody (at all).

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>4. sýy araj maa bâan<br/>rýplàaw</p> <p>Did you buy anything?</p>                      | <p>mâj dâj sýy araj maa (lœej)</p> <p>I didn't buy anything.</p>            |
| <p>5. kamlan khít araj jùu rýy<br/>Thinking about<br/>something?</p>                      | <p>mâj dâj khít araj (lœej)</p> <p>I'm not thinking about<br/>anything.</p> |
| <p>6. wanjút, paj năj bâan<br/>rýplàaw</p> <p>Did you go anywhere<br/>on the holiday?</p> | <p>mâj dâj paj năj (lœej)</p> <p>I didn't go anywhere.</p>                  |

u) Response Drill (Give a negative response)

- | <u>Pattern 1</u>   | <u>Pattern 2</u>                                      |
|--|---|
| <p>1. mi khraj jùu bâan<br/>Was anybody in?</p>                            | <p>mâj mi khraj jùu<br/>Nobody was in.</p>            |
| <p>2. mi khraj rúucàk kháw<br/>bâan<br/>Did anybody recognize<br/>him?</p> | <p>mâj mi khraj rúucàk<br/>Nobody recognized him.</p> |
| <p>3. mi khraj hěn bâan<br/>Does anybody see?</p>                          | <p>mâj mi khraj hěn<br/>No one sees.</p>              |
| <p>4. mi khraj tham dâj bâan<br/>Can anyone do it?</p>                     | <p>mâj mi khraj tham dâj<br/>Nobody can do it.</p>    |
| <p>5. mi khon maa máj<br/>Is anybody (at all)</p>                          | <p>mâj mi khraj maa<br/>Nobody came.</p>              |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 6. mii khon maa hǎa rýplàaw<br>Did anyone (at all)<br>come visiting? | mâj mii khraj maa<br>Nobody came.        |
| 7. mii khon thoo maa bâan<br>rýplàaw<br>Did anyone telephone?        | mâj mii khraj thoo maa<br>Nobody called. |

### v) Transformation Drill

Change from the human indefinite general form khon  
to the human indefinite familiar form khraj.

#### Pattern 1

1. mii khon thoo maa bâan  
rýplàaw  
Were there any calls?
2. mii khon maa hǎa rýplàaw  
Were there any  
visitors?
3. mii khon maa lên dontri  
rýplàaw  
Did people come and  
play music?
4. mii khon paj duu kilaa  
mâak máj  
Do many people go  
watch sports?
5. mii khon paj chûaj kháw  
rýplàaw  
Did he get help from  
anyone?

#### Pattern 2

1. mii khraj thoo maa bâan  
rýplàaw  
Did anyone call?
2. mii khraj maa hǎa (phǎm)  
rýplàaw  
Did anyone come to  
see me?
3. mii khraj maa lên dontri  
rýplàaw  
Did anyone come and  
play music?
4. mii khraj paj duu kilaa  
mâj  
Does anyone (of you)  
(go) watch sports?
5. mii khraj paj chûaj kháw  
rýplàaw  
Did anybody go  
help him?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### w) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. khra,jkhra,j bòok phǒm wāa phūujǐn chianmǎj sǎaj  
Everybody tells me Chiangmai women are beautiful.
2. khra,jkhra,j chǒp phró khǎw pen khon sanùk  
Everybody likes him because he's a lot of fun.
3. mǎj chǎj phǒm thāwnán, khra,jkhra,j kô jàak ruaj  
Not just me, (but) everybody wants to be rich.
4. khǎw bòok khra,jkhra,j wāa khǎw pen naaj tamrùat  
He told everybody he was a policeman.

### x) Transformation Drill (Change to negative.)

#### Pattern 1

1. khra,jkhra,j kô bòok phǒm  
wāa chianmǎj nāajùu  
Everybody told me  
Chiangmai is a nice  
place to live.
2. khra,jkhra,j kô chǒp khǎw  
Everybody likes him.
3. khra,jkhra,j kô thǎam phǒm  
wāa thammaj khun mǎj paj  
Everybody asked me  
why you didn't go.
4. khra,jkhra,j kô jàak hěn  
Everybody wants to  
see.

#### Pattern 2

1. mǎj mii khra,j bòok phǒm  
wāa chianmǎj nāajùu  
Nobody told me  
Chiangmai was a  
nice place to live.
2. mǎj mii khra,j chǒp khǎw  
Nobody likes him.
3. mǎj mii khra,j thǎam phǒm  
wāa thammaj khun mǎj paj  
Nobody asked me why  
you didn't go.
4. mǎj mii khra,j jàak hěn  
Nobody wants to see



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 29.4 EXERCISES

- a) One student extends an invitation to another,  
The second student indicates that he is:
1. willing      2. unwilling      or      3. reluctant to accept  
the invitation.
- b) Student 1 asks Student 2 if he did something.  
Student 2 says he didn't.  
When student 1 asks him why he didn't, he says  
that he didn't want to do it.
- c) Repeat the above exercise except for the final response.  
In the final response Student 2 says he didn't do it.  
because he was busy, sick, etc.
- d) Student 1 says: 'A friend said to me, would you like  
to...'.  
Student 2 says: 'Did he invites your wife to go too'.  
Student 1 says: 'No, he didn't.'
- e) Student 1: 'Would you like to...'  
Student 2: 'Are you inviting my wife to go  
along too?'  
Student 1: 'I am.'
- f) Student 1 asks Student 2 if he has finished doing  
something (reading books, studying, etc.)  
Student 2 says he has and tells when he finished (or)  
says that he hasn't and gives the reason.
- g) Student 1 asks Student 2 when he arrived at a certain  
place. Student 2 gives him the time. Student 1 asks  
him if he got there on time. Student 2 says he did  
or he didn't.
- h) Student 1 says to Student 2: 'Have you finished --- yet?  
Student 2 says: 'Yes, I have, but (Student 3) hasn't yet.  
Student 3 says: 'That's not so. I've already finished.'  
(Substitute different activities in the first question.)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- i) Student 1: 'Let's hurry.'  
Student 2: 'Why?'  
Student 3: Otherwise we won't get to school on time.  
(Substitute other place names for school.)
- j) Student 1: 'Don't be so slow.'  
Student 2: 'Why?'  
Student 3: 'Otherwise you won't get to ... on time.'

### 29.5 VOCABULARY

aâw	oh! (excl. of surprise, dismay)
aw máj	will you accept? (question word: It is similar in usage to <u>dii máj</u> .)
indianâ	Indiana
òoksĭan	to pronounce
chíkhaakôo	Chicago
dĭaw	or else, otherwise
jĭam	to go to see, to visit
kaanbanjaaj	lecturing, narration
kaanprachum	a meeting conference, session
khamtòop (khôo)	the answer
lĕæk	to be over, to end, to quit, discontinue, to give up, to break up
pâaj	(traffic) stop sign, tag, sign
pâaj rôtmee	bus stop

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

prachum	to meet (in a group), to hold a meeting, meeting, assemble
pradìt	Pradit (given name)
sèt	to finish some activity (often of indefinite length and of temporary nature)
than	to accomplish something in time, to have time to, to catch up to
(kan) thè, (thə, thèet)	why not, let's
thîiprachum (hèn)	a meeting (place), assembly, gathering (of people)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### LESSON THIRTY

#### (Part I.)

#### 30.1 BASIC EPISODE:

##### A Visit to the Seventh Day Adventist Hospital

khun coon kamlan ca paj jiam phyân thîi roonphajaabaan  
mitchân. phyân khǎon khǎw mâj sabaaj maa lǎaj wan lǎew

khǎw hǎj khonchǎj paj rǎak thǎksîi hǎj khǎw nǎj khan .  
khǎw mâj jǎak paj rǎak een phrǎo weelaa thǎksîi hǎn faràn  
khǎw mǎk ca bǎok raakhaa khǎadoojsǎan phǎen.

khonchǎj rǎak thǎksîi maa hǎj khǎw khan nǎj . pen rǎtmǎj .  
khǎw bǎok khun coon wǎa càak bâan khun coon paj roonphajaa-  
baan mitchân khonkhàp khǎit khǎadoojsǎan sǐphǎa bàat. khun  
coon bǎok wǎa phǎen paj. khǎw hǎj khonchǎj tòo sǐp bàat.  
thǎksîi bǎok wǎa thǎa mâj dǎj sǐpsǎon bàat khǎw kǎ mâj paj  
phrǎo thǎwnán rǎt tǐt.

thǎksîi khonnán khàprǎot rew mǎak . khun coon khǎo hǎj khǎw  
khàp cháa cháa tè khonkhàp mâj fan khǎw lǎej . khun coon  
mâj sǎap ca tham janaj dii.

khun coon mâj sǎap wǎa thaaj roonphajaabaan anújǎat hǎj  
khǎw jiam khonkhǎj dǎj kǐi moon . khǎw paj thǎj thǎinǎn  
cháa kǎen paj, khǎw lǎej paj jiam phyân mâj than . khǎw  
rǎak rǎt thǎksîi khan nǎj lé bǎok hǎj paj sǎon khǎw thǎi  
talàat nát, sanǎam luǎj

30.2 QUESTIONS ON THE BASIC EPISODE

1. khun coon paj roonphajaabaan mitchân thammaj
2. thammaj khâw thýn māj riak theksîi een
3. càak bân khun coon paj roonphajaabaan mitchân theksîi khít khâadoojsăan thâwràj
4. khun coon hâj khonchâj tò thâwràj
5. theksîi bòok wâa janṇaj
6. theksîi khonnán khàprót pen janṇaj bân
7. khun coon tham janṇaj. khâw bòok khonkhàp wâa janṇaj
8. khun coon paj than jîam phýan māj
9. thammaj khâw thýn paj māj than
10. càak roonphajaabaan mitchân, khâw paj năj

(Part II.)

30.3 BASIC EPISODE: A Visit to the Sunday Market.

khun coon deen thîaw talàatnát jùu lăaj chûamoon. thîinîi mii khõnkhăaj thúk jàan, thán khõnchâj, tônmaaaj, lé sàtlían . khõn thîinîi baan jàan kô thùuk, baan jàan kô phɛɛn . khun coon sýy khõn lăaj jàan . khâw sýy khõnlên hâj lûuk lé khõnchâj hâj phanrajaa . khâw sýy khõn plèekplèek thîi ameerikaa māj mii hâj khunphôo khunmêe khâw . khâw khít wâa mýa thýn wan khritsamâat khâw ca sòn khõn làwnîi paj hâj khunphôo khunmêe khõn khâw thîi ameerikaa. sāmrap nõonsăaw khõnkhâw, khâw jan māj sâap wâa ca hâj araj dii.

sýy khǒŋ sèt lěsw khun cǒn kô ca klàp bâan . khanàthîi  
 kháw kamlan jyyŋ hǎa thěksiî jùu kháw phóp phýan khon nyn.  
 phýan khonnán chýy khun samǎan khun samǎan khǎej rian thîi  
 ameerikaa . mýa rian cǒp lěsw, kháw klàp maa myan thaj lě  
 thamnaan pen khâarâatchakaan krasuan mahàatthaj . kháw dâj  
 thun paj duu naan thîi ameerikaa mýa pii khoosǒo nyn phan  
 kâw rǒoj hòksíp. khun cǒn phóp khun samǎan tǒn thîi khun  
 cǒn kamlan rian phaasǎathaj jùu thîi ameerikaa . tǒnnán  
 kháw phóp khonthaj lǎaj khon phró weelaa mi khonthaj paj  
 thîi wǒochintân cǎwnâathîi krasuan tàanprathêet ca nénam  
 hâj nákrían phaasǎathaj rúucàk phró kháw jàak hâj nákrían  
 rúucàk khonthaj lě hət phûut phaasǎathaj kàp khonthaj lǎaj  
 lǎaj khon.

30.4 QUESTIONS ON THE BASIC EPISODE (Part II.)

1. khun cǒn deen thîaw jùu naan máj
2. thîinân mi araj khǎaj bâan
3. khǒŋ thîinân thùuk rýy phœn
4. khun cǒn sýy araj dâj bâan
5. wankhrítsamâat khun cǒn ca sǒn araj paj hâj khunphǒo  
 khunmêe kháw
6. wan khrítsamâat khun cǒn ca hâj khǒŋkhwǎn araj  
 nóŋsǎaw kháw
7. khanàthîi kháw ca klàp kháw phóp khraj
8. khun samǎan thamnaan araj

9. kháw khəej paj ameerikaa máj . mýaraj
10. kháw paj een ryy dáj thun paj
11. kháw paj ameerikaa thammaj
12. thǎi ameerikaa, khun coon phóop khun samǎan mýaràj
13. thammaj cǎwnǎathǎi krasuan tǎanprathēet thǎy nǎnam  
hǎj nǎkrian thǎi rian phaasǎathaj rúcàk khonthaj thǎi  
paj càak myanthaj

### 30.5 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) mýa occurs in two different types of constructions:

1. mýa +  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Noun Phrase} \\ \text{Verb Phrase} \end{array} \right.$  or
2. mýa + Sentence

In the first type mýa means 'at the time of' and usually refers to events in the past.

Examples are: mýa khyynnǎi 'last night'  
mýa cháawnǎi 'this morning' (when the morning  
has passed)  
mýa dèk (dèk) 'in childhood'

In mýa + Sentences constructions the reference may be to past time:

phǎm maa mýa kháw paj lésw 'I came when he had already  
gone.'

Or to future time or to 'conditional' situations:

mýa phǎm mǐi rót, phǎm 'When I have a car, I'll  
{thǎy} ca paj dáj be able to go.'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

<u>kháw ca chûaj khun (kô tɛɛ)</u> <u>mýa kháw hɛn wâa khun mîi</u> <u>prajòot kakháw</u>	'He will help you only when he sees that you are useful to him.'
---	--

b) Although both sèt and còp are completive verbs they differ somewhat in meaning and usage:

1. sèt 'to finish some activity (often of indefinite length and of temporary nature)'

<u>kháw thamnaan sèt léɛw</u>	'He has finished working.'
-------------------------------	----------------------------

<u>kháw jan tham mâj sèt</u>	'He hasn't finished doing it yet.'
------------------------------	------------------------------------

2. còp 'to complete a task (often of prescribed duration, such as a course of study)'

<u>lîk 2 dyan phǒm ca rian</u> <u>phaasǎa thaj còp khráp</u>	'I'll finish the Thai course in 2 months.'
---	---

<u>raw duu nǎn mâj còp</u>	'We didn't see the movie to the end.'
----------------------------	--

NOTE: Either sèt or còp may occur in sentences which are otherwise identical. The selection of one over the other indicates a difference in emphasis or focus. With sèt the focus is on the activity in general; with còp it is on the completion of a particular action.

<u>kháw khǎan còtmǎaj sèt</u> <u>léɛw</u>	'He has finished letter writing.'
--	--------------------------------------

<u>kháw khǎan còtmǎaj còp</u> <u>léɛw</u>	'He has finished writing a (the) letter.'
--	--



30.6 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

m̄yā waanníi	yesterday
m̄yā cháaw	this morning (past time)
m̄yā bàaj sǎon moon	2 p.m. (It's later than that now.)
m̄yā khyyn	last night
m̄yā dèk (dèk)	in childhood
m̄yā phǎm maa thǔn thīnīi	When I had just got here.
màj māj	
m̄yā phǎm jan thamnaan jùu	When I was still working
thīnān	here.

b) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1

- kháw ca maa thǔn weelaa bàaj  
moon  
He'll get her at 1 p.m.
- phǎm ca thaana weelaa hāa moon  
jen  
I'll eat at 5 p.m.
- phǎm ca phóp kháw jennīi  
I'll meet her this evening.
- kháw ca paj tǎoncháaw  
They'll go in the morning.

Pattern 2

- kháw maa thǔn (léew) m̄yā  
bàaj moon  
He got here at 1 p.m.
- phǎm thaana (léew) m̄yā hāa  
moon jen  
I ate at 5 p.m.
- phǎm phóp kháw (léew) m̄yā  
jennīi  
I met her this evening.
- kháw paj m̄yā (tǎon) cháaw  
They went in the morning.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>5.   kháw ca maa hǎa phǎm weelaa<br/>              bàaj moon<br/>              He'll come to see me<br/>              at 1 p.m.</p> | <p>     kháw maa hǎa phǎm mǎa bàaj<br/>              moon<br/>              He came to see me at<br/>              1 p.m.</p> |
|--|---|

### c) Response Drill

The instructor reads a cue sentence then forms a question based on it. A student gives a response to it. The instructor forms a second sentence, and the student answers that. Sentences and responses are based on the cue sentence.

1.   mǎa kháw rian còp, kháw kô klàp maa myan thaj  
      When he finished his studies, he returned to  
      Thailand.

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
<p>mǎa kháw rian còp,               kháw tham janŋaj               When he finished his               studies, what did he               do?</p>	<p>     kháw klàp paj myan thaj               He returned to Thailand.</p>

2.   mǎa kháw dèk dèk, kháw chôp nǐi rian  
      When he was a child, he liked to avoid studying.

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
<p>mǎa dèk dèk, kháw pen               janŋaj               What was he like, when               he was a child?</p>	<p>     kháw chôp nǐi rian               He liked to avoid               studying.</p>

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

kháw chôp nǐi rian m̄yaraj	m̄ya dèk dèk
When did he like to avoid studying?	When he was a child.

3. phǒm maa m̄ya kháw paj lésw  
I came when he had already gone.

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
phǒm maa m̄yaraj When did I come?	m̄ya kháw paj lésw When he had already gone.
toon thǐi kháw jan jùu phǒm maa rýjan Had I come while he was still there?	jan m̄aj maa . khun maa m̄ya kháw paj lésw Not yet. You came after he had already gone.

4. m̄ya phǒm rêem rian phaasǎa thaj m̄aj m̄aj, phǒm khít w̄a phaasǎa thaj j̄aak m̄aak  
Right after I started studying Thai, I thought it was very hard.

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
m̄ya phǒm rêem rian phaasǎa thaj m̄aj m̄aj, phǒm rúusýk janraj Right after I began studying Thai, how did I feel?	khun khít w̄a phaasǎa thaj j̄aak m̄aak You thought Thai was very hard.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

tɔɔnníi phǒm khít wâa phaasǎa  
thaj mâj jâak, chǎj máj

Now I think Thai isn't  
hard, right?

mâj chǎj, tɔɔnníi khun  
khít wâa mâj jâak myǎn mǎa  
tɔɔnthíi khun rian màj màj

Not so. Now you don't  
think it's (as) hard (as)  
when you first started  
studying it.

### d) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. khun àan nǎnsǎy lêmníi còp lèew rýjaŋ khráp Have you finished reading this book yet?	phǒm àan nǎnsǎy lêmníi còp lèew khráp I have finished reading this book.
2. khun àan nǎnsǎy lêmnan còp lèew rýjaŋ khráp Have you finished reading that book yet?	phǒm àan nǎnsǎy lêm nan jaŋ mâj còp khráp I haven't finished reading that book yet.
3. khun khǎan còtmǎaj còp lèew rýjaŋ khráp. phǒm ca paj sòn hǎj Have you finished writing that letter yet? I'll mail it for you.	phǒm khǎan còtmǎaj jaŋ mâj còp khráp I haven't finished writing the letter yet.
4. khun ca rian phaasǎa thaj còp mǎaràj khráp When will you finish studying Thai?	phǒm ca rian còp dyan nǎa khráp I'll finish next month.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>5. khun rian bòt thîi sîp pèet còp<br/>lèew rýjaŋ khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Have you finished studying<br/>lesson 18 yet?</p>               | <p>(phǒm) rian (bót thîi sîp<br/>pèet) jaŋ mâj còp khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(I) haven't finished<br/>studying (lesson 18)<br/>yet.</p>                                |
| <p>6. mýakhyynnîi, khun duu năŋ còp<br/>máj khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Did you finish seeing the<br/>movie last night? (see to<br/>the end)</p> | <p>mýakhyynnîi, raw duu năŋ<br/>mâj còp phró tōŋ rîip<br/>klàp bâan kōon năŋ lēek</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">No, because we had to<br/>hurry home before it<br/>was over.</p> |
| <p>7. khun phûut còp (rýaŋ) máj khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Did you finish telling<br/>your story.</p>   | <p>phǒm phûut mâj còp khráp<br/>phró kháw hâj weelaa phǒm<br/>nóŋj kēen paj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">I didn't finish because<br/>they gave me too little<br/>time.</p>      |
| <p>8. khun rian (mahăawítthajaalaj)<br/>còp pii năj khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">In which year did you<br/>graduate from the university?</p>      | <p>phǒm { rian còp pii phosŋ<br/>          { còp</p> <p>sŋŋ phan hâarŋŋj khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">I graduated in B.E.<br/>2500.</p>                                   |
| <p>9. khun cóp càak mahăawít-<br/>thajaalaj araj khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">What university did you<br/>graduate from?</p>                      | <p>phǒm còp càak mahăawíttha-<br/>jaalaj indianâa khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">I graduated from the<br/>University of Indiana.</p>  |

## **THAI BASIC COURSE**

---

### Translation of Basic Episode: Part I.

John is about to go visit a friend at the 7th Day Adventist Hospital. His friend has been ill for several days.

He had a servant to get a taxi (for him). He didn't want to go for one himself, because whenever taxis see a Westerner, they ask for higher fares.

The servant called a taxi for him. It was new. He told John the driver figured the fare from his house to the Adventist Hospital at 15 baht. John said it was too expensive. He had the servant bargain for 10. The taxi (driver) said that if he didn't get 12 baht, then he wasn't going because the traffic was heavy in that area.

The driver drove very fast. John asked him to drive slower, but the driver didn't listen to him at all. John didn't know what to do.

John didn't know at what time the hospital allowed one to visit patients. He got there too late, so he didn't get there in time to visit his friend. He called a taxi and told (the driver) to take him to the (Sunday) Market at the Pramane Grounds.

### Translation of Basic Episode: Part II.

John spent hours walking around at the Sunday Market. There were all kinds of things for sale there: things to use, plants, and pets. Some things were cheap; some expensive. John bought a lot of things. He bought toys for children and things to use for his wife. He bought unusual things that are not available in the U.S. for his mother and father. He thought he'd send some of these things to his mother and father in America at Christmas. He didn't know what he ought to give to his younger sister.

The shopping done, John goes home. While he is standing looking for a taxi, he meets a friend. His friend is name Saman. Saman studied in America. After he graduated, he

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

returned to Thailand and worked as an employee of the Ministry of the Interior. He got a grant to go observe work (1) in America in 1960. John met Saman while John was studying Thai in America. At that time he met many Thais because when there are Thais visiting Washington, State Department officials introduce them to the students of Thai, because they want student to meet Thais and to practice speaking Thai with many Thais.

### 30.7 VOCABULARY

duu naan	to observe work, an observation
(fỳk)hàt	to practice, drill, train
khanáthîi	while
khonkhâj (khon)	patients
khǒonlên (jàan)	play things, toy
làwníi	these, this group
làwnán	those, that group
nénam	to introduce, to advise, to suggest
khamnénam	advice, suggestion, instruction
plèek (plèek)	to be unusual, to be strange
samǎan	Saman, male or female first name
sàt (tua)	animal
...lían (tua)	pet
thun (thun)	a grant, fund, investment, a scholarship, a fellowship
tôn máaj (tôn)	plants, tree

---

(1) An observation tour

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### LESSON THIRTY-ONE

#### 31.0 BASIC DIALOG: Looking for a Place to Live

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| A: mŷawaannŷi phŷm paj hŷa<br>khun tŷe mŷj phŷp   | Yesterday I went to see you<br>but didn't see you.   |
| B: phŷm paj hŷa bŷanchŷaaw  | I went to look for a house<br>to rent.   |
| A: khun ca jŷu eeŷ lŷ   | Will you live (there)<br>yourself?   |
| B: plŷaaw. hŷa hŷj phŷan<br>khun wŷa, jŷu bŷan ka jŷu<br>aphŷaatmŷn nŷj ca dii kwŷa<br>kan                    | No. I'm looking for a friend.<br>You think it's better to live<br>in a house or an apartment?                                      |
| A: phŷan khun pen sŷot rŷ<br>tŷeŷŷaan lŷew  | Is your friend single or<br>married?   |
| B: pen sŷot khrŷp   | He's single.   |
| A: khwaamciŷ, tua phŷm eeŷ<br>chŷŷp jŷu bŷan mŷak kwŷa<br>tŷe sŷmrŷp khon sŷot, phŷm<br>wŷa jŷu flŷt dii kwŷa | Actually, as for me I<br>prefer living in a house.<br>But for single persons, I<br>think living in a flat is<br>better             |
| B: thammaj lakhrŷp  | Why?   |
| A: sadŷak kwŷa jŷu bŷan<br><br>lŷ plyan nŷŷj kwŷa phrŷ<br>mŷj tŷŷ caan khonchŷj<br>lŷaj khon                  | It's more convenient than<br>living in a house.<br><br>And less expensive, because<br>you don't have to hire a<br>lot of servants. |



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

<p>B: cɪnǎ          plòt phaj kwàa dūaj          māj tɔŋ klua khamooj</p>	<p>Right.          It's safer too.          You don't have to be afraid          of thieves.</p>
---	--

### 31.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) phóp and dāj occur after hǎa 'to look for', try to find' and indicate the result of the action of 'looking'.

Observe the following examples:

<u>Question</u>	<u>Responses</u>	
	<u>Affirmative</u>	<u>Negative</u>
<u>hǎa phóp māj</u> 'Did you get to see him?'	( <u>hǎa</u> ) <u>phóp</u> 'Yes, I did.'	( <u>hǎa</u> ) <u>māj phóp</u> 'No, I didn't.'
<u>hǎa dāj māj</u> 'Did you get (what you were looking for)?'	( <u>hǎa</u> ) <u>dāj</u> 'Yes, I did.'	( <u>hǎa</u> ) <u>māj dāj</u> 'No, I didn't.'

Observe also these two examples:

(phǒm) hǎa māj dāj phró māj mii khǎaj  
 'I didn't get any because it wasn't for sale.'

(phǒm) hǎa māj phóp phró māj jùu  
 'I didn't get to see him because he wasn't in.'

cəe 'to meet, run into unexpectedly' may replace phóp in constructions with hǎa involving human beings, thus hǎa phóp māj or hǎa cəe māj 'Did you get to see him?'. In constructions referring to objects cəe rather than phóp is used, thus

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- A: nánsǎy hǎa.j 'I lost my book.'  
B: hǎa cəə má.j 'Did you find it?'  
A: má.j cəə 'No, I didn't.'

When cəə is used as the main verb in the sentence, it has the meaning 'to meet unexpectedly':

mýawaanníi phǒm cəə phýan kàw  
'Yesterday I ran into an old friend.'

b) /kwàa/ means 'more than, to a greater extent'.

1. After stative verbs, use /kwàa/ alone.

Examples:

phaasǎa aŋkrít jâak kwàa phaasǎa thaj  
'English is more difficult than Thai.'

2. After other verbs, use mâak kwàa for 'more than'  
and nóoj kwàa for 'less than'.

Examples:

piiníi raw mii nákrian nóoj kwàa pii kòon.  
'This year we have more students than last year.'

phǒm chôp khun mâak kwàa kháw  
'I like you less than him.'

3. Where degree of difference is stated, observe in the following examples, the position of forms indicating degree of difference.

# THAI BASIC COURSE

		NP <sup>1</sup>	Stative Verb + <u>kwaa</u>	NP <sup>2</sup>	Degree of Difference
(1.)	thîinîi mii Here there are	nákrian students	mâak kwàa more than	khruu teachers	400 khon 400
		'There are 400 more students than teachers here.'			
(2.)		khun you	sǔaj kwàa pretty more than	kháw she	mâak much a lot
		'You are a lot prettier than she (is).'			

## c) khít (wâa) jaṇṇaj versus khít araj

Use jaṇṇaj when asking for a person's opinion or comment on something.

khun khít (wâa) jaṇṇaj      'What do you think?'

khun wâa jaṇṇaj      (What's your opinion?)

kháw wâa jaṇṇaj      'What did he say?'  
(What was his reaction?)

Use araj to find out what is in a person's mind.

khun kamlan khít araj      'What are you thinking  
{ about?'  
{ of?'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 31.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill.

##### Pattern 1

1. hǎa tɛɛ mǎj phóp  
looked for but didn't meet with
2. hǎa tɛɛ mǎj cɛɛ  
looked for but didn't meet with
3. hǎa tɛɛ mǎj dǎj  
looked for but didn't get

##### Pattern 2

(contracted form)

- hǎa mǎj phóp  
didn't find
- hǎa mǎj cɛɛ  
didn't find
- hǎa mǎj dǎj  
didn't succeed  
in getting

#### b) Transformation Drill (Combine patterns a and b to form Pattern c.)

##### Patterns a and b

1. kháw jàak phóp phýan
  - a. kháw paj hǎa phýan thîi bǎan
  - b. kháw mǎj phóp phýan  
He wanted to see his friend.  
He went to see his friend at home.  
He did not meet his friend.

##### Pattern c

- kháw paj hǎa phýan  
(tɛɛ) mǎj phóp  
He went to see his  
friend but didn't  
see him.

2. lûuksǎaw kháw hǎaj
  - a. kháw hǎa lûuksǎaw
  - b. kháw mǎj { cɛɛ lûuksǎaw  
                  { phóp  
His daughter disappeared.  
He looked for his daughter.  
He didn't find his daughter.

- kháw hǎa lûuksǎaw  
(tɛɛ) mǎj { cɛɛ  
                  { phóp  
He looked for his  
daughter without  
success.

3. nánsǔy phǒm hǎaj                      phǒm hǎa nánsǔy  
 a. phǒm hǎa nánsǔy                      (tɛɛ) māj cəə  
 b. phǒm māj cəə nánsǔy                      I looked for my book  
     My book was lost.                      without success.  
     I looked for my book.  
     I didn't discover my book.
4. phǒm jàak dāj nánsǔy lɛmnán                      phǒm hǎa (sýy) nánsǔy  
 a. phǒm hǎa (sýy) nánsǔy lɛmnán                      lɛmnán (tɛɛ) māj dāj  
 b. phǒm māj dāj nánsǔy lɛmnán                      I tried unsuccessfully  
     I'd like to get that book.                      to get (buy) that book.  
     I sought (to buy) that book.  
     I didn't get that book.

c) Expansion Drill

- |                   |                               |
|-------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. dāj māj khráp  | dāj māj khráp                 |
| hǎa               | hǎa dāj māj khráp             |
| sýy               | hǎa sýy dāj māj khráp         |
| pàakkaa           | hǎa sýy pàakkaa dāj māj khráp |
| 2. phóp māj khráp | phóp māj khráp                |
| hǎa               | hǎa phóp māj khráp            |
| phýan             | hǎa phýan phóp māj khráp      |
| 3. cəə māj khráp  | cəə māj khráp                 |
| hǎa               | hǎa cəə māj khráp             |
| khǒɔŋ             | hǎa khǒɔŋ cəə māj khráp       |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- d) Response Drill (Respond affirmatively to the questions, if the cue word indicates that the search was successful (jùu), respond negatively, if the cue word indicates that the search was unsuccessful (mâj jùu).

<u>Question</u>	<u>Cue</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. mŷawaanníi khun paj hăa kháw phóp máj khráp Did you find him when you went to see him yesterday?	kháw jùu  He was in.	phóp khráp  (Yes) I did.
2. mŷakîiníi khun paj hăa nákphaasăa phóp máj khráp When you went to see the linguist a while ago, did you find him?	mâj jùu  He wasn't in.	mâj phóp khráp  (No), I didn't.
3. mŷakhyynníi, kháw maa hăa khun phóp máj When he came to see you last night, did he see you?	jùu  I was in.	phóp khráp  He did.
4. (khun) paj hăa mŷo phóp máj When you went to see the doctor, did you see him?	jùu  He was in.	phóp khráp  I did.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

5. mǎkǎfǎnǎi, phǎan khun maa

hǎa khun thǎi roonǎian

phóp mǎj khráp

mǎj jùu

mǎj phóp

A short time ago when  
your friend came to  
see you at school,  
did you meet?

I wasn't in.

He didn't.

6. khun hǎa bée thoorasàp

khǎonǎ khǎw naj samùt

thoorasàp phóp mǎj khráp

mǎj jùu naj samùt

mǎj phóp

Did you find his number  
in the phone book?

It wasn't there.

I didn't.

### e) Substitution Response Drill

The teacher gives 2 cue words. One student forms a statement using the first cue word. Another student asks the question hǎa cǎe mǎj khráp. The first then responds either negatively or affirmatively according to the second cue word.

<u>Cue word</u>	<u>Statement/question/response</u>	
<u>nǎnsǎy</u> .... No	S1: nǎnsǎy phǎm hǎaj	My book was lost.
	S2: hǎa cǎe mǎj khráp	Did you find it?
	S1: <u>mǎj</u> <u>cǎe</u> khráp	No, I didn't.

Continue the drill using the following cue words:

- |                         |                         |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. nǎn phǎm.... No      | 2. pàakkaa phǎm.... Yes |
| 3. dǎnsǎo phǎm.... No   | 4. lǎuksǎaw.... No      |
| 5. khoncháj.... Yes     | 6. rót phǎm.... Yes     |
| 7. naalikaa khǎw.... No | 8. krapǎaw phǎm.... No  |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### f) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. mi1	khun hǎa nǎnsǎy lēmnan dâj máj khráp Did you find that book?	dâj khráp I did.
2. mi1	khun hǎa sǎy nǎnsǎy phaasǎa thaj dâj máj khráp Were you able to buy the Thai book you were looking for?	dâj khráp  I was.
3. mâj mi1	khun hǎa khoncháj dâj máj khráp Were you able to find the servants you were looking for?	mâj dâj khráp  No, I wasn't.
4. mâj mi1	khǎw hǎa khruu sǎon phaasǎa ankrít dâj máj khráp Did you find the English teacher you were looking for?	mâj dâj khráp  No, I didn't.
5. mâj mi1	khun hǎa baan dâj máj khráp Did you find the house you were looking for?	mâj dâj khráp  No, I didn't.

### g) Transformation Drill

#### Pattern 1 and 2

1. mǎwaaanníi rǎon  
Yesterday it was hot.  
  
wanníi rǎon mâak  
Today it's very hot.

#### Pattern 3

wanníi rǎon kwàa mǎwaaanníi  
It's hotter today than  
yesterday.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

2. phûujǐn khonnán suǎj

That girl's pretty.

phûujǐn khonníi suǎj mâak

This girl's very pretty.

phûujǐn khonníi suǎj kwàa

phûujǐn khonnán

This girl is prettier  
than that one.

3. bâan phǎm klaj

My house is far.

bâan kháw klaj mâak

His house is very far.

bâan kháw klaj kwàa bâan phǎm

His house is farther than  
mine.

4. klaanwan rǎon

In the daytime it's hot.

klan̄khyyn mâj rǎon

At night it's not hot.

klaanwan rǎon kwàa klan̄khyyn

It's hotter in the daytime  
than at night.

5. thǐinôn aakàat dii

There the weather is good.

thǐin̄i aakàat dii mâak

Here the weather is  
very good.

thǐin̄i aakàat dii kwàa

thǐinôn

Here the weather is better  
than there.

6. nákrían khonníi kèn

This student is smart.

nákrían khonnán kèn mâak

That student is very smart.

nákrían khonnán kèn kwàa

nákrían khonníi

That student is smarter  
than this one.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

7. aahǎan thǐi ráannán dii

The food in that shop  
is good.

aahǎan thǐi ráannǐi dii mâak.

The food in this shop  
is very good.

aahǎan thǐi ráannǐi dii kwàa  
raannán

The food in this shop  
is better than in that  
shop.

8. kháw duu nánsǎy dýk

He studies late at night.

phǒm duu nánsǎy dýk mâak

I study very late at night.

phǒm duu nánsǎy dýk kwàa kháw

I study later at night  
than he.

9. kháw maa roonrian cháaw

He came to school early.

phǒm maa roonrian sǎaj

I came to school late.

phǒm maa roonrian sǎaj kwàa  
khaaw

I came to school later  
than he.

(kháw maa roonrian cháaw  
kwàa phǒm)

He came to school earlier  
than I.

10. phaasǎa thaj mâj jâak

Thai is not hard.

phaasǎa aṅkrít jâak

English is hard.

phaasǎa aṅkrít jâak kwàa

phaasǎa thaj

English is harder than Thai.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

11. naan wannán māj sànuḁ

That day's party wasn't fun.

naan wanníi sanùḁ

Today's party is fun.

naan wanníi sanùḁ kwàa

naan wannán

The party today is more  
fun than that other party.

12. rót kháw kàw

His car is old.

rót phǒm māj

My car is new.

rót phǒm māj kwàa rót kháw

My car is newer than his.

13. jùu bāan sadùak

It's convenient to live  
in a house.

jùu apháatmēn sadùak māk

It's very convenient to  
live in an apartment.

jùu apháatmēn sadùak kwàa

jùu bāan

Living in an apartment  
is more convenient than  
living in a house.

14. jùu apháatmēt māj pīan

Living in an apartment  
is not expensive.

jùu bāan pīan māk

Living in a house is  
very expensive.

jùu bāan pīan kwàa jùu

apháatmēn

Living in a house is  
more expensive than  
living in an apartment.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### h) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. jùu naj myaŋ	jùu naj myaŋ ka jùu nŏok myaŋ, nǎj ca sadùak kwàa kan  Which is more convenient, living in town or in the country?	jùu naj myaŋ sadùak kwàa  Living in the city.
2. jùu krunthêep	jùu krunthêep ka jùu tāaŋcaŋwàt, nǎj ca plyaŋ kwàa kan  Which is more expensive, living in Bangkok or the provinces?	jùu krunthêep plyaŋ kwàa  Living in Bangkok.
3. ubon	ubon ka khoorâat, nǎj ca jùu klaj (càak krunthêep) kwàa kan  Which is farther from Bangkok, Ubon or Korat?	ubon klaj kwàa  Ubon.
4. sùkhŏothaj	caŋwàt ajúthajaa ka sùkhŏothaj, nǎj ca kàw kwàa kan  Which is older, Ayuthaya or Sukhotai province?	sùkhŏothaj kàw kwàa  Sukhotai.
5. rŏt khannán	rŏt khannán ka rŏt khanníí, nǎj ca pheɛŋ kwàa kan  Which is more expensive, that car or this one?	rŏt khannán pheɛŋ kwàa  That one.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |    |  |   |
|----|--|---|
| 6. | nákrían chánnán<br>nǎj ca mâak kwàa kan<br>In which class are there<br>more students, that one<br>or this one?               | nákrían chánnán<br>mâak kwàa<br>That one.         |
| 7. | krunthêep ka chianmǎj,<br>nǎj ca mii khon jùu mâak<br>kwàa kan<br>Which has a larger<br>population, Bangkok<br>or Chiangmai? | krunthêep mii<br>khonjùu mâak<br>kwàa<br>Bangkok. |

### 1) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. nakrian kàw	nákrían kàw ka nákrían mǎj, khraj ca phûut phaasǎa thaj dǎj dīi kwàa kan Which can speak Thai better, the old students or the new ones?	nákrían kàw phûut dǎj dīi kwàa The old.
2. khun sawàt	khun sawàt kakhun prasǎn khraj (ca) kèn kwàa kan Who is more skillful, Sawat or Prasong?	khun sawàt kèn kwàa Sawat.
3. phŷan khonnán	phŷan khun khonnán ka khonní, khraj (ca) khâwcaj khun dīi kwàa kan Who understands you better, that friend of yours or this one?	phŷan phǎm khonnán khâwcaj phǎm dīi kwàa That one understands me better.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

4.   khun coon           khun coon ka khun cim, khraj       khun coon khàp  
                          khàp rót rew kwàa kan               rew kwàa  
                          Who drives faster,  
                          John or Jim?                       John.

### j) Expansion Drill

1.   mâak kwàa  
      mii mâak kwàa  
      mii nən mâak kwàa  
      kháw mii nən mâak kwàa  
      kháw mii nən mâak kwàa phǒm
2.   mâak kwàa  
      mii mâak kwàa  
      mii nákrían mâak kwàa  
      chánnán mii nákrían mâak kwàa  
      chánnán mii nákrían mâak kwàa chánníi
3.   mâak kwàa  
      mii mâak kwàa  
      mii weelaa mâak kwàa  
      mii weelaa wâan mâak kwàa  
      kháw mii weelaa wâan mâak kwàa  
      kháw mii weelaa wâan kwàa phǒm
4.   mâak kwàa  
      chǎop mâak kwàa  
      chǎop jùu bâan mâak kwàa  
      phǒm chǎop jùu bâan mâak kwàa  
      phǒm chǎop jùu bâan mâak kwàa jùu apháatmēt

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

5. m<sup>aa</sup>k kw<sup>aa</sup>  
ch<sup>oo</sup>p m<sup>aa</sup>k kw<sup>aa</sup>  
ch<sup>oo</sup>p khun m<sup>aa</sup>k kw<sup>aa</sup>  
ph<sup>oo</sup>m ch<sup>oo</sup>p khun m<sup>aa</sup>k kw<sup>aa</sup>  
ph<sup>oo</sup>m ch<sup>oo</sup>p khun m<sup>aa</sup>k kw<sup>aa</sup> kh<sup>aw</sup>
6. m<sup>aa</sup>k kw<sup>aa</sup>  
tham m<sup>aa</sup>k kw<sup>aa</sup>  
kh<sup>aw</sup> tham<sup>na</sup>an m<sup>aa</sup>k kw<sup>aa</sup>  
kh<sup>aw</sup> tham<sup>na</sup>an m<sup>aa</sup>k kw<sup>aa</sup> ph<sup>oo</sup>m  
kh<sup>aw</sup> tham<sup>na</sup>an m<sup>aa</sup>k kw<sup>aa</sup> ph<sup>oo</sup>m l<sup>aa</sup>j ch<sup>u</sup>amoon

### k) Transformation Drill

#### Pattern 1 and 2

1. kh<sup>aw</sup> rian n<sup>aa</sup>ns<sup>yy</sup> wan la h<sup>oo</sup>k  
ch<sup>u</sup>amoon

He has classes 6 hours a day.

raw rian n<sup>aa</sup>ns<sup>yy</sup> wan la s<sup>ii</sup>  
ch<sup>u</sup>amoon

We have classes 4 hours  
a day.

2. th<sup>ii</sup> roon<sup>ri</sup>an m<sup>ii</sup> kh<sup>ruu</sup>  
r<sup>oo</sup>j khon

There are 100 teachers  
at school.

th<sup>ii</sup> roon<sup>ri</sup>an m<sup>ii</sup> n<sup>aa</sup>k<sup>ri</sup>an  
h<sup>aa</sup> r<sup>oo</sup>j khon

There are 500 students  
at school.

#### Pattern 3

kh<sup>aw</sup> rian n<sup>aa</sup>ns<sup>yy</sup> m<sup>aa</sup>k kw<sup>aa</sup>  
raw wan la s<sup>oo</sup>n ch<sup>u</sup>amoon

He has classes 2 hours  
more per day than we do.

th<sup>ii</sup> roon<sup>ri</sup>an m<sup>ii</sup> n<sup>aa</sup>k<sup>ri</sup>an  
m<sup>aa</sup>k kw<sup>aa</sup> kh<sup>ruu</sup> s<sup>ii</sup> r<sup>oo</sup>j khon

There are 400 more students  
than teachers at school.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

3. khun wichaj mii bùt sǐi khon

Wichai has 4 children.

khun prasèet mii bùt sǒɔŋ khon

Prasert has 2 children.

khun wichaj mii bùt mâak

kwàa khun prasèet sǒɔŋ khon

Wichai has 2 more children  
than Prasert.

### 1) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

nóɔj kwàa	less
plyaŋ nóɔj kwàa	less beautiful
mii nóɔj kwàa	have less
chǒɔp nóɔj kwàa	like less
phûut nóɔj kwàa	speak less
tham nóɔj kwàa	do less
thaan nóɔj kwàa	eat less
sýy nóɔj kwàa	buy less
rian nóɔj kwàa	study less

### m) Transformation Drill

#### Pattern 1

1. khǒɔŋ thǐi ráan níi mii mâak kwàa

khǒɔŋ thǐi ráan nóon

There are more things in  
this shop than that one.

2. kháw mii nɛn mâak kwàa phǒm

He has more money than I.

#### Pattern 2

khǒɔŋ thǐi ráan nóon mii

nóɔj kwàa ráan níi

There are less things  
in that shop than this  
one.

phǒm mii nɛn nóɔj kwàa kháw

I have less money than he.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>3. <u>kháw cháj</u> <u>nəen</u> <u>mâak kwàa</u> <u>phǒm</u>.<br/>He spends more money than I.</p>  | <p><u>phǒm cháj</u> <u>nəen</u> <u>nóoj kwàa</u> <u>kháw</u>.<br/>I spend less money than he.</p>  |
| <p>4. <u>jùu bâan</u> <u>plyan kwàa</u> <u>jùu</u><br/><u>apháatmên</u>.<br/>Living in a house is more<br/>expensive than living in<br/>an apartment.</p>        | <p><u>jùu apháatmên</u> <u>plyan</u> <u>nóoj</u><br/><u>kwàa jùu bâan</u><br/>Living in an apartment<br/>is less expensive than<br/>living in a house.</p>     |
| <p>5. <u>nóoj khǒj</u> <u>khun sǒmsàk rian</u><br/><u>mâak kwàa</u> <u>khun sǒmsàk</u><br/>Somsak's younger brothers<br/>and sisters study more<br/>than he.</p> | <p><u>khun sǒmsàk rian</u> <u>nóoj kwàa</u><br/><u>nóoj khǒj</u> <u>kháw</u><br/>Somsak studies less than<br/>his younger siblings.</p>                        |
| <p>6. <u>phûujǐn khonnán</u> <u>phûut</u> <u>mâak</u><br/><u>kwàa</u> <u>phûujǐn khonnón</u><br/>That woman talks more than<br/>the one over there.</p>          | <p><u>phûujǐn khonnón</u> <u>phûut</u> <u>nóoj</u><br/><u>kwàa</u> <u>phûujǐn khonnán</u><br/>The woman over there<br/>talks less than that<br/>one.</p>       |
| <p>7. <u>phǒm chǒp</u> <u>phyan</u> <u>kháw</u> <u>mâak</u><br/><u>kwàa</u> <u>kháw</u><br/>I like his friends better<br/>than him.</p>                          | <p><u>phǒm chǒp</u> <u>kháw</u> <u>nóoj kwàa</u><br/><u>phyan</u> <u>kháw</u><br/>I like him less than<br/>(I like) his friends.</p>                           |
| <p>8. <u>khun sǒmsǐi</u> <u>sǔaj</u> <u>kwàa</u><br/><u>nóoj sǎaw</u> <u>kháw</u><br/>Somsri is prettier than<br/>her younger sister.</p>                        | <p><u>nóoj sǎaw</u> <u>khun sǒmsǐi</u> <u>sǔaj</u><br/><u>nóoj kwàa</u> <u>khun sǒmsǐi</u><br/>Somsri's younger sister<br/>is less pretty than<br/>Somsri.</p> |
| <p>9. <u>kháw thamnaan</u> <u>mâak kwàa</u><br/><u>phǒm aathít</u> <u>la hòk chûamoon</u><br/>He works 6 hours a week<br/>more than I do.</p>                    | <p><u>phǒm thamnaan</u> <u>nóoj kwàa</u> <u>kháw</u><br/><u>aathít</u> <u>la hòk chûamoon</u><br/>I work 6 hours a week<br/>less than he does.</p>             |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

10. phǎichaaǵ phǎm mǐi bùt mâak  
kwâa phǎm sǎon khon

My older brother has 2  
more children than I.

phǎm mǐi bùt nóoj kwâa  
phǎichaaǵ phǎm sǎon khon

I have two less children  
than my older brother.

### n) Transformation Drill

#### Pattern 1

1. phǎm khít wâa, jùu apháatmên  
dǐi kwâa

I think living in an apartment is better.

2. phǎm khít wâa, pen sòot dǐi kwâa

I think being single is better.

3. phǎm khít wâa, phɛɛn paj

I think it's too expensive.

4. phǎm khít wâa, raw khuan ca  
bòok kháw

I think we should tell her.

5. phǎm khít wâa, raw khuan ca  
bòok (paj) kòon thǎn

I think we should leave before noon.

6. phǎm khít wâa, raw mâj khuan  
sýy rót khannán

I don't think we should buy the car.

7. phǎm khít wâa, kháw khon maa

I think he will surely come.

#### Pattern 2

phǎm wâa, jùu apháatmên  
dǐi kwâa

phǎm wâa, pen sòot dǐi kwâa

phǎm wâa, phɛɛn paj

phǎm wâa, raw khuan ca  
bòok kháw

phǎm wâa, raw khuan ca  
bòok (paj) kòon thǎn

phǎm wâa, raw mâj khuan  
sýy rót khannán

phǎm wâa, kháw khon maa.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### o) Expansion Drill

jaŋŋaj	How.
wâa (jaŋ) ɲaj	What do (you) think <sup>1</sup> ?
khun wâa jaŋŋaj	What do you think?
khun <u>khít</u> wâa jaŋŋaj	What do you think?
khun <u>mii</u> <u>khwaam</u> <u>khít</u> <u>hěn</u> wâa jaŋŋaj	What's your opinion?
khun mii khwaam khít hěn <u>kław</u> <u>káp</u>	What's your opinion
ryâŋŋií wâa jaŋŋaj { <u>bâaŋ</u>	about this matter?
{ <u>mân</u>	

### p) Expansion Drill

#### Pattern 1

#### Pattern 2

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>1. phǎm wâa dīi</p> <p>I think it's good.</p>           | <p>phǎm wâa dīi, khun la khráp,<br/>wâa jaŋŋaj</p> <p>I think it's good. And you,<br/>what do you think?</p>           |
| <p>2. phǎm wâa mâj khuan</p> <p>I think you shouldn't.</p> | <p>phǎm wâa mâj khuan, khun la khráp,<br/>wâa jaŋŋaj</p> <p>I think you shouldn't. And<br/>you, what do you think?</p> |
| <p>3. phǎm wâa khuan</p> <p>I think you should.</p>        | <p>phǎm wâa khuan, khun la khráp<br/>wâa jaŋŋaj</p> <p>I think you should. And you,<br/>what do you think?</p>         |
| <p>4. phǎm wâa mâj thùuk</p> <p>I think it's not so.</p>   | <p>phǎm wâa mâj thùuk, khun la khráp,<br/>wâa jaŋŋaj</p> <p>I think it's not so. And you?<br/>what do you think?</p>   |

---

<sup>1</sup>(Idiom = 'What are you up to?' [To Intimates or Inferiors])

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |                                |   |
|--------------------------------|---|
| 5. phǒm wâa phɛɛŋ paj          | phǒm wâa phɛɛŋ paj, khun la khráp,<br>wâa jaŋŋaj      |
| I think it's too<br>expensive. | I think it's too expensive.<br>And what do you think? |
| 6. phǒm wâa nâabýa             | phǒm wâa nâabýa, khun lakhráp,<br>wâa jaŋŋaj          |
| I think it's boring.           | I think it's boring. And you,<br>what do you think?   |

### 31.3 EXERCISES

- a) Have students compare various persons and objects in terms of certain qualities (good, pretty, etc.).
- b) Compare various activities in terms of convenience, pleasure, etc.
- c) One student expresses an opinion and asks another student's opinion of the same thing.
- d) One student reports on the loss of some object (watch, etc.) A second asks if he has found it. He indicates he has or hasn't.
- e) One student says that he went to look for something or someone. Another asks if he was successful in his search. The first indicates he was (or wasn't).
- f) Two students compare the weather 1) on different days, 2) in different months, 3) at different times of the day, and 4) in different places.
- g) One student asks another about the weather at some other place or some other time of the year.
- h) Find out which of 2 things various students prefer.
- i) Find out the extent of superiority of one thing over another.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- j) Compare the number of hours per day or week various people participate in various activities.
- k) One student asks another his opinion on something. The second gives it.
- l) One student asks another what he is thinking about at the moment.
- m) One student asks another if he thinks he should do one thing or the other. The second gives his opinion.

### 31.4 VOCABULARY

apháatmên (lǎŋ)	apartments
bâanchâw (lǎŋ)	a house to rent
cəə	to meet with unexpectedly
châw	to rent
(hǎa) dâj	to get. (It indicates that the speaker was able to get the things he was looking for.)
hǎa { phóp	to meet with (indicates that the search resulted in meeting with persons or things)
{ cəə	
hǎaj (paɯ)	to disappear, vanish, to be missing, be lost from sight
jâak	to be difficult
khâacâaŋ	wage, wages, pay
khamooj	thief, robber
khwaamciŋ	truthfully, actually
khwaamkhíthěn	opinion
k̀law k̀ap	about
klua	to be afraid of
kwàa	more than, to a greater extent
lǎŋ	classifier for houses and buildings

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

mân / bân	some (out of a number), somewhat, in part, partly, to some extent
nóoj	to be little, small, less, slight (in quantity)
plòotphaj	to be safe, out of danger
plyan	to use up, to consume, to waste (e.g. money, time resources) the expenses; to be expensive
sadùak	to be convenient
samùt thoorasàp (lêm)	a phone book
sathǎanthîi (hên)	place, site (place equipped for particular kind of work, activity, etc.)
sǎa	to pay out (money) to waste, lose (time) to be obligated to pay
sòot	to be single, unmarried state
(khon) sòot	single person, bachelor, spinster
tua phǎm een	I (myself)
... khǎw een	he (himself)
... raw een	we (ourselves), more emphatic than 'tua' alone
wǎa	to say, criticize, to think, to have an opinion

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### LESSON THIRTY-TWO

#### 32.0 BASIC DIALOG: Renting a House (2)

- A: khun dâj bâanchâw léew rýjan      Have you got a house to rent yet?
- B: jan khráp      Not yet.
- A: naj sooj bâan phôm mii bâan      On my lane there's a house for rent.  
wâan hâj chaw jùu lănnyn
- B: khâw khít khâachâw janaj khráp      How much is the rent?
- A: phôm mâj dâj thăam raaj la-iat      I didn't ask the details.  
pen bâanmâj      It's a new house.  
nâajùu dii      It's cozy.  
sámrap khrôpkhrua léklék      For a small family like  
jàan khun, khanàat kamlan      yours the size is just  
phoodii, mâj lék mâj jàj      right, not too small,  
kœen paj      not too big.
- B: jùu klaj càak thanôn jàj máj      Is it far from the main  
khráp      street?
- A: jùu hàan càak pàak sooj raaw      It's around 2 kilometers  
raaw sŏon kiloo kwàa khráp      or so from the end of  
the lane.
- B: phôm ca tittò ka câwkhŏn-      How do I get in touch  
bâan dâj janaj      with the owner?
- A: thoò paj thăam khâw doojtron      Call him directly.  
khráp.mâj tŏon phaan naajnáa      You don't have to go  
through the agent.
- B: bâan khâw thoorasàp bæe araj      What's his home phone  
number?
- A: bæe kâaw hòk thoò sām sŏi hòk      962-346

## THAI BASIC COURSE

### 32.1 VOCABULARY NOTES

- a) The stative verb dii occurs in several different types of constructions with different meanings:

X + <u>dii</u>	Examples	Meaning of <u>dii</u>
<b>I. <u>Nouns</u></b>		
A. Animate (Human)		
1. People in general	<u>khon dii</u>	good moral character
2. People in special roles	<u>khruu thfi dii</u> <sup>1</sup>	good at doing something
B. Inanimate		
1. Objects	<u>tó dii</u>	good quality
2. Places	<u>krunthêep dii</u> <sup>2</sup>	good for some special purpose
<b>II. <u>Verbs</u></b>		
A. Action verbs	<u>kháw rian dii</u>	well, efficiently
B. Stative verbs	<u>jàjdii</u>	nice and (big)
<b>III. <u>Sentences</u></b>		
A. Questions	<u>tham araj dii</u>	to be acceptable, all right

1. When used with nouns indicating family roles (son, etc.), professional roles (teacher, etc.), thfidii is used to indicate that the person is performing well in that particular role without regard to his moral character.
2. This type of construction can only be used when it is clear from the context in what respect a place can be called 'good'.



- b) mii ... jùu calls attention to the fact that a certain thing is in existence at a particular time or place. Its existence may be temporary or accidental.

toon nán phǒm mii nēen jùu raaw hâasìp bàat thâwnán  
At that time I had only about fifty baht (on me).

tron pàak sooj mii ráankaafse jùu ráan nyn  
Right at the end of the lane there is (located) a coffee shop.

- c) khít jannaaj means 'how is it figured?(what is included in the calculations)'

kháw khít khâachâw jannaaj khráp

'How is the rent figured? (What's included in the rent?)'

khít thâwraaj means 'How much does it amount to?';

kháw khít khâachâw thâwraaj, 'How much is the rent?'

- d) nâa is a verb meaning 'worthy of, leading to, or able' which combines with other verbs to form verb compounds:

nâarák 'loveable, cute: nâa 'worthy of' + rák 'love'

nâacháj 'nice to use': nâa 'nice' + cháj 'to use'

nâaduu 'interesting to look at' : nâa 'interesting' + duu 'look at'

- e) tít tòc kàp means 'to contact or get in touch with' someone.

phǒm ca tít tòc ka câwkhǒn bâan dâj jannaaj

'How do I get in touch with the owner of the house?'

- f) hàan means 'to be separated by a certain distance'. It is limited to use in sentences referring to the extent of the distance between two points.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

bâan lănnán jùu hàan càak thanôn jàj 2 kiloo

'That house is 2 kilometers from the main street'.

klaj 'to be far' can replace hàan in constructions like the one above and can be used in other construction in which hàan can not be used, as follows:

Q: krunthêep jùu klaj càak thîinfi máj

'Is Bangkok far from here?'

A: mâj klaj mâak kháp 'Not very far.'

Or in sentences where klaj is used with verbs of action:

kháw tii lûuk klaj mâak 'He hit the ball very far.'

### 32.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

1. Besides the verbs maa (towards the speaker) and paj (away from the speaker) thoorasàp may be followed by other words.

Observe the following examples:

(a) Calling a place

$$\text{phǎm thoo(rasàp)} \begin{cases} \text{paj} \\ \text{maa} \end{cases} + \text{thîi} + \text{PLACE}$$

'I telephoned the... (Place).'

(b) Calling a person

$$\text{phǎm thoo(rasàp)} \begin{cases} \text{paj} \\ \text{maa} \end{cases} + \begin{cases} \text{hǎa} \\ \text{thýn} \end{cases} + \text{PERSON}$$

'I called (PERSON) up.'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

Both when calling persons and places other action verbs with thoo may occur. Observe the following:

phǒm thoo {	paj maa	{	thǎam kháw wāa .... 'I called to ask him...'
			bòok kháw wāa .... 'I called to tell him...'
			chuan kháw paj .... 'I called to invite him to go'
			thǎam thīi+ Place.. 'I called to ask at the ...'

### 32.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

bāan wāan hāj chāw	A house for rent.
nǎnsǎy hāj àan	A book to read.
nāam hāj dǎym	Water to drink.
aahǎan hāj thaan	Food to eat.
nǎn hāj duu	A movie to see.
thīi hāj phák	A place to { stay rest

#### b) Progressive Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

naj sooj bāan phǒm mī bāan wāan hāj chāw  
jùu lǎnnyn

On my lane there is a house for rent.

1. ráankaafes

naj sooj bāan phǒm mī ráankaafes jùu ráan nyn  
In my lane there is a coffee shop.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |                    |   |
|--------------------|---|
| 2. lǎaj ráan       | <p>naj sooj bâan phǎm mii ráankaafɛɛ <u>jùu lǎaj ráan</u></p> <p>In the lane I live in there are many coffee shops.</p>   |
| 3. thǐi pàaksooj   | <p><u>thǐi pàak sooj</u> mii ráankaafɛɛ jùu lǎaj ráan</p> <p>At the entrance to the lane there are many coffee shops.</p> |
| 4. ráanaahǎan      | <p>thǐi pàak sooj mii <u>ráanaahǎan</u> jùu lǎaj ráan</p> <p>At the entrance to the lane there are many restaurants.</p>  |
| 5. ráan nyn        | <p>thǐi pàak sooj mii ráanaahǎan jùu <u>ráan nyn</u></p> <p>At the entrance to the lane there is a restaurant.</p>        |
| 6. thǐinân         | <p><u>thǐinân</u> mii ráanaahǎan jùu ráan nyn</p> <p>At that place there is a restaurant.</p>                             |
| 7. ráantàtphǎm dii | <p>thǐinân mii <u>ráantàtphǎm</u> dii jùu ráan nyn</p> <p>There is a good barber shop there.</p>                          |
| 8. lǎaj ráan       | <p>thǐinân mii ráantàtphǎm <u>diidi</u> jùu <u>lǎaj ráan</u></p> <p>There are many good barber shops there.</p>           |

### c) Substitution Drill

#### Cue

#### Pattern

kháw khít khâachâw janɲaj

How do they figure the rent?

1. thâwràj

kháw khít khâachâw thâwràj

How much do they charge for the rent?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

2. dyan la thâwràj      khâw khít khâachâw dyan la thâwra  
How much do they charge per month  
for the rent?
3. dyan la kîi phan      khâw khít khâachâw dyan la kîi phan bàat  
bàat      How many thousands a month do they  
charge for rent?
4. pii la thâwràj      khâw khít khâachâw pii la thâwràj  
How much a year do they charge for  
the rent?
5. aathít la kîi      khâw khít khâachâw aathít la kîi bàat  
bàat      How many baht a week do they charge  
for rent?

### d) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- |   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1. bâan nán pen bâan mǎj                  | That house is a new house.          |
| 2. krunthêep pen myan jǎj                 | Bangkok is a big city.              |
| 3. .thîi myanṭhaj, éppên pen khǒṇ<br>phēṇ | Apples are expensive in<br>Thailand |
| 4. myanṭhaj pen myan rǒon                 | Thailand is a hot country.          |
| 5. sawidden pen myan nǎaw                 | Sweden is a cold country.           |
| 6. sukhǒothaj pen myanlǔan kǎw            | Sukhothai is the old capital.       |

### e) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- |                        |                           |
|------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. khâw pen khon dîi   | He's a nice person.       |
| 2. khâw pen khon sanùk | He's an enjoyable person. |
| 3. khâw pen khon kèn   | He's a competent person.  |
| 4. khâw pen khon mǎj   | He's a newcomer.          |

- f) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- [illegible]

## 560

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |               |                  |
|---------------|------------------|
| 7. rew dii    | nice and fast    |
| 8. lék dii    | nice and small   |
| 9. jàj dii    | nice and large   |
| 10. sanùk dii | nice and amusing |

### h) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- |                    |           |
|--------------------|-----------|
| 1. rón (kəen) paj  | too hot   |
| 2. nǎaw (kəen) paj | too cold  |
| 3. klaj (kəen) paj | too far   |
| 4. rew (kəen) paj  | too fast  |
| 5. cháa (kəen) paj | too slow  |
| 6. lék (kəen) paj  | too small |
| 7. jàj (kəen) paj  | too big   |
| 8. klâj (kəen) paj | too close |

### i) Transformation Drill

#### Pattern 1

1. kháw khàp rót rew.phǒm chǎop  
He drives fast. I like that.
2. kháw khàp rót rew.phǒm mǎj chǎop  
He drives fast. I don't like that.
3. kháw phûut cháa.phǒm chǎop  
He speaks slowly. I like that.
4. bâan khun jùu klâj talàat  
phǒm chǎop  
Your house is near the market.  
I like that.

#### Pattern 2

- kháw khàp rót rew dii  
He drives nice and fast.
- kháw khàp rót rew paj  
He drives too fast.
- kháw phûut cháa dii  
He speaks nice and slow.
- bâankhun jùu klâj talàat dii  
Your house is nice and close to the market.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 5.   bâan khun jùu klâj talàat<br>phǒm mâj chǒp<br>Your house is near the<br>market. I don't like that. | bâan khun jùu <u>klâj</u> talàat<br><u>kəen paj</u><br>Your house is too close to<br>the market. |
| 6.   bâan lǎnnán jàj.phǒm chǒp<br>That house is big.<br>I like that.                                    | bâan lǎnnán <u>jàj dii</u><br>That house is nice and big.  |

### j) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1.   khanàat kamlan phoo dii, mâj lék mâj jàj kəen paj  
     It's the right size, not too small and not too large.
2.   aakaat kamlan phoo dii, mâj rǒon mâj nǎaw kəen paj  
     The weather is just right, not too warm and not too cold.
3.   kháw phûut kamlan phoo dii, mâj rew mâj cháa kəen paj  
     He speaks at just the right speed, not too fast and not  
     too slow.
4.   raakhaa kamlan phoo dii, mâj phsɛn mâj thùuk kəen paj  
     The price is just right, not too expensive and not too cheap.
5.   raw maa thǎy kamlan phoodii, mâj rew mâj cháa  
     We arrived at just the right time, not too early and not  
     too late.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### k) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
	<u>bâan</u> nâajùu	The house is nice to live in.
1. hooten	<u>hooten</u> nâajùu	The hotel is nice to live in.
2. krunthêep	<u>krunthêep</u> nâajùu	Bangkok is nice to live in.
3. myan̄thaj	<u>myan̄thaj</u> nâajùu	Thailand is nice to live in.
4. apháatmênt	<u>apháatmênt</u> nâajùu	The apartment is nice to live in.
5. tàan̄caṇwàt	<u>tàan̄caṇwàt</u> nâajùu	Up country (Thailand) is nice to live in.

### 1) Recognition and Familiarization Drill (nâa+Verb as Modifier)

1. bâan <u>nâajùu</u>	The house is nice (to live in)
2. aah̄aan <u>nâathaan</u>	The food looks delicious.
3. rôt khannán <u>nâakhàp</u>	That car is nice to drive.
4. nán̄s̄ȳy lêm̄nán <u>nâaàan</u>	That book is interesting to read.
5. kh̄ōṇ th̄f̄in̄f̄i <u>nâas̄ȳy</u>	Things here are nice to buy.
6. n̄ñ r̄ȳañ̄f̄i <u>nâaduu</u>	This movie is nice to see.
7. bâan l̄ñ̄nán kh̄âach̄aw m̄aj ph̄eṇ, <u>nâach̄aw</u>	That house is not too expensive. It's nice to rent.
8. p̄aakkaṇ d̄âam̄f̄i <u>nâach̄aj</u>	This pen is nice to use.
9. nákr̄ian khonnán <u>nâas̄ōṇ</u>	That student is nice to teach.
10. nán̄s̄ȳy lêm̄n̄f̄i <u>nâas̄ōṇcaj</u>	That book is interesting.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

11. lékchêe (khambanjaa) nâafan      The lecture is interesting.
12. dèk khonnán nâarák      The child is lovable (cute, etc.)

### m) Transformation Drill

- |    | <u>Pattern 1</u>                      | <u>Pattern 2</u>        |                                |
|----|---------------------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. | bâanlănnán sŭaj<br>phǒm jàak jùu      | bâan lănnán nâajùu      | That house is cozy.            |
| 2. | rót khanníi dīi<br>phǒm jàak khàp     | rót khanníi nâakhàp     | That car is nice to drive.     |
| 3. | khŏŋ thīnīi thùukdīi<br>phǒm jàak sýy | khŏŋ thīnīi nâasýy      | Things here are good buys.     |
| 4. | bâan lănnán dīi<br>phǒm jàak chāw     | bâan lănnán nâachāw     | That is a good house to rent.  |
| 5. | nákrian khonnán kèn<br>phǒm jàak sŏn  | nákrian khonnán nâasŏn  | That student is nice to teach. |
| 6. | nánsŷy lēnnīi dīi<br>phǒm jàak àan    | nánsŷy lēm nīi nâaàan   | That is a readable book.       |
| 7. | nánsŷy lēmnīi dīi<br>phǒm sŏncāj      | nánsŷy lēmnīi nâasŏncāj | That book is interesting.      |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

8. dèk khonnán dīi

thúkkhon rák kháw

dèk khonnán nâarák

That child is loveable.  
(cute, etc.)

### n) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. sǒɔŋ kwàa	bāan lǎŋnán jùu hāaŋ càak thanǒn jàj kīi kiloo How many kilometers is that house from the main street?	sǒɔŋ kiloo kwàa  More than two.
2. raaw 2 rǔy 3	sathǎaniī rótfaŋ jùu hāaŋ càak (thīi) nīi kīi kiloo How many kilometers is the railroad station from here?	raaw sǒɔŋ rý sǎam kiloo  About 2 or 3.
3. raaw 150	hǔahǐn jùu hāaŋ càak krunthēep kīi kiloo How far is Huahin from Bangkok?	raaw róɔj hāasǐp kiloo  About 150 kilometers.
4. 692	ubon jùu hāaŋ càak krunthēep kīi kiloo How far is Ubon from Bangkok?	hòk róɔj kâawsǐp sǒɔŋ kiloo  About 692 kilometers.
5. 1129	sǒŋkhǎa jùu hāaŋ càak krunthēep kīi kiloo How far is Songkla from Bangkok?	nỳn phan nỳn róɔj jǐisǐp kâaw kiloo  1129 kilometers.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### o) Recognition and Familiarization Drill (Use of tittò)

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. kháw maa thurá araj Why did he come?	kháw maa tittò rýan bâanchâw He came to inquire about the house for rent.
2. kháw khuan ca tittò kàp khraaj Who should he contact?	kháw khuan ca tittò kàp câwnâathîi khonnán He should contact that official.
3. phôm ca tittò kàp kháw dâj janaj How can I get in touch with him?	tittò phaan naajnâa sikhráp Contact (him) through the agent.
4. phôm ca tittò kàp kháw dâj janaj How can I get in touch with him?	tittò phaan câwnâathîi sikhráp Through the man in charge.
5. phôm ca tittò kàp khun dâj janaj How do I get in touch with you?	nîikhráp, bæethoorasàp phôm Here is my phone number.
6. khun phốp kháw bâan rýplàaw Have you seen him lately?	plàawkhráp, phôm māj dâj tittò kàp kháw maa naan léew No, I've been out of touch with him for a long time.
7. khun dâj còtmăaj càak kháw bâan rýplàaw Have you got any letters from him?	plàaw khráp, phôm māj dâj tittò kàp kháw maa naan léew No, I haven't been in touch with him for a long time.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

p) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- |                   |                 |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| 1. thoo paj thǎam | call and ask    |
| 2. thoo paj bòok  | call and tell   |
| 3. thoo paj chuan | call and invite |
| 4. thoo paj rǎak  | call and summon |
| 5. thoo paj hǎa   | call            |
| 6. thoo paj thǎn  | call            |

q) Transformation Drill (Combine patterns 1 and 2 to form pattern 3.)

Patterns 1 and 2

Pattern 3

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. a. phǒm <u>thoo</u> <u>paj</u> hǎa khǎw | phǒm <u>thoo</u> <u>paj</u> <u>thǎam</u> khǎw wǎa |
| b. phǒm thǎam khǎw wǎa khǎw                | khǎw ca paj mǎj                                   |
| ca paj mǎj                                 |   |
| I called him.                              | I called and asked if he                          |
| I asked him whether he                     | was going.  |
| was going.                                 |   |
| 2. a. phǒm thoo paj hǎa khǎw               | phǒm <u>thoo</u> <u>paj</u> <u>bòok</u> khǎw wǎa  |
| b. phǒm bòok khǎw wǎa phǒm                 | phǒm paj mǎj dǎj                                  |
| paj mǎj dǎj                                |   |
| I called him.                              | I called and told him                             |
| I told him I couldn't go.                  | that I couldn't go.                               |
|  |   |
| 3. a. phǒm ca thoo paj hǎa khǎw            | phǒm ca <u>thoo</u> <u>paj</u> <u>chuan</u> khǎw  |
| b. phǒm ca chuan khǎw paj                  | paj sǎy khǎn                                      |
| sǎy khǎn                                   |   |
| I will call him. I will                    | I will call and ask him                           |
| ask him to go shopping                     | to go shopping with me.                           |
| with me.                                   |   |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

4. a. phǒm ca thoo paj hǎa khǎw      phǒm ca thoo paj chuan khǎw  
 b. phǒm ca chuan khǎw paj      paj thǎaw  
     thǎaw  
     I will call him. I will      I will call and invite  
     invite him to go out (for      him to go out (for fun).  
     fun).
5. a. phǒm ca thoo paj hǎa khǎw      phǒm ca thoo paj bòok hǎj khǎw  
 b. phǒm ca bòok hǎj khǎw maa      maa thǎinǎi  
     thǎinǎi  
     I will call him. I will      I will call and tell him  
     tell him to come over.      to come over.
6. a. phǒm ca thoo paj hǎa khǎw      phǒm ca thoo paj thǎam (khǎw)  
 b. phǒm ca thǎam khǎw rǎan      rǎan bǎanchǎw  
     bǎanchǎw  
     I will call him. I will      I will call and ask him  
     ask him about the house      about the house for rent.  
     for rent.
7. a. phǒm thoo paj thǎi bǎorisàt      phǒm thoo paj rǎak thǎeksǎi  
     thǎeksǎi  
 b. phǒm rǎak thǎeksǎi  
     I called the taxi company.      I called for a cab.  
     I asked for a cab.
8. a. khǎw thoo maa hǎa phǒm      khǎw thoo maa thǎam wǎa phǒm  
 b. khǎw thǎam phǒm wǎa phǒm      ca paj mǎaràj  
     ca paj mǎaràj  
     He called me. He asked      He called and asked when  
     me when I was leaving.      I was leaving.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

9. a. kháw thoo maa hǎa phǒm      kháw thoo maa bòok (phǒm) wǎa  
b. kháw bòok phǒm wǎa kháw      kháw mâj sabaaj  
mâj sabaaj  
He called me. He told      He called and told me  
me he was sick.      that he was sick.
10. a. kháw thoo maa hǎa phǒm      kháw thoo maa chuan phǒm paj  
b. kháw chuan phǒm paj      phátthajaa  
phátthajaa  
He called me. He invited      He called and invited me  
me to go to Pataya.      to go to Pataya.

### 32.4 EXERCISES

1. Ask someone if he has rented a house yet. He indicates he hasn't.
2. Ask if there are any houses for rent in his street. He says there are some.
3. Find out the name of someone's landlord.
4. Find out how much the rent is.
5. Comment on the looks of various buildings in the neighborhood. Indicate that they look nice.
6. Discuss how far apart various buildings in the neighborhood are.
7. Ask someone how you get in touch with someone else. He says call him directly.
8. Ask someone if the house he is living in is big enough for a small family like his.
9. Find out how much the rent is for different houses and apartments, how many hundreds, thousands, etc. per week, month, year.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

10. Discuss the weather in various seasons at various places.
11. Discuss the manner in which various activities are done and whether you like the way it's done.
12. Indicate that something is just right, not too... or too...
13. Ask questions and answer them about places that are nice to live in, things that are nice to eat, etc.
14. Discuss various telephone calls; who made them to whom for what purpose and at what time.

### 32.5 VOCABULARY

éepên (lûuk, phôn, baj)	apple
câwkhǎon	owner
câwnâathîi (khon)	the man in charge, official
doojtron	directly
hàan	to be far apart, to be separate, to be distant
kamlan phoodii	just right
kæen paj	too..., in excess
khâachâw	the rent
khambanjaa (khôo)	lecture
khanàat	size
khít janṇaj	how is it figured (what is included in the calculations)
kiloo	kilometer
lékchêe (khôo)	lecture
lûuknǎon (khon)	subordinate (employee)
maa thǎn	to arrive (towards speaker)
paj thǎn	to arrive (away from speaker)



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

mii.... jùu	has, have, is, are in possession of, is are in existence, is, are to be found
nâa	worthy of, leading to, or - able, It combines with other verbs to form verb compounds
nâa-àan	interesting to read
nâabyà	boring
nâacháj	nice to use
nâachâw	nice to rent
nâaduu	interesting to look at
nâafan	interesting to listen to
nâajùu	to be cozy, livable
nâakhàp	nice to drive
nâarák	lovable, cute
nâasýy	nice to buy
nâasǒncaj	interesting
nâasǒn	nice to teach
nâathan	to look delicious
naajnáa (khon)	agent
pàak (pàak)	mouth, beak, lips, opening
pàaksǒj	the entrance into a lane
raaj la-làt	details
rák	to love
sǒj	lane, narrow street
tìttò / kàp	to contact or get in touch with
/ kan	someone
/ ka-	
thoo (rasàp)	to telephone, to call
.... (rasàp) paj	
.... (rasàp) maa	

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### LESSON THIRTY-THREE

#### 33.0 BASIC DIALOG: Renting a House (3)

- A: phǒm dâj jin wâa khun mi bân hâj chaw, châj máj khráp I heard you had a house to rent, is that true?
- B: khâ, mi jùu lăaj lăj . khun tŏnkaan bĕep năj. chán diaw, sŏn chán rý chán khrŷn Yes, I have several. What kind do you want? One story, two story, or one and a half story.
- A: phǒm jàak dâj bân thŷi mi hŏnnoŏn sǎam hŏn lĕew kŏ mi múnluat thán lăj ca pen sŏn chán rý chán khrŷn kŏ dâj I want a house with 3 bedrooms and completely screened in. Either two story or one and a half story is O.K.
- B: khun chôp bân tŷk rý máaj khá You want a masonry house or a wooden house?
- A: araj kŏdâj khráp Either is O.K.
- B: dichán mi bân sŏn chán khrŷn tŷk khrŷn máaj jùu lăj nyn I have a two story house half masonry and half wood.
- pen bân bĕep samăj màj It's a modern style house.
- khâanŏok thaa sŷi khŷaw òn, Outside it's light green; inside it's white.
- khâanaj sŷi khăaw
- chán bon mi hŏnnoŏn sǎam Upstairs there are 3 bedrooms and one bath.
- hŏn, hŏnnám nyn hŏn
- chán lăan mi hŏnrápkhĕek, Downstairs there is a living room, kitchen, dining room, and another bathroom.
- hŏnkhrua, hŏnaahăan ka
- hŏnnám lĭk hŏn nyn

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

lěswkô, lǎn bâan mii ryan  
khoncháj ka hôṅkèpkhōṅ  
jùu tàan hàak

And in the back of the  
house there are separate  
servant quarters and  
storage space.

A: mii roonróṭ máj khráp

Is there a carport?

B: mii khâ

Yes, there is.

### 33.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) When kô dâj follows Noun+nǎj, it indicates that either of two or more of the options is acceptable.

A: phǒm khuan ca paj bâan  
khun weelaa nǎj

What time of day should I go  
to your house?

B. weelaa nǎj kô dâj =  $\begin{cases} \text{weelaa cháaw } \underline{dâj} & \text{'Morning is O.K.'} \\ \text{weelaa thīan } \underline{dâj} & \text{'Noon is O.K.'} \\ \text{weelaa klaan̄khyyn } \underline{dâj} & \text{'Nighttime is O.K.'} \\ \text{weelaa .... } \underline{dâj} & \text{....} \end{cases}$   
'Any time is all right.'

A: raw ca kin khâaw thīi ráan  
nǎj kan

'Which restaurant shall  
we eat at?'

B: ráan nǎj kô dâj =  $\begin{cases} \text{ráan níi } \underline{dâj} & \text{'This restaurant is O.K.'} \\ \text{ráan nán } \underline{dâj} & \text{'That restaurant is O.K.'} \\ \text{ráan nóon } \underline{dâj} & \text{'The restaurant over there is O.K.'} \end{cases}$

'Any one is all right?'

- b) jàak and jàak dâj both mean 'want' or 'would like', but they are used differently.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

jàak is usually followed by a Verb Phrase and only rarely by a Noun Phrase, whereas, jàak dâj is normally followed by a Noun Phrase. Observe the following examples:

Subject + Verb + Complement (Verb Phrase)

- (1) phǎm      jàak      paj  
I      want to      go
- (2) phom      jàak      paj jùu tàanɕaŋwàt  
I      want to      go and live in the provinces.

Subject + Verb + Complement (Noun Phrase)

- (1) phǎm      jàak dâj      bâan  
I      want      a house.
- (2) phǎm      jàak dâj      bâan thîi mii sǎɕɔŋ hôŋnoɔn  
I      want      a house with two bedrooms.

c) Following are two of the ways that Noun Compounds may be formed in Thai:

- (1) Noun Compound: Noun + Verb Phrase

hônrapkhèek 'living room': hôn 'room' + rap  
'receive' + khèek 'guest'

hônnoɔn 'bedroom': hôn + noɔn 'sleep'

hônkèpkhǎɔŋ 'storeroom': hôn + kèp 'store' + khǎɔŋ  
'things'

hônthaankhâaw 'dining room': hôn + thaan 'eat' +  
khâaw 'rice'

- (2) Noun Compound: Noun + Noun

hônnaahǎan 'dining room': hôn + aahǎan 'food'

(hôn) khrua 'kitchen': hôn + khrua 'kitchen'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

roonróṭ 'carport': roon 'building'+róṭ 'vehicle'  
 sŭan dōokmáaj 'flower garden': sŭan 'garden'  
 dōokmáaj 'flower'  
 sanǎam (jâa) 'lawn, yard': sanǎam 'yard, field' +  
 jâa 'grass'

Observe the following compounds with bèsp 'model, type, style':

bâan bèsp thaj	a Thai style house
bâan bèsp faràn	a Western style house
bâan bèsp samǎj màj	a new style house
bâan bèsp than samǎj	a modern style house
bâan bèsp chán dīaw	a one story house
bâan bèsp sǒon chán	a two story house
bâan bèsp chánkhrŷn	a storey and a half house

### 33.2 VOCABULARY NOTES

I. The following words and phrases are used with houses:

mún	'mosquito net'
múnlŭat	'screen' (for window, etc.)
mi } tít }	múnlŭat
	'to be screened'
mi múnlŭat thán lǎn	'to be completely screened'

2. The following are some of the color words in Thai:

<u>Basic color</u>	<u>Light color</u>	<u>Dark color</u>
<u>green</u>	sǐi khǎaw	sǐi khǎaw òon
<u>yellow</u>	sǐi lǎan	sǐi lǎan òon
<u>red</u>	sǐi dǝen	sǐi dǝen òon
<u>brown</u>	sǐi námtaan	sǐi námtaan òon

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

blue	sǐi námŋəən	sǐi fáa	sǐi námŋəən khēm
<u>navy blue</u>	sǐi kromathāa		krommathāa
<u>white</u>	sǐi khǎaw	... ..	... ..
<u>black</u>	sǐi dam	... ..	... ..

### 33.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. khun chōp bâan tỳk rý bâan máaj Do you like stucco houses or wood houses?	araj kôdâj  Either.
2. khun chōp bâan bēep nǎj What kind of house do you prefer?	bēep nǎj kôdâj Any kind.
3. khun jàak jùu thfinǎj Where would you like to live?	thfinǎj kôdâj Anywhere.
4. khun jàak pen araj (mǎo, thahǎan, etc) What would you like to be? (doctor, etc.)	pen araj kôdâj (Any occupation) is fine.
5. raw ca paj kan weelaa nǎj What time are we going?	weelaa nǎj kôdâj Any time is all right.
6. chalǎem pen chýy phûuchaaaj rý phûujǐn Is 'Chalerm' a man's name or a woman's name?	chýy phûuchaaaj kôdâj chýy phûujǐn kôdâj  It could be either a man's name or a woman's name.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### b) Substitution Drill

#### Cue

#### Pattern

- |  |   |
|--|---|
|  | ca pen <u>sǒŋ</u> <u>chán</u> rý <u>chán</u> <u>diaw</u> kǎdǎj<br>Either a two story or one story<br>one is O.K.  |
| 1. paj, mǎj paj                            | ca <u>paj</u> rý <u>mǎj</u> <u>paj</u> kǎdǎj<br>It doesn't matter whether we go<br>or not.  |
| 2. tham dǎawníi, ìik<br>sák pradǎaw        | ca <u>tham dǎawníi</u> rý <u>ìik</u> <u>sák</u> <u>pradǎaw</u> kǎdǎj<br>It doesn't make any difference<br>whether you do it now or a little<br>later.             |
| 3. hǎj phǒm khoŋj jùu<br>thǎiníi, thǎinóon | ca <u>hǎj</u> <u>phǒm</u> <u>khoŋj</u> <u>jùu</u> <u>thǎiníi</u> rý<br><u>thǎinóon</u> kǎdǎj<br>It's all right with me whether<br>you have me wait here or there. |
| 4. ca pen bâan tỳk,<br>bâan máaj           | ca <u>pen</u> <u>bâan</u> tỳk rý <u>bâanmáaj</u> kǎdǎj<br>Either a stucco or wooden house<br>is O.K.  |
| 5. khon thaj, khon<br>tàaŋchâat            | ca <u>pen</u> <u>khon</u> <u>thaj</u> rý <u>khon</u> <u>tàaŋchâat</u><br>kǎdǎj<br>It could be either a Thai or<br>a foreigner.                                    |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### c) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	phǒm jàak dâj <u>bāan thîi mii hǒnnoon</u> <u>sǎam hǒn</u> I want a house with three bedrooms.
1. <u>bāan thîi mii múnluat</u>	phǒm jàak dâj <u>bāan thîi mii múnluat</u> I want a house that is screened.
2. <u>bāan sǒon chán</u>	phǒm jàak dâj <u>bāan sǒon chán</u> I want a two story house.
3. <u>bāan bɛɛp thaj</u>	phǒm jàak dâj <u>bāan bɛɛp thaj</u> I want a Thai style house.
4. <u>rót màj</u>	phǒm jàak dâj <u>rót màj</u> I want a new car.
5. <u>nánsǎy lêm nán</u>	phǒm jàak dâj <u>nánsǎy lêm nán</u> I want that book.
6. <u>phǎenthîi prathêet thaj l phèn</u>	phǒm jàak dâj <u>phǎenthîi prathêet thaj</u> <u>nỳn phèn</u> I want a map of Thailand.
7. <u>nen mâak mâak</u>	phǒm jàak dâj <u>nen mâak mâak</u> I want (to get) a lot of money.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### d) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. fáa	bâan khun (thaa) sǐi araj What color is your house?	sǐi fáa khráp Light blue.
2. dam	rót khan màj khǒŋ khun sǐi araj What color is your new car?	sǐi dam khráp Black.
3. khǎaw	khâaŋŋôok bâan khun thaa sǐi araj What color is your house on the outside?	sǐi khǎaw khráp White.
4. lǎaŋ òon	sǎa khǒŋ kháw sǐi araj What color is his coat?	sǐi lǎaŋ òon khráp Light yellow..
5. námtaan kèe	rǒŋtháw khūu nán sǐi araj What color is that pair of shoes?	sǐi námtaan kèe khráp Dark brown.
6. e)	Transformation Drill (Form pattern 3 from Patterns 1 and 2.)	

<u>Pattern 1 and 2</u>	<u>Pattern 3</u>
1. bâan kháw sǐi khǎaw bâan phǒm sǐi khǎaw òon His house is green. My house is light green.	bâan kháw sǐi kèe kwàa bâan phǒm His house is a darker color than mine.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

2. kâwîi hôŋ khun praphâat  
sǐi lǎŋkèe

The chairs in Prapas'  
room are dark yellow.

- kâwîi hôŋ khun prasèet sǐi  
lǎŋdôn

The chairs in Prasert's  
room are light yellow.

- kâwîi hôŋ khun praphâat sǐi  
kèe kwàa kâwîi hôŋ khun

prasèet

The chairs in Prapas'  
room are of darker color  
than those in Prasert's  
room.

3. rôt khan nán sǐi dɛɛŋ  
rôt khanníi sǐi dɛɛŋ dôn

That car is red; this  
car is light red.

- rôt khan nán sǐi kèe kwàa  
rôt khan níi

That car is darker colored  
than this one.

4. sǎa chót nán sǐi námneen  
sǎa chót níi sǐi faá

That suit is blue.  
This suit is light blue.

- sǎa chót nán kèe kwàa sǎa  
chót níi

That suit is darker than  
this one.

5. roongtháw khûu nán sǐi námtaan  
kèe  
roongtháw khûu níi sǐi námtaan  
dôn

That pair of shoes is  
dark brown.

This pair of shoes is  
light brown.

- roongtháw khûu nán sǐi kèe  
kwàa roongtháw khûu níi

That pair of shoes is  
darker in color than  
this pair.

6. phǎm chǎop sǐi kromathâa  
kháw chǎop sǐi fáa

I like navy blue.  
He likes light blue.

- phǎm chǎop sǐi kèe kwàa  
kháw

I like darker colors  
than he.

Repeat this drill reversing subject and complement and using  
dôn kwàa in place of kèe kwàa.

f) Expansion Drill

1. mi1 bân

mi1 bân wân

mi1 bân wân hâj châw

mi1 bân bèsp thaj wân hâj châw

mi1 bân bèsp thaj wân hâj châw jùu

mi1 bân bèsp thaj than samǎj wân hâj châw jùu

mi1 bân bèsp thaj chán diaw than samǎj wân hâj châw jùu

mi1 bân bèsp thaj chán diaw than samǎj wân hâj châw jùu

lǎn nɯŋ

2. phǎm jàak dâj bân

phǎm jàak dâj bân tỳk

phǎm jàak dâj bân tỳk thaa sǐi khǎaw

phǎm jàak dâj bân tỳk thaa sǐi khǎaw òon

phǎm jàak dâj bân tỳk thaa sǐi khǎaw òon thǐi mi1

múnlúat

phǎm jàak dâj bân tỳk thaa sǐi khǎaw òon thǐi mi1

múnlúat thánlǎn

3. kháw chǎp bân

kháw chǎp bân máaj

kháw chǎp bân máaj bèsp faràn

kháw chǎp bân máaj bèsp faràn chán diaw

kháw chǎp bân máaj bèsp faràn chán diaw thǐi mi1

hǎnám

kháw chǎp bân máaj bèsp faràn chán diaw thǐi mi1

hǎnám bèsp than samǎj

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

4. pen bâan  
 pen bâan bɛɛp samǎj kàw  
 pen bâan bɛɛp samǎj kàw sǒɔn chán  
 pen bâan bɛɛp samǎj kàw sǒɔn chán khâaŋnɔk thaɐ sǐi dɛɛn  
 pen bâan bɛɛp samǎj kàw sǒɔn chán khâaŋnɔk thaɐ sǐi dɛɛn,  
 khâaŋnaɐ sǐi khǎaw  
 pen bâan bɛɛp samǎj kàw 2 chán khâaŋnɔk thaɐ sǐi dɛɛn,  
 khâaŋnaɐ sǐi khǎaw lǎn nɔn

g) Response Drill (Use kô dâj in the response.)

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. khun jàak jùu krunthêep rý tàaŋcaŋwát	thǐinǎj kô dâj
2. wanníi raw ca paj thaɐn khâaw thǐinǎj dīi	thǐinǎj kô dâj
3. khun jàak hâj lûuk khun rian araj	araj kô dâj
4. khun ca hâj phǒm paj tɔɔn nǎj	tɔɔn nǎj kô dâj
5. phǒm khuan ca hâj araj kháw dīi	araj kô dâj
6. ŋaan níi ca tɔɔn sèt mýaraj	mýaraj kô dâj
7. khun ca phûut ka khraj	khraj kô dâj
8. khun jàak hâj khraj paj dūaj	khraj kô dâj

### 33.4 EXERCISES

- a) Find out if someone has a house to rent. He indicates that he has several, and asks you if you want a single story house. You say you want a two story house.
- b) Tell someone that you have a masonry house that is completely screened in. Ask him if he wants to rent it. He says he doesn't.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- c) Ask someone if he has a half masonry and half wood house to rent. He says he has two. You ask him where they are. He says they are on Sukhumvit Lane.
- d) Ask the teacher whether most Thais live in modern style houses or old style, Thai or foreign.
- e) Tell someone you have a house to rent. He asks you what color it is. You say it's white on the outside and light green on the inside.
- f) Describe the house you are now living in terms of:  
1) number of storeys 2) material it is made out of,  
3) the color it is painted inside and out, 4) what rooms it has and whether they are upstairs or down,  
5) whether it has servants' quarters, storage space, a carport, flower garden, and a yard.
- g) Various students ask about the colors of various objects in the classroom, other students respond with the correct answers.
- h) One student asks another questions of the following kind: 'Do you like .... or ....?' to which the response 'Any (kind, thing, where, etc.)' is given.
- i) One student asks another what kind of... he wants. The second responds with a description of the kind he wants.

### 33.5 VOCABULARY

òon	light (color)
bâan máaj (lǎn)	a wooden house
bâan týk (lǎn)	a stucco home, brick house (building)
bèsp	model, type, style
chaan	patio, porch without a roof
chalǎn (chalǎn)	terrace, balcony, porch
chánbon	upstairs
chándiaw	one story

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

chánkhrŷŋ	one and a half storey
chánlâaŋ	downstairs
(sŷi) dam	black
(sŷi) dɛɛŋ	red
dâjjin	to hear
dòokmáaj (dòok)	flowers
fáa (sŷi fáa)	sky, sky blue
hônnaahǎan (hôn)	dining room
hônkèpkhǎon (hôn)	storage, space, storage room
hônkhrua (hôn)	kitchen
hônám (hôn)	bathroom, restroom
hônrapkhèek (hôn)	a living room
jâa	grass
kèɛ	dark (color)
khǎaw	white
khŷaw	green
khŷawdòn	light green
khûu	pair
kromathâa	navy blue, dark blue
lŷaŋ	yellow
máaj (an, phèɛn)	wood, stick
mún (lǎŋ)	mosquito net
múnlûat	screen (for window etc.)
(sŷi) námneen	blue
(sŷi) námtaan	sugar, brown (as color)
rabian	corridor
roonróat (roon)	garage
roontháw (khûu, khâaŋ)	shoes (pair; one of a pair)
ryan (lǎŋ)	house (in older Thai)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

ryankhoncháj (lǎn)	servants' quarters
samǎj	time, period, era, age, reign
samǎj màj	modern
sanǎam (jâa)	lawn, yard
sanǎam (sanǎam)	yard, field, (golf) course
sǐi (sǐi)	color
sǒnchán	two story
sǔan (sǔan)	garden
sǔan dòokmáaj	flower garden
(jùu) tàan hàak	to be separate
thaa (sǐi)	to paint, smear, spread (on)
than samǎj	modern, up-to-date
tít (mún lûat)	to be screened
tônkaan	to want, need

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### LESSON THIRTY-FOUR

#### 34.0 BASIC DIALOG: Renting a House (4)

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>A: pen jaŋŋaj mǎŋ khá bǎan<br/>lǎŋ níi<br/>khun chǎop máj</p>  | <p>How is this house?</p> <p>Do you like it?</p>   |
| <p>B: sabaaj mǎak khráp, bǎoriween<br/>kô kwǎan khwǎan dii<br/>khǎothôot, khun khít khǎachǎw<br/>jaŋŋaj khráp</p>                                   | <p>Very nice. The compound<br/>is also nice and large.</p> <p>Excuse me, how much is<br/>the rent?</p>   |
| <p>A: dyan la hǎaphan bàat.mǎj<br/>ruam khǎanám, khǎafaj,<br/>khǎakéss, lé khǎathoorasàp<br/>phǔuchǎw tǎon sǎa een</p>                              | <p>5000 baht a month.<br/>Not including water,<br/>electricity, gas, and<br/>telephone.</p> <p>The tenant has to pay<br/>those himself.</p>  |
| <p>B: dyan la hǎaphan chiaw rǎ khráp<br/>lót bǎan dǎj máj khráp</p>   | <p><u>Five thousand baht!</u>?<br/>Could you come down some?</p>   |
| <p>A: hǎa phan mǎj phǎen rǎkhǎ<br/>phró mii khrǎanryan phróom</p>   | <p>5,000 is not too expensive<br/>since it's furnished.</p>  |
| <p>B: mii araj bǎan khráp</p>   | <p>What (furnishings) are<br/>there?</p>   |
| <p>A: mii khróp thúk jǎan:<br/>chút rápkhèek, chúat thaankhǎaw,<br/>tian, tǔu, tawkéss, tǔujen lé<br/>phátlom . khǎat tès khrǎan<br/>pràpaakàat</p> | <p>Everything: living room<br/>furniture, a dining set,<br/>beds, chests of drawers,<br/>a gas stove, a refrigerator,<br/>and electric fans. The only<br/>thing it doesn't have is air<br/>conditioning.</p> |



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>A: khun tŏŋ aw maa een tɛɛ<br/>raw tɪttŋ hâj frii</p>  | <p>You have to bring your own.<br/>But we'll have it installed<br/>for you free.</p>                        |
| <p>B: tŏŋ tham sǎŋjaachâw kɪi<br/>pii khráp</p>   | <p>How long a lease is<br/>required?</p>  |
| <p>A: nŷŋ pii khà<br/>càaj nɛn lûanâa jaanŋŋŋj<br/>sǎam dyan<br/>khŏthŏt, khun ca jáaj maa<br/>jùu mýaraj khá</p> | <p>One year.<br/>(Pay) 3 months rent in<br/>advance.<br/>Excuse me, when would you<br/>like to move in?</p> |
| <p>B: phŏm khŏ prýksǎa phanrajaa<br/>phŏm kŏon<br/>thâa tòklŏŋ, ca jáaj maa<br/>dyan nâa</p>                      | <p>I'd like to talk it over<br/>with my wife first.<br/>If we take it, we'll move<br/>in next month.</p>    |

### 34.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

#### a) sǎa, òok, and càaj

sǎa (khâa) means 'to pay for something (a bill, etc.)'  
as an obligation for services rendered.

òok (nɛn) means 'to pay for something, put up the  
money for something, or to stand good for something.'

càaj (nɛn) means 'to pay out, spend, disburse money'.  
It refers to the actual expenditure of funds on a  
specific occasion.

The example below illustrates the usage of sǎa, òok,  
and càaj:

khun cŏon kàp khun cim châw bân jùu dŷajkan. khâw sǎa  
khâachâw dyan la 4000 bàat. khun cŏon òok 2000 bàat .  
khun cim òok 2000 bàat. khâw càaj khâachâwbân dyan  
la khráp

588

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

Noun:   Noun+Verb   Phrase

khâacâaŋ 'wage':   khâa+câaŋ 'hire'

khâachâw 'rent':   khâa+châw 'rent'

khâakin 'food':   khâa+kin 'eat'

khâajûu 'lodging':   khâa+jûu 'reside'

khâathoorasàp 'phone bill':   khâa+thoorasàp 'telephone'

khâadænthaaŋ 'travel expenses':   khâa+dænthaaŋ 'travel'

### 34.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. khâanám, māj	ruam <u>khâanám</u> māj Does it include the water bill?	māj ruam khráp  No, it doesn't.
2. khâakées	ruam <u>khâakées</u> māj Does it include the gas bill?	ruam khráp  Yes, it does.
3. khâafaj, māj	ruam <u>khâafaj</u> māj Does it include the electric bill?	māj ruam khráp  No, it doesn't.
4. khâathoorasàp	ruam <u>khâathoorasàp</u> māj Does it include the phone bill?	ruam khráp  Yes, it does.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### b) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	tôn sǎa <u>khâanám</u> een You have to pay the water bill yourself.
1. khâacâaŋ	tôn sǎa <u>khâacâaŋ</u> een You have to pay the wages yourself.
2. khâamǎo	tôn sǎa <u>khâamǎo</u> een You have to pay the doctor bill yourself.
3. khâadæenthaaŋ	tôn sǎa <u>khâadæenthaaŋ</u> een You have to pay travel expenses yourself.
4. khâajùu	ttôn sǎa <u>khâajùu</u> een You have to pay for lodging yourself.

### c) Transformation Drill (Change from Pattern 1 to Pattern 2.)

<u>Pattern 1</u>	<u>Pattern 2</u>
1. kháw châw bâan dyan la sǎam phan bàat He rents the house for 3000 baht a month.	kháw sǎa khâa châwbâan dyan la 3000 bàat He pays 3000 baht a month for rent.
2. kháw câaŋ khoncháŋ dyan la hâa rǎoŋ bàat He hires a servant for 500 baht a month.	kháw sǎa khâacâaŋ khoncháŋ dyan la 500 bàat He pays 500 baht a month for a servant.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>3. kháw cháj fajfáa dyan la<br/>sǐi róoj bàat</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He uses 400 baht worth of<br/>electricity per month.</p> | <p>kháw sǎa khâafajfáa dyan la<br/>sǐi róoj bàat</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He pays a 400 baht electric<br/>bill every month.</p> |
| <p>4. kháw cháj késs dyan la róoj<br/>bàat</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He uses 100 baht worth<br/>of gas per month.</p>               | <p>kháw sǎa khâakéss dyan la<br/>róoj bàat</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He pays a 100 baht monthly<br/>gas bill.</p>                |
| <p>5. kháw sýy aahǎan dyan la<br/>phan bàat</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He buys 1000 baht worth<br/>of food per month.</p>            | <p>kháw sǎa khâa aahǎan dyan<br/>la phan bàat</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He pays 1000 baht a month<br/>for food.</p>              |
| <p>6. kháw hâj ɲən khonkhàp thékssǐi<br/>sǐp bàat</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He gave the taxi driver<br/>ten baht.</p>               | <p>kháw sǎa khâa thékssǐi sǐp<br/>bàat</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He paid ten baht for<br/>a taxi.</p>                            |

### d) Sentence Expansion Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>1. raw mâj tɔŋ sǎa khâachâwbâan<br/>een. thaɲrâatchakaan òok hâj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">We don't have to pay the<br/>rent.</p> | <p>raw mâj tɔŋ sǎa khâachâwbâan<br/>een. <u>thaɲrâatchakaan òok hâj</u></p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">We don't have to pay the<br/>rent. The government<br/>pays for us.</p>            |
| <p>2. raw mâj tɔŋ sǎa khâadænthaan<br/>een</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">We don't have to pay for<br/>travel expenses.</p>               | <p>raw mâj tɔŋ sǎa khâadænthaan<br/>een. <u>thaɲrâatchakaan òok hâj</u></p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">We don't have to pay for<br/>travel expenses. The<br/>government pays for us.</p> |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>3. raw mâj tŏŋ sŷa khâamŏo een</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">We don't have to pay<br/>doctor bills.</p>   | <p>raw mâj tŏŋ sŷa khâamŏo een.<br/><u>thaaŋrâatchakaan òok hâj</u></p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">We don't have to pay doctor<br/>bills. The government pays<br/>for us.</p>   |
| <p>4. khâw mâj tŏŋ sŷa khâalâwrian<br/>khŏŏŋ lŭuk een</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He doesn't have to pay<br/>for his children's<br/>schooling.</p> | <p>khâw mâj tŏŋ sŷa khâalâwrian<br/>khŏŏŋ lŭuk een. <u>thaaŋrâatchakaan</u><br/><u>òok hâj</u></p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He doesn't have to pay for<br/>his children's schooling.<br/>The government pays for him.</p> |
| <p>5. khâw mâj tŏŋ sŷa khâarót een</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He doesn't have to pay<br/>for transportation.</p>                                  | <p>khâw mâj tŏŋ sŷa khâarót een<br/><u>thaaŋrâatchakaan òok hâj</u></p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He doesn't have to pay for<br/>carfare. The government<br/>pays for him.</p>   |

### e) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. 2	khun càaj khâachâwbâan wanthîi thâwraj  On what day of the month do you pay the rent?	wanthîi sŏŋ khráp  The second.
2. 15	khun càaj khâakéss wanthîi thâwraj  On what day of the month do you pay the gas bill?	wanthîi 15 khráp  The fifteenth.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |    |    |   |  |
|----|----|---|--|
| 3. | 22 | khun càaj khâanám wan<br>thâwraj<br>What day do you pay the<br>water bill on?   | wantîi 22 khráp<br><br>The twenty second.      |
| 4. |    | sùtháaj khun càaj khâathoorasàp<br>wantîi thâwraj<br>What day do you pay the<br>telephone bill on?                      | wan sùtháaj khráp<br><br>The last day.         |
| 5. |    | dyan la khun càaj khâacâan khoncháj<br>2 khrán dyan la kîi khrán<br>How many times a month<br>do you pay your servants? | dyan la 2 khrán<br>khráp<br><br>Twice a month. |
| 6. |    | dyan la khun càaj khâafaj dyan la kîi<br>khrán khrán<br>How many times a month<br>do you pay the light<br>bill?         | dyan la khrán<br><br>Once a month.             |

f) Transformation Drill (Change from affirmative to negative.)

- |    | <u>Pattern 1</u><br>(affirmative)   | <u>Pattern 2</u><br>(Negative)   |
|----|---|--|
| 1. | bâannîi <u>mîi</u> khrýanryan<br><u>khróp</u> thúk jàan<br>This house has all<br>kinds of furniture.  | bâannîi <u>mîi</u> khrýanryan <u>mâj</u><br><u>khróp</u> (thúk jàan)<br>This house doesn't have<br>all kinds of furniture. |
| 2. | phôm <u>dâj</u> nânsýy <u>khróp</u><br>thúk lêm lésu<br>I've got all the books<br>(in a series, etc.) | phôm <u>dâj</u> nânsýy <u>jan</u> <u>mâj</u> <u>khróp</u><br>(thúk lêm)<br>I haven't got all the<br>books yet.             |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

3. phǒm tòop khamthǎam khróp  
thúk khôo  
I answered every single  
question.

phǒm tòop khamthǎam mâj khróp  
thúk khôo  
I didn't answer all the  
questions.

4. phǒm dâj nən khróp lěəw  
I've already got all  
the money.

phǒm dâj nən jan mâj khróp  
I haven't got all the  
money yet.

5. phǒm thamnaan (dâj) khróp  
nỳn pii lěəw  
I've already worked  
for one year.

phǒm thamnaan jan mâj khróp  
(nỳn) pii  
I haven't been working  
quite a year yet.

### g) Sentence Expansion Drill

#### Pattern 1

1. kháw tittān khr̥yānp̥ràpaakaat  
hâj frii

They installed the air  
conditioner free.

2. kháw hâj raw thaān frii

They let us eat free.

#### Pattern 2

kháw tittān khr̥yānp̥ràpaakaat  
hâj frii. kháw mâj khít  
khâatittān

They installed the air  
conditioner free. They  
didn't charge for installa-  
tion.

kháw hâj raw thaān frii  
kháw mâj khít { khâa aahān  
                  { thaān

They let us eat free.  
They didn't charge for  
the food.





## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |                               |   |  |
|-------------------------------|---|--|
| 4. wancan thîi<br>ca thỷn níi | kháw ca jáaj maa jùu<br>mýaraj<br>When will be move in? | wancan thîi ca<br>thỷnníi<br>Monday of next<br>week. |
| 5. lik 4 wan                  | kháw ca jáaj maa jùu<br>mýaraj<br>When will he move in? | lik 4 wan khráp<br><br>In 4 days.                    |
| 6. wansùk nâa                 | kháw ca jáaj maa jùu<br>mýaraj<br>When will he move in? | wansùk nâa<br><br>Next Friday.                       |
| 7. pii nâa                    | kháw ca jáaj maa jùu<br>mýaraj<br>When will be move in? | pii nâa<br><br>Next year.                            |

### 1) Substitution Drill

#### Cue

#### Pattern

- |             |  |
|-------------|--|
|             | khỏo prýksăa <u>phanrajaa</u> phỏm kỏon<br>I'd like to talk it over with my wife first.    |
| 1. naaj     | khỏo prýksăa <u>naaj</u> phỏm kỏon<br>I'd like to talk it over with my boss first.         |
| 2. khruu    | khỏo prýksăa <u>khruu</u> phỏm kỏon<br>I'd like to talk it over with my teacher first.     |
| 3. phýan    | khỏo prýksăa <u>phýan</u> phỏm kỏon<br>I'd like to talk it over with my friend first.      |
| 4. lủuksăaw | khỏo prýksăa <u>lủuksăaw</u> phỏm kỏon<br>I'd like to talk it over with my daughter first. |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

5. nóŋchaaŋ khǎo prǎksǎa nóŋchaaŋ phǒm kòon

I'd like to talk it over with my younger brother first.

- j) Response Drill (Listen to the description of the situation and answer the questions.)

<u>Situation</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. khun còon kàp khun cim chǎw bǎan jùu dǔaŋkan. khǎw sǎa khǎachǎw dyan la 4000 bàat. khun còon òok 2000 bàat. khun cim òok kǐi bàat	sǒŋ phan bàat
2. phǎan 2 khon khǎwhǎn <sup>1</sup> kan sýy rǒtjon rakhaa 80,000 bàat. khon nyn òok 10,000 bàat. ìik khon nyn ca òok kǐi bàat	cèt mýyn bàat
3. khun A kàp khun B paj kin aahǎan klaanwan dǔaŋkan. thǎn 2 khon kin aahǎan 50 bàat. khun B mi nǎn hǎj khun A 20 bàat thǎwnán khun A ca tǒn òok ìik kǐi bàat	sǎamsǐp bàat
4. phanraja a chuan sǎami paj sýy sýa hǎj lǔuk. raakhaa tua la sǎam sǐp bàat tǎe phanraja a mi nǎn hǎa bàat thǎwnán phanraja a ca hǎj sǎami òok thǎwra j	jǐisǐp hǎa bàat
5. khun prasǐt kàp khun prasàat paj lǎn boolǐn, keem la sǐp bàat, 6 keem thǎnmòt 60 bàat. thǎn sǒŋ khon ca òok nǎn khon la kǐi bàat	sǎamsǐp bàat

---

1. khǎw hǎn means 'to team up' or 'to go into partnership'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

6. phŷan sŷi khon nŷn rŷt paj thŷaw tŷanŷanwŷt  
sŷa khŷa nŷmman rŷt 76 bŷat  
thŷn sŷi khon tŷn òk nŷn khon la kŷi bŷat . sŷpkŷaw bŷat

### 34.4 EXERCISES

- a) One student asks another what he pays in rent. When the second responds, he asks him what is included in the price. If some things are not included, he is asked how much they cost. If someone is sharing an apartment or house with another, he is asked how much each pays.
- b) One student asks another if he is renting a furnished house or apartment. If he is, the first asks him what is furnished. The second gives him a list.
- c) One student asks another (1) how many times a month and (2) on what day he must pay the bill for gas, electricity, water, rent, and gas.
- d) One student asks another when he moved into his present apartment or house and when he will move out.

### 34.5 VOCABULARY

òk (nŷn)	to put up the money for, to pay for, to stand good for
boolŷn	bowling
bŷŷriween	compound, area, grounds (around a building), vicinity
cŷaj (nŷn)	pay (refers to the actual expenditure of funds on a specific occasion)
chút rŷpkhŷesk (chút)	living room furniture
chút thaankhŷaw (chút)	a dining set

# THAI BASIC COURSE

chiaw	really, very, indeed (When it occurs after a quantitative expression, it indicates that the speaker thinks the quantity referred to is larger than he expected.)
dænthaaŋ	to travel
frii	to be free (no cost)
jáaj { <sup>maa</sup> paj (+ jùu)	to move (in)
kwâaŋ	to be broad, wide
kwâaŋ khwǎaŋ	to be wide, to be large, to be roomy
keem (keem)	game (sports)
khâajùu	lodging
khâakéss	gas bill
khâalâwrian	tuition
khâarót	carfare
khâatittân	installation fee
khàat (tèss)	to be lacking, missing
khâw hûn	to team up, to go into partnership
khrop	to be complete (in quantity) to include all the members of a limited set of items
khryaŋ pràpaakàat (khryaŋ)	air conditioning
khryaŋryan (chút)	furniture
lót	to reduce (the price), to lower, discount
lûaŋnâa	in advance
phátlom	electric fan
phróom	to be ready, set, completed
phûuchâw (khon)	tenant
prasàat	Prasat, male first name

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

prỳksǎa	to talk it over, consult
ruam	include, to combine, add, add up, sum up
sǎnjaachâw (baj)	a lease
sùtháaj	last, final
sǎa (khâa)	to pay for something (a bill, etc.)
tawkées	a gas stove
tittân	to install
tòklon	to agree (to something)
tûu	chests of drawers, cabinets, (book) cases, wardrobe
tûujen (tûu)	a refrigerator

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### LESSON THIRTY-FIVE

#### 35.0 REVIEW DIALOG:

- A: khun dâj bâanchâw rýjan khráp      Have you found a house to rent yet?
- B: kamlan hăa jùu khráp      I'm still looking.  
khun rúucàk khraj thîi mii      Do you know anyone who  
bâan hâj châw bâan máj khráp      has a house to rent?
- A: phôm mii jâat khon nyn      I have a relative.  
kháw bòok phôm wâa kháw mii      He told me he had a house  
bâan hâj châw      house to rent.
- B: jùu thîinăj khráp      Where?
- A: jùu thîi thanôn phahônjoothin      On Phaholyothin Lane 12.  
sooj thîi 12  
pen bâan klaan kàw klaanmăj.      It's not old but it's  
mii khrua bèep samăj màj,      not new.  
roonrót léswkô ryan khoncháj      With a modern kitchen,  
a carport, and servants' quarters.
- B: mii kii hônnoon khráp      How many bedrooms are there?
- A: săam hônnoon, mii hônnám      Three (and) there are  
2 hôn      2 bathrooms.
- B: soojnán thanôn pen janraj      What's the road like  
bâan khráp      in that 'soi'?
- A: dii khráp.nám, faj kô      Good. The water and  
saduak, thoorasàp kô mii      electricity are good.  
There are also telephones  
(in that area).

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

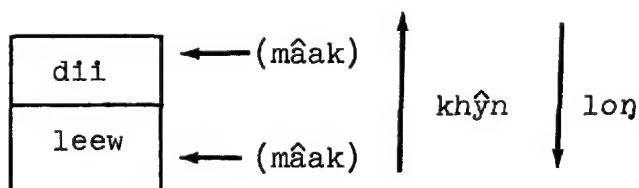
- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>B: kháw khít khâachâw janŋaj<br/>khráp</p>   | <p>What does he charge<br/>for rent?</p>   |
| <p>A: dyan la sîi phan hâa, māj<br/>ruam khâa náam, khâa faj,<br/>khâa thoorasàp lé khâa késs<br/>phûu chaw tōŋ sǎa een</p> | <p>4,500 per month not<br/>including water,<br/>electricity, telephone,<br/>and gas.<br/><br/>The tenant has to pay<br/>those himself.</p>       |
| <p>B: sîi phan hâa, māj lôt lœj<br/>rǎkhráp</p>   | <p>4500! Any discount at<br/>all?</p>  |
| <p>A: kháw bòok phǎm wâa lôt dâj<br/>bâan nítnòj<br/>thâa khun sǎncāj, phǎm ca<br/>thǎam hāj</p>                            | <p>He told me he could<br/>come down a little.<br/><br/>If you're interested,<br/>I'll ask him for you.</p>                                      |
| <p>B: khòopkhun mâak khráp<br/>khun chûaj tittò hāj<br/>dûaj nakhráp<br/>dǎawníi bâan dii dii hǎa<br/>jàak lýakæen</p>      | <p>Thank you very much.<br/><br/>Please inquire about<br/>it for me.<br/><br/>Nowadays it's extremely<br/>difficult to find good<br/>houses.</p> |
| <p>A: khráp, phró bâan mii nòj<br/>lé mii khon tōŋkaan chaw<br/>mâak khŷn<br/>khâachâw lœj phœŋ khŷn<br/>thúk wan</p>       | <p>Yes, there are few houses<br/>and more and more people<br/>needing them.<br/><br/>As a result, rents are<br/>getting higher everyday.</p>     |



## THAI BASIC COURSE

### 35.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) A large number of stative verbs may be grouped together as binary sets with opposite meanings, such as dii: leew 'good:bad', etc. If a model like the following is drawn with ascending and descending degrees of 'goodness' and 'badness', it will be observed that the change from one to the other is a gradual thing: (i.e. passing through an infinite number of gradations):



Going from leew towards dii would be going up (khÿn) and going the opposite direction would be going down (lon).

In this situation dii khÿn 'getting better' indicates that a change is taking place and the direction of the change is towards 'goodness' (upwards). It does not tell us what the situation was (how good or how bad) when the change began or how far it has progressed. A similar situation in reverse is pictured in leew lon 'getting worse'.

It would be incorrect to read some deep philosophic meaning into the fact that one stative verb occurs with khÿn and its opposite with lon. It is no more significant than the fact that some adjectives occur with 'more' and some with '-er' in the comparative in English. In the following list of binary sets the first member occurs with khÿn; the second with lon:

kèn: jêɛ 'competent: very bad', rew: cháa 'fast: slow', phɛɛn: thùuk 'expensive: cheap', sa-àat: sòkkapròk 'clean: dirty', rón: nǎaw 'hot: cold', mâak: nóoj 'much, many: little, few', sabaaj: lambàak 'having an easy time: having a hard time', ruaaj: con 'rich: poor', nàk: baw 'heavy: light', too, jàj: lék

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

'tall, big: small', jaaw: sân 'long: short', ũan:  
phǒm 'fat: thin', jâak: nâaj 'hard: easy', sǔn:  
tîa 'tall: short (of persons)' khěen: òn 'hard: soft'.

- b) Stative verbs like thùuk, con, etc. that usually occur with lon may occur with khÿn to indicate an intensification of a situation already in existence. Observe the difference in meaning between con lon and con khÿn in the following examples:

<u>Situation</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. kháw khəej ruaj dǎawníi kháw mii nœen nǒoj lon He used to be rich. Now he has less money.	kháw con <u>lon</u> He's getting poorer.
2. kháw con jùu léew dǎawníi kháw con mâak kwàa tèe kòon He was poor already. Now he's poorer than before.	kháw con <u>khÿn</u> He's getting even poorer.

### 35.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
	<u>khâachâwbâan</u> phsej khÿn	Rents are going up.
1. aahǎan	<u>aahǎan</u> phsej khÿn	Food is getting more expensive.
2. dii	aahǎan <u>dii</u> khÿn	The food is getting better.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

3. aakàat	<u>aakàat</u> dīi khỳn	The weather is getting better.
4. rón	aakàat <u>rón</u> khỳn	The weather is getting hotter.
5. sabaaj	aakàat <u>sabaaj</u> khỳn	The weather is getting more comfortable.
6. phǒm	<u>phǒm</u> sabaaj khỳn	I feel better.
7. kháw	<u>kháw</u> sabaaj khỳn	He feels better.
8. kèn	kháw <u>kèn</u> khỳn	He is getting more skillful.
9. dīi	kháw <u>dīi</u> khỳn	He is improving.
10. phaasǎa thaj phǒm	<u>phaasǎa thaj</u> <u>phǒm</u> dīi khỳn	My Thai is improving.
11. roonrian khǒon raw	<u>roonrian khǒon</u> <u>raw</u> dīi khỳn	Our school is improving.
12. jàj	roonrian khǒon raw <u>jàj</u> khỳn	Our school is getting bigger.
13. suǎj	roonrian khǒon raw <u>suǎj</u> khỳn	Our school is getting more beautiful.
14. phûujǐn khonnán	<u>phûujǐn khonnán</u> sǔaj khỳn	That lady is getting more beautiful.
15. dīi	phûujǐn khonnán <u>dīi</u> khỳn	That lady is getting better.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |     |                                   |  |   |
|-----|-----------------------------------|--|---|
| 16. | phǒm rúucàk<br>kháw               | phǒm <u>rúucàk</u> <u>kháw</u><br>dii khỳn                     | I'm getting to know<br>him better and better.     |
| 17. | phǒm phûut<br>phaasǎa thaj<br>dâj | phǒm <u>phûut</u><br><u>phaasǎathaj</u> <u>dâj</u><br>dii khỳn | My ability to speak<br>Thai is improving.         |
| 18. | rew                               | phǒm phûut<br>phaasǎathaj dâj<br><u>rew</u> khỳn               | The rate at which I<br>speak Thai is going<br>up. |
| 19. | phǒm khàp rôt                     | phǒm <u>khàp</u> <u>rôt</u> rew<br>khỳn                        | I drive faster (than<br>previously).              |
| 20. | phǒm<br>thamnaan                  | phǒm <u>thamnaan</u> rew<br>khỳn                               | I work faster (than<br>previously).               |

### b) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
	<u>khâachâwbân</u> thùuk lon	The rent is going down.
1. khǒon	<u>khǒon</u> thùuk lon	Things are getting cheaper.
2. rôt	<u>rôt</u> thùuk lon	Cars are getting cheaper.
3. cháa	rôt <u>cháa</u> lon	The car is slowing down.
4. kháw khàp rôt	<u>kháw</u> <u>khàp</u> <u>rôt</u> cháa lon	He reduced the car's speed.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |    |              |                                    |                                 |
|----|--------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 5. | jêe          | kháw khàp rót <u>jêe</u> lon.      | His driving is getting worse.   |
| 6. | roonrian nán | <u>roonrian</u> <u>nán</u> jêe lon | That school is getting worse.   |
| 7. | lék          | roonrian nán <u>lék</u> lon        | That school is getting smaller. |

### c) Substitution Drill

#### Cue

#### Pattern

- |                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
|                                   | <p>dǎawnfǐ, <u>mii</u> <u>khon</u> <u>tônkaan</u> <u>châw</u> <u>bâan</u> mâak khÿn</p> <p>At present, there is an increasing demand for houses.</p> |
| 1. raw mii khruu                  | <p>dǎawnfǐ, <u>raw</u> <u>mii</u> <u>khruu</u> mâak khÿn</p> <p>At present, we have more and more teachers.</p>                                      |
| 2. phǎm cháj nən                  | <p>dǎawnfǐ, <u>phǎm</u> <u>cháj</u> <u>nən</u> mâak khÿn</p> <p>At present, I spend more and more money.</p>   |
| 3. phǎm mii nən                   | <p>dǎawnfǐ <u>phǎm</u> <u>mii</u> <u>nən</u> mâak khÿn</p> <p>At present I have more and more money.</p>   |
| 4. phǎm phûut<br>phaasǎa thaj dâj | <p>dǎawnfǐ, <u>phǎm</u> <u>phûut</u> <u>phaasǎa</u> <u>thaj</u> <u>dâj</u> mâak khÿn</p> <p>At present I can speak more and more.</p>                |
| 5. phǎm tôn sýy<br>aahǎan         | <p>dǎawnfǐ, <u>phǎm</u> <u>tôn</u> <u>sýy</u> <u>aahǎan</u> mâak khÿn</p> <p>At present I have to buy more and more food.</p>                        |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

6. phǎm thamṇaan      dǎawníi, phǎm thamṇaan mâak khǎn  
At present I work more and more.

d) Progressive Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

- dǎawníi, raw mii nákrian nóoj lon  
At present we have fewer students.
1. khruu      dǎawníi raw mii khruu nóoj lon.  
At present we have fewer teachers.
2. cǎwnâathîi kèn kèn      dǎawníi, raw mii cǎwnâathîi kèn kèn nóoj lon  
At present, we have a smaller number  
of competent staff.
3. mǎo diidii      dǎawníi, raw mii mǎo dii dii nóoj lon  
At present we have a lower number  
of good doctors.
4. ṇaan tham      dǎawníi, raw mii ṇaan tham nóoj lon  
At present we have less work to do.
5. ṇen      dǎawníi, raw mii ṇen nóoj lon  
At present we have less money.
6. dâj      dǎawníi, raw dâj ṇen nóoj lon  
At present we earn less money.
7. cháj      dǎawníi, raw cháj ṇen nóoj lon  
At present we spend less money.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

8. sýy khǎon dǎawníi, raw sýy khǎon nóoj lon

At present we shop less

9. thaen dǎawníi, raw thaen nóoj lon

At present we eat less.

e) Transformation Drill /khǎn/ and /lon/

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern 1 and 2</u>	<u>Pattern 3</u>
1. wanníi	<p>mýawaanníi khǎw mâj sabaaj  wanníi khǎw sabaaj  Yesterday he was not well.  Today he is all right.</p>	<p>wanníi (khǎw) sabaaj  khǎn  Today he feels  better.</p>
2. dǎawníi	<p>myakǎonnníi khǎw mâj khǎwcaj  khon thaj  dǎawníi khǎw khǎwcaj  khon thaj dii  Before this, he didn't  understand the Thais.  Now, he understands  the Thais well.</p>	<p>dǎawníi, khǎw khǎwcaj  khon thaj dii khǎn  Now, he understands  the Thais better.</p>
3. dǎawníi	<p>mýakǎonnníi mii khon phûut  phaasǎa ankrít dâj nóoj  dǎawníi, mii khon phûut  phaasǎa ankrít dâj mâak  Formerly, there were a  few people who could  speak English.  Now, there are many  people who can speak  English.</p>	<p>dǎawníi, mii khon phûut  phaasaa ankrít dâj mâak  khǎn  Now, there are more  and more people who  can speak English.</p>

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>4. dyanníi m̄adyankòon khâafaj sǎon<br/> rǎoj bàat<br/> dyanníi khâa faj rǎoj<br/> hâasíp bàat</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">Last month, the light bill<br/> was two hundred baht.<br/> This month, the light bill<br/> was 150 baht.</p>                                 | <p>dyanníi, khâafaj<br/> thùuk lon</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">This month the light<br/> bill has gone down.</p>                                      |
| <p>5. dǎawníi m̄yakòonníi, krunthêep mii<br/> khloon mâak<br/> dǎawníi, krunthêep mii<br/> khloon nǎoj</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">In the old days, there were<br/> many canals in Bangkok.<br/> Nowadays, there are few<br/> canals in Bangkok.</p>                       | <p>dǎawníi, krunthêep mii<br/> khloon nǎoj lon</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">Nowadays there are<br/> fewer canals in Bangkok.</p>                       |
| <p>6. dǎawníi m̄yakòonníi mii khon paj<br/> thīaw thīinân mâak<br/> dǎaw níi mii khon paj<br/> thīaw thīinân nǎoj</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">Formerly, there were many<br/> people visiting that place.<br/> Nowadays, there are few<br/> people visiting that place.</p> | <p>dǎawníi, mii khon paj<br/> thīaw thīinân nǎoj lon</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">Nowadays there are<br/> fewer people visit-<br/> ing that place.</p> |
| <p>7. dǎawníi m̄yakòonníi, bâannán màj<br/> dǎawníi bâan nán kàw</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">That house was new.<br/> Now that house is old.</p>   | <p>(dǎawníi) bâannán kàw<br/> lon</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">That house has gotten<br/> older.</p>   |



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |     |         |   |  |
|-----|---------|---|--|
| 8.  | dĭawníi | mĭyakòon níi, bâanchâw<br>hăa māj jāak<br>dĭawníi, bâanchâw hăa<br>jāak<br>Formerly it was not<br>difficult to find a<br>house.<br>At present it is<br>difficult to find<br>a house.  | dĭawníi, bâanchâw hăa<br>jāak khĭn<br>At present it is in-<br>creasingly difficult<br>to find a house.                             |
| 9.  | dĭaw    | mĭyakòon níi, thĕwníi<br>māj saduak<br>dĭawníi, thĕwníi saduak<br>Formerly this area wa<br>was inconvenient.<br>At present this area<br>is convenient.  | dĭaw níi, thĕwníi saduak<br>khĭn<br>At present this area<br>is more convenient.  |
| 10. | dĭawníi | mĭyakòon níi, khon thĭi<br>còp mahăawítthajaalaj<br>mii nóoj<br>dĭawníi, khon thĭi còp<br>mahăawítthajaalaj mii<br>mâak<br>Formerly there were<br>few university<br>graduates.<br>At present there are<br>a lot of university<br>graduates. | dĭawníi, khon thĭi còp<br>mahăawítthajaalaj mii<br>mâak khĭn<br>At present the number<br>of university graduates<br>is increasing. |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- f) Transformation Drill (Form sentences with the cue words and khÿn or kwàa as indicated by the situation.)

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern 1 and 2</u>	<u>Cue</u>	<u>Resultant Pattern</u>
1. a. rón hot	1. mÿa waanníi aakàat rón  2. wanníi aakàat rón mâak Yesterday, it was hot. Today, it is very hot.	wanníi	wanníi aakàat rón <u>khÿn</u> Today it's hotter.
b. wanníi mÿawaanníi Today Yesterday		wanníi	wanníi aakàat rón <u>kwàa</u> mÿawaanníi Today, the weather is hotter than yesterday.
2. a. phɛɛŋ expensive	1. mÿakòonníi khâachâw bâan dyan la 2000 bàat  2. dÿawníi khâachâwbâan dyan la 4000 bàat Formerly, the rent was 2,000 baht a month. Today, the rent is 2,000 baht a month.	dÿawníi	dÿawníi khâachâwbâan phɛɛŋ <u>khÿn</u> Today the rent is more expensive.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |   |  |
|---|---|--|
| <p>b. thùuk<br/>cheap</p>                               | <p>1. khâachâwbâan dǎawníi<br/>mǎa kòonníi</p> <p>2. khâachâwbâan<br/>dǎawníi</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">the rent in<br/>those days</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">the rent<br/>today</p>   | <p>dǎawníi khâachâwbâan<br/>phɛɛŋ <u>kwàa</u> mǎakòonníi</p> <p>Today the rent is<br/>cheaper than in<br/>those days.</p>      |
| <p>3. a. nâajùu<br/>nice (to<br/>live)</p>              | <p>1. mǎakòonníi dǎawníi<br/>thěwníi mǎj<br/>nâajùu</p> <p>2. dǎawníi, thěwníi<br/>nâajùu</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Formerly, this<br/>area was not<br/>nice to live in.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Today, this area<br/>is nice to live<br/>in.</p> | <p>dǎawníi, thěwníi<br/>nâajùu <u>khŷn</u></p> <p>Today, this area<br/>is nicer to live<br/>in.</p>                            |
| <p>b. mǎakòonníi<br/>dǎawníi<br/>formerly<br/>today</p> | <p>dǎawníi</p>  | <p>dǎawníi, thěwníi<br/>nâajùu (khŷn)<br/><u>kwàa</u> mǎakòon</p> <p>Today, this area<br/>is nicer than in<br/>those days.</p> |
| <p>4. a. dii<br/>good</p>                               | <p>1. mǎakòonníi, dǎawníi<br/>thanǒn mǎj dii</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Formerly the road<br/>was bad.</p>  | <p>dǎawníi, thanǒn<br/>dii <u>khŷn</u></p>   |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

2. dǎawnǐi, thanǎn

dii

At present the  
road is good.

b. mǎakǎnnǐi  
dǎawnǐi  
formerly,  
now

dǎawnǐi

dǎawnǐi, thanǎn  
dii (khǎn) kwàa  
mǎakǎnnǐi

Now the road is  
better than  
formerly

5. a. mii mâak  
there are  
a lot

1. mǎakǎnnǐi, dǎawnǐi  
thǎinnǐi mii faràṇ nǎoj

2. dǎawnǐi, thǎinnǐi  
mii faràṇ mâak

Formerly there  
were few  
Westerners here.

Now there are a  
lot of Westerners  
here.

dǎawnǐi, thǎinnǐi  
mii faràṇ mâak  
khǎn

Now, there are  
more Westerners  
here.

b. mǎakǎnnǐi,  
dǎawnǐi

dǎawnǐi

dǎawnǐi, thǎinnǐi  
mii faràṇ mâak  
(khǎn) kwàa  
mǎakǎnnǐi

There are more  
Westerners now  
than those days.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### g) Sentence Formation Drill

Using the information given in the cue sentences form sentences with lon or khyn so as to illustrate the type of change underway.

#### Cue sentences

#### Pattern

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. a. kháw khəej ruaj<br>dǎawníi kháw mii<br>nən nóoj lon<br>He used to be rich.<br>Now he has less money.                                       | kháw con <u>lon</u><br><br><br>He's getting poorer.                    |
| b. kháw con jùu lěew<br>dǎawníi kháw con mâak kwàa<br>tèe kòon<br>He was poor.<br>Now he is poorer than<br>he was before.                        | kháw con <u>khyn</u><br><br><br>He's getting even poorer.              |
| 2. a. khǒon khəej phəen<br>dǎawníi khǒon mii<br>raakhaa nóoj lon<br>Things used to be<br>expensive.<br>Now the price of things<br>is going down. | khǒon thùuk <u>lon</u><br><br><br>Things are getting<br>cheaper.       |
| b. khǒon thùuk jùu lěew<br>dǎawníi thùuk kwàa<br>tèe kòon<br>Things were already<br>cheap.<br>Now things are cheaper<br>than before.             | khǒon thùuk <u>khyn</u><br><br><br>Things are getting<br>even cheaper. |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

3. a. kháw khəej pen khon dii      kháw leew lon  
       dǎawnfǐ kháw māj dii  
       He used to be a good  
       person.  
       Now he isn't good.      He's turning bad.
- b. kháw pen khon māj dii      kháw leew khŷn  
       dǎawnfǐ kháw māj dii māk  
       kwàa kàw  
       He wasn't a good person.      He's getting even worse.  
       Now he's worse than  
       formerly.
4. a. aakàat khəej rǒon      aakàat nǎaw lon  
       dǎawnfǐ aakàat plān pen nǎaw  
       The weather was hot.      It's getting colder.  
       Now it has turned cold.
- b. mŷawaannfǐ aakàat nǎaw  
       wannfǐ aakàat nǎaw kwàa      aakàat nǎaw khŷn  
       mŷawaannfǐ  
       Yesterday it was cold.  
       Today it's colder than it      The weather's becoming  
       was yesterday.      even colder.
5. a. phŭujŭn khonnán khəej      kháw phǒm lon  
       uān māk  
       dǎawnfǐ kháw lót námnaek  
       dāj māk  
       That woman used to  
       be fat.  
       Now she has lost a lot      She's getting thinner.  
       of weight.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- b. kháw pen khon phǎm                      kháw phǎm khŷn  
mŷawaanníi phǎm phóp kháw  
kháw phǎm mâak kwàa dǎem  
She was a thin person.  
Yesterday I met her.  
She was much thinner than  
before.                      She's getting even thinner.
6. a. khun sǒmsàk khǎej sabaaj                      kháw lambàak lon  
dŷawníi kháw tǎn tham  
naan mâak  
Somsak used to have it  
easy.  
Now he has a lot of  
work to do.                      It's getting harder  
for him.
- b. khun sǒmsàk lambàak jùu léew                      kháw lambàak khŷn  
dŷawníi kháw tǎn tham naan  
nák mâak kwàa kǎon  
Somsak was already having  
a hard time.  
Now he has to work harder  
than before.                      It's getting even harder  
for him.

35.3 BASIC EPISODE

khun coon wájt pen khâarâatchakaan krasuan tãanprathêet  
thîi sathãanthûut ameerikan. weelaanîi kháw pháak jùu thîi  
roonreem raamâa. kháw hãa bãanchâw maa lãaj wan léew.

kháw mâj jàak jùu apháatmênt phró kháw chôop jùu bãan mâak  
kwàa. kháw jàak dâj bãan jàjjàj phró khrôopkhrua khôonkháw  
mii dûajkan hãa khon, khyy khun coon, phanrajae lé lûuk 3  
khon.

bãan diidii naj krunthêep hãa jâak lé khâachâw kô pheeng  
lýakœn. khun coon dâj khâachâwbãan dyan la 5000 bàat, tœ  
bãan thîi kháw paj duu wáj khâachâw jàan tám dyan la hãa  
phan hãa. dîawnîi , krunthêep khâachâwbãan pheeng mâak phró  
mii khon tônkaan châw mâak khÿn.

wannîi pen wansăw, khun coon paj hãa naajnâa. naajnâa phaa  
kháw paj duu bãan lănnÿn thîi thanôn sùkhūmwít sooj thîi jîi  
síp cèt. bãannîi pen bãan klaanjàw klaanmàj. pen tÿk sôon chán.  
mii hōn sām hōn, hōnnám 2 hōn. mii hōn rápkhèek jàj,  
hōnaahãan lé hōnkhrua bèep than samăj. mii roonrót jùu tít  
kàp bãan. lăn bãan mii hōn kèp khôon lé ryan khoncháj.  
nâabãan mii sanăam kwâan.

câwkhôonbãan khít khâachâw dyan la hãa phan hãa róoj bàat  
tœ kháw lót hâj khun coon hãaróoj bàat. pen hãaphan bàat  
thûan. kháw hâj khun coon tham sãnjaachâw nÿn pii kàp càaj  
neen lûaŋnâa hâj kháw sãam dyan. khâachâw hãaphan bàat níi  
ruam thán khrÿanryan. kháw mii khrÿanryan phróm thúkjàan  
khàat tœ khrÿanpràpaakaat. sùan khâanám, khâafaj, khâathoorasàp,  
lé khâakées khun coon tôon sía œn. khun coon bòok câwkhôonbãan  
wãa kháw ca jáaj paj jùu bãan màj wanthîi nÿn dyan thanwaakhom.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### Translation of the Episode.

Mr. John White is a State Department official. He has just arrived in Thailand. He came to work at the American Embassy. At present, he is staying at the Rama Hotel. He has been looking for a house for many days. He doesn't want to live in an apartment because he prefers a house. He wants a big house because there are five persons in his family: John, his wife and three children.

Good houses are hard to find and the rent is too expensive. John gets 5000 Baht a month for his housing allowance, but the houses he has looked at are at least 5,500 Baht a month. Today rent in Bangkok is very high because there are more demands.

Today is Saturday. John goes to see a house agent. The house agent takes him to look at a house on Sukumvit Lane 27. This house is not too old, nor brand new. It is a two-story brick house with three bedrooms, and two bathrooms. There is a big living room, dining room and a modern kitchen. There is a carport adjoining the house. At the back of the house, there is a storage room and servants' quarter. There is a big lawn in front of the house.

The landlord charged 5,500 Baht a month for the rent but for John he came down to 5,000 Baht, which is 500 Baht exactly. He had John sign a lease for one year and pay him three months rent in advance. This 5000 Baht includes furniture. The house is completely furnished except for air conditioners. As for water, electricity, telephone and gas, John has to pay them himself. John told the landlord that he was going to move into the new house on December 1.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 35.4 QUESTIONS ON THE EPISODE

Answer the following questions according to the story given:

1. khun coon thamnaan araj  
What does John do (for a living)?
2. khaw maa juu myanthaj daj naan rýjan  
Has he been in Thailand long?
3. weelaanfi khaw phak juu thfinaj  
Where is he staying now?
4. thammaj khun coon ton haa baanchaw  
Why does he have to look for a house?
5. thammaj khun coon thyn maj jaak juu aphaatment  
Why doesn't he want to live in an apartment?
6. thammaj khun coon thyn tonkaan baan jajjaj  
Why does John need a rather large house?
7. thammaj khun coon thyn ton haa baanchaw juu laaj wan.  
Why did he have to spend many days looking for a home?
8. khun coon daj khaachawbaan maak phoo thi ca chaw baan  
dyan la haa phan haa rooj baat maj  
Does he get enough housing allowance to pay for  
the rent at 5,500 per month?
9. baan thi khun coon toklon chaw juu thfinaj  
Where is the house John agrees to rent?
10. baannan pen baan bespnaj  
What kind of house is it?  

(a) sdonchan ry chandiaw	Two or one-story?
(b) tyk ry maj	Masonry or wooden?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- (c) mii hōŋ araj bāaŋ                      What rooms are there?  
d (d) mii kīi hōŋnooŋ                      How many bedrooms?  
(e) pen bāanlэк rý bāanjàj                      A small or big house?  
(f) mii roonrót máj.jùu thfinǎj                      Any carport? Where?
11. cāwkhōŋbāaŋ khít khāachāw dyan la thāwràj  
How much does the landlord charge for the rent?
12. bāannán mii khrýaŋryan mǎj . mii araj bāaŋ.  
Is it furnished? What do they have for furniture?
- 13.. khāachāw hāaphán bàat nīi ruam thán khāanám khāafaj  
dūaj rýplāaw  
Does this 5,000 Baht rent include water and electricity?
14. khun cooŋ tham sǎnjaa chāw kīi pii  
How long a lease did John sign?
15. kháw tōŋ hāj ñen lūaŋnāa kīi dyan.  
How much deposit does he have to pay?
16. kháw ca jàaj paj jùu bāanmàj mýaraj  
When is the going to move into the new house?

### 35.5 EXERCISES

- a) Suppose one student is Mr. John White, another a house agent. Have the two students carry on a conversation based on the story given.
- b) Suppose one student is Mr. Smith, a bachelor, looking for a one bedroom apartment, another student is a landlord. Have them carry on a conversation using the sentences they have learned.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- c) Discuss situations that are in a state of flux whether getting better, worse, harder, etc. For example:
1. Someone is richer or poorer than he used to be.
  2. Some things are cheaper or more expensive than formerly.
  3. The weather is colder or hotter than it was 2 months ago or will be 3 months hence.
  4. Someone's relatives are much fatter or thinner than they were at some time in the past or will be at some time in the future.
- d) Compare various people or things in terms of physical size. For example:

phôo phôm sũun kwàa mêe l fút      'My father's a foot  
taller than my mother.'

### 35.6 VOCABULARY

òon	to be soft, tender
ûan	to be fat, stout
baw	to be light (in weight)
jàj	to be large, big, major, main
khěŋ	to be hard, firm, strong, stiff
klaaŋkàw klaaŋmàj	not old but not new
lambàak	to be hard, difficult, troublesome
leew	to be bad, poor (in quality); low (in character)
lŷakəən	too..., so...
mâak	to be much, many; a lot; very
năaw	to be colder (weather, person)
nàk	to be heavy; hard (of work); severely, very

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

ηâaj	to be simple, easy
phǎom	to be thin (not fat)
sa-àat	to be clean
sân	to be short (in length)
sòkkapròk	to be dirty
sǔun	to be high, tall
tîa	to be short, low (in height)
wájt	White (English name)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

### LESSON THIRTY-SIX

#### 36.0 BASIC DIALOG: Buying Clothing

khonkhǎaj:	sýy araj khá	What would you like to buy?
khon sýykhǎon:	khǎo chom phāa mǎj thaj nǎoj khráp	I'd like to look at some Thai silk.
khonkhǎaj:	tōnkaan phāa tāt sýa phūuchaaj rý phūujǐn khá	Do you want fabric for men or women's clothing?
khonsýykhǎon:	phāa tāt sýa kaankeen phūuchaaj	Fabric for men's pants.
khonkhǎaj:	nīi khá jàanńi raakhaa lǎa la 60 bàat jàanńán 80 lé jàanńoon rǎoj jǐisǐp	Here it is. This kind is 60 baht a yard. That kind is 80. And the kind over there, 120.
khonsýykhǎon:	sǎon jàan rēek nán tǎan kan jaŋŋaj khráp	What's the difference between the first two kinds?
khonkhǎaj:	nyaphāa mýankan khá tēs raakhaa mǎj thāwkan phró jàan pēsǐt sǐp bàat nāa kwāan kwāa	The texture is the same, but they are not equal in price. because the 80 baht one is wider.
khonkhǎaj:	pen phāa jàan dīi thǐisùt	It's the best kind.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

	nýanăa, thon mâak, lé măj khôoj jáp	It's heavy, very durable, and is wrinkle-resistant
khonsýykhôoj:	sák nám dăj măj khráp	Is it washable?
khonkhăaj:	dăj khà tè sák hêej dii kwàa	Yes, but it's better to have it dry cleaned.
khonsýykhôoj:	sák léew, hòt măj khráp	Once it's washed, does it shrink?
khonkhăaj:	nítnôoj khà	A little.

### 36.1 VOCABULARY NOTES

- a) jàan means 'kind, type (with emphasis on quality)'.

Observe the following example:

phăamăj mii lăaj jàan. mii jàan dii, jàan măj dii  
jàan thùuk , jàan phêej , jàan năakwăan jàan năakhêej

There are many kinds of Thai silk. There is  
the good kind and the bad kind, the cheap kind  
and the expensive kind, the wide kind, the  
narrow kind.

- b) chanít means 'kind' or 'type' with emphasis on special  
characteristics, such as 'being colorfast' (chanít  
sǐi măj tòk), or 'being made of wood' (chanít tham  
dŭaj maaj), or 'having long grains (as of rice)  
(chanít met jaaw), etc.

phăa mii lăaj chanít: mii phăamăj, phăafăaj, phăanajlôn  
lé ýynýyn

There are many kinds of cloth: silk, cotton,  
nylon, etc.

36.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) Types of Comparison

1. Equality.

thâw + kàp / kan 'equal, same in size or quantity'  
may occur (1) in construction with stative verbs,  
or (2) independently.

a) khǒɔŋ sǒɔŋ jàanǎi phɛɛŋ thâwkan

These two things are equally expensive.  
(with stative verb phɛɛŋ)

khâw phûut phaasǎathaj dâj dii thâw kàp khun

He speaks Thai as well as you do.  
(with stative verb dii)

b) Independently (as main verb in the sentence)

phâa sǒɔŋ jàanǎi raakhaa thâw kan

These two fabrics are of the same price.

bâan lǎnnán khâachâw thâw kàp bâan lǎnnǎi

The rent for that house is the same as for  
this one.

2. Inequality.

kwàa 'more (than), to a greater extent' occurs in  
construction with stative Verbs.

khâw khàp rôt rew kwàa phǒm.

He drives faster  
than I do.

ráannǎi dii kwàa ráannóon

This shop is better  
than that one.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

### 3. Equality and Inequality compared

a) phǒm chǎp khun thāw (thāw) kàp kháw

I like you as much as (I like) him.

phǒm chǎp khun thāw (thāw) kàp (thīi) kháw  
chǎp (khun)

I like you as much as he (likes you).

b) phǒm chǎp khun mâak kwàa kháw

I like you more than (I like) him.

phǒm chǎp khun mâak kwàa thīi kháw chǎp khun

I like you more than he (likes you).

### 4. Superlative.

thīisùt 'most, -est' occurs in construction with  
stative verbs.

nānsǔy lēmnlí díi thīisùt      This book is the best.

kháw pen nákrian thīi kèn      He is the best student  
thīisùt náj chán      in the class.

### b) Equational sentences.

phāa (jàan pèetslɔ̀p bàat) nāakwāan

Cloth (of the 80 baht kind.) (is) wide.

This type of sentence is called an equational sentence.  
It is very common in Thai. Other examples are:

phāaníi nāakhēp      This cloth is narrow.

bāan lǎnnán khāachāw phēn      The rent for that house  
is high.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

Formation of Noun Phrases derived from this type of sentence is also common.

phâa nâakwâaŋ

The wide material.

rót raakhaa phɛɛŋ

Expensive cars.

- c) NOUN PHRASE }  
 VERB PHRASE } + dii kwàa 'It's better to...'

dii kwàa may have either Noun Phrase or Verb Phrase as subject. Below are some examples with Verb Phrase as subject:

sákhɛɛŋ dii kwàa

It's better to dry  
clean (it).

(phǒm wâa, khun) jùu

(I think) it's better  
for (you) to stay home.

bâan dii kwàa

### 36.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

- a) Transformation Drill (Use jàaŋ with the stative verb  
and the noun to form a Noun Phrase.)

#### Cues

#### Noun Phrase

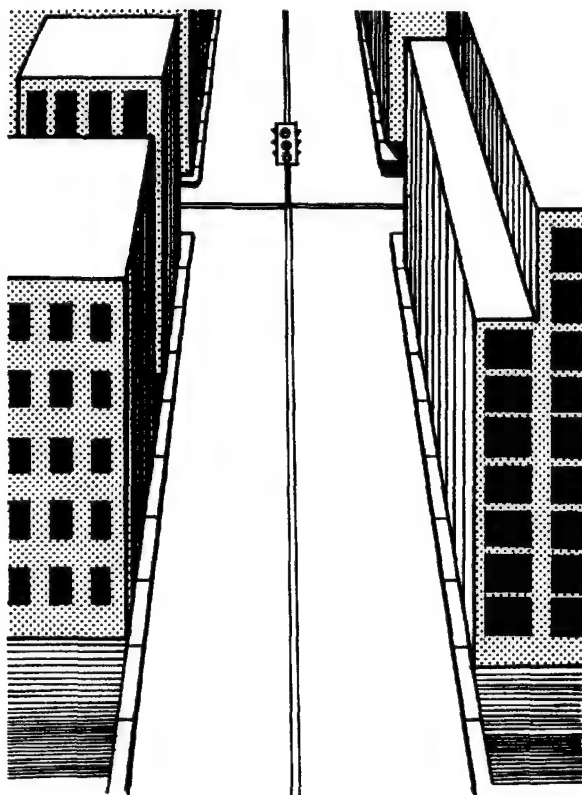
- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <u>dii</u> , <u>phâamǎj</u><br>good, silk cloth    | <u>phâamǎj</u> <u>jàaŋ</u> <u>dii</u><br>good quality silk cloth |
| 2. <u>phɛɛŋ</u> , <u>phátlom</u><br>expensive, fan    | <u>phátlom</u> <u>jàaŋ</u> <u>phɛɛŋ</u><br>Expensive fans.       |
| 3. <u>dii</u> , <u>tûujen</u><br>good, refrigerator   | <u>tûujen</u> <u>jàaŋ</u> <u>dii</u><br>Good refrigerators.      |
| 4. <u>thùuk</u> , <u>fəənitêe</u><br>cheap, furniture | <u>fəənitêe</u> <u>jàaŋ</u> <u>thùuk</u><br>Cheap furniture.     |



phâa níi nâakwâaŋ



phâa níi nâakhêp



thanŏn sǎaj níi kwâaŋ



thanŏn sǎaj níi khêp

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |                                  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| 5. phɛɛŋ, tó<br>expensive, table | tó jàaŋ phɛɛŋ<br>Expensive tables.     |
| 6. dīi, kâwīi<br>good, chair     | kâwīi jàaŋ dīi<br>Good quality chairs. |

### b) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	<u>phâamǎj</u> jàaŋnīi pen <u>phâamǎj</u> jàaŋ dīi thīisùt This kind of silk is the best kind (of silk).
1. phátlom	<u>phátlom</u> jàaŋnīi pen <u>phátlom</u> jàaŋ dīi thīisùt This kind of fan is the best kind of fan.
2. khrŷaŋ pràpaakàat	<u>khrŷaŋ pràpaakàat</u> jàaŋnīi pen <u>khrŷaŋ</u> <u>pràpaakàat</u> jàaŋ dīi thīisùt This kind of air conditioner is the best kind.
3. tūujen	<u>tūujen</u> jàaŋnīi pen <u>tūujen</u> jàaŋ dīi thīisùt This kind of refrigerator is the best kind.
4. khrŷaŋ khrua	<u>khrŷaŋ khrua</u> jàaŋnīi pen <u>khrŷaŋ khrua</u> <u>jàaŋ dīi thīisùt</u> This kind of kitchen utensil is the best kind.
5. fəənitêə	<u>fəənitêə</u> jàaŋnīi pen <u>fəənitêə</u> jàaŋ dīi <u>thīisùt</u> This kind of furniture is the best kind.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### c) Transformation Drill

Combine the sentences in patterns 1, 2, 3 with the cue to form the resultant pattern, then repeat the operation using a stative verb with opposite meaning (the second cue).

<u>Patterns 1, 2, 3</u>	<u>Cue</u>	<u>Resultant Pattern</u>
1. a. phâamǎj jàaṇṇíi mâj dii b. phâamǎj jàaṇṇán dii c. phâamǎj jàaṇṇóon dii mâak	<u>dii</u>	phâamǎj jàaṇṇóon dii thîisùt
	<u>leew</u>	phâamǎj jàaṇṇíi leew thîisùt
This kind of silk is not good.		The other kind of silk is the best.
That kind of silk is good.		
That other kind of silk is the best.		This kind of silk is the worst in quality.
2. a. samùt jàaṇṇíi mâj dii b. samùt jàaṇṇán dii c. samùt jàaṇṇóon dii mâak	<u>dii</u>	samùt jàaṇṇóon dii thîisùt
	<u>leew</u>	samùt jàaṇṇíi leew thîisùt
This notebook is not good.		The notebook over there is the best.
That notebook is good.		
The notebook over there is very good.		This notebook is the worst.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

3. a. aahǎan thǎinǎi phsɛŋ  
 b. aahǎan thǎinǎn phsɛŋ mâak  
 c. aahǎa thǎinôon phsɛŋ lǎa

phsɛŋ

aahǎan thǎinôon phsɛŋ  
 thǎisùt

thùuk

aahǎan thǎinǎi thùuk  
 thǎisùt

The food here is  
 expensive.

The food there is more  
 expensive.

The food over there is  
 very, very expensive.

The food over there  
 is the most expensive.

The food here is  
 the cheapest.

4. a. tỳk lǎnnǎi mǎj jàj  
 b. tỳk lǎnnán jàj  
 c. tỳk lǎnnóon jàj mâak

jàj

tỳk lǎnnóon jàj thǎisùt

lék

tỳk lǎnnǎi lék thǎisùt

This building is not  
 large.

That building is large.

The building over there  
 is very large.

The building over  
 there is the largest.

This building is  
 the smallest.

5. a. nánsǎyphim thaj mǎj nǎa  
 b. nánsǎyphim wanaathít nǎa  
 c. nánsǎyphim niw jóok nǎa  
 mâak

nǎa

nánsǎyphim niwjók  
 nǎa thǎisùt

baan

nánsǎyphim thaj baan  
 thǎisùt

Thai newspapers are  
 not thick.

The N.Y. paper is  
 the thickest.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

The Sunday paper is  
thick.

The N.Y. paper is very  
thick.

The Thai paper is  
the thinnest.

6. a. thanǎn carēenkrun māj kwāan

b. thanǎn phétburii kwāan

c. thanǎn mǐtraphāap kwāan  
māak

kwāan

thanǎn mǐtraphāap  
kwāan thǐisùt

khēep

thanǎn carēenkrun  
khēep thǐisùt

Charoen Krung is not  
wide.

Friendship Highway  
is the widest.

Phetburi Street is wide.

Friendship Highway is  
very wide.

Charoenkrung Street  
is the narrowest.

7. a. khun prasit rian māj kèn

b. khun prasāt rian kèn

c. khun prasǎn rian kèn māak

kèn

khun prasǎn rian kèn  
thǐisùt

jêe

khun prasit rian jêe  
thǐisùt

Prasit is not a good  
student.

Prasong is the  
best student.

Prasat is a good student.

Prasong is a very good  
student.

Prasit is the worst  
student.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

8. a. khâa rôtraan mâj phæn

b. khâa rôtmme phæn

c. khâa rót thésksîi phæn  
mâak

phæn

khâa rót thésksîi  
phæn thîisùt

thùuk

khâa rôtraan thùuk  
thîisùt

Street car fare is cheap.

Bus fare is expensive.

Taxi fare is very  
expensive.

Taxi fare is the  
most expensive.

Street car fare is  
the cheapest.

9. a. sukhôothaj khæj pen  
mýanlŭan mýa pii phoo  
sô 1800

b. ajuthajaa khæj pen  
mýanlŭan mýa pii  
phoo sô 1893.

c. krunthêep pen mýanlŭan  
mýa pii phoo sô 2325

kaw

sukhôothaj pen mýanlŭan  
kaw thîisùt

màj

krunthêep pen mýanlŭan  
màj thîisùt

Sukhothaj was the capitol  
up to B.E. 1800.

Ayuthaya was the capitol  
in B.E. 1893.

Bangkok is the capitol  
since B.E. 2325.

Suthoothai is the  
oldest capitol.

Bangkok is the  
newest capitol.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### d) Sentence Construction Drill

(Compose Questions using the  
cue words and thîisùt)

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. mahăawítthajaalaj, kàw, naj prathêet thaj	mahăawítthajaalaj araj pen mahăawítthajaalaj thîi kàw thîisùt naj prathêet thaj
university, to be old, in Thailand	What university is the old- est in Thailand?
2. caŋwàt, mii khonjùu mâak naj prathêet thaj	caŋwàt araj pen caŋwàt thîi mii khonjùu mâak thîisùt
Province. To have many people living in (it), in Thailand.	What province has the larg- est population in Thailand?
3. caŋwàt, jùu klaj càak krunthêep mâak	caŋwàt araj pen caŋwàt thîi jùu klaj càak krunthêep mâak thîisùt
Province. (Very) far from Bangkok	What province is the farth- est province from Bangkok?
4. nánsýyphim, mii khon àan mâak, naj prathêet thaj	nánsýyphim araj pen nánsýy phim thîi mii khon àan mâak thîisùt naj prathêet thaj
Newspaper, to have many readers. In Thailand	What newspaper has the larg- est number of readers in Thailand?
5. krasuan, jàj, naj prathêet thaj	krasuan araj pen krasuan thîi jàj thîisùt naj prathêet thaj
Ministry. Big. In Thailand	What ministry is the big- gest ministry in Thailand?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

6. prathêet, nâajùu  
naj lôok

Country. Nice to live  
in. In the world

prathêet araj năj pen  
prathêet thîi nâajùu  
thîisùt naj lôok

What country is the nicest  
country to live in this  
world?

e) Transformation Drill

(Change patterns 1 and 2  
into a sentence of comparison  
using the cue and thâw.)

<u>Pattern 1 and 2</u>	<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern 3</u>
1. phâa jàanán thùuk jàanóon phseŋ	raakhaa Price	phâa sŏŋ jàan nán  raakhaa mǎj thâwkan
That kind of fabric is cheap. That kind of fabric over there is expensive.		The prices of those two fabrics are not equal.
2. bâan lǎnnán khâachâw phseŋ lǎnnóon thùuk	khâachâw	bâan sŏŋ lǎn nán khâachâw mǎj thâwkan
The rent for that house is high. The rent for that house (over there) is cheap.		The rents for those two houses are not equal.
3. pàakkaa dâamnán thùuk dâamnîi phseŋ	raakhaa	pàakkaa sŏŋ dâam nán raakhaa mǎj thâwkan
That pen is cheap. This pen is expensive.		The prices of those two pens are not equal.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |  |   |
|---|--|---|
| <p>4.   phâa jàaṇṇoon nâakwâaṇ<br/>            phâa jàaṇṇán nâakhêeṇ</p>  | <p>     nâakwâaṇ<br/>            Width (of<br/>            the fabric)</p> | <p>     phâa sǒṇ jàaṇ nán<br/>            nâa kwâaṇ mâj<br/>            thâwkan.</p>  |
| <p>     That kind of fabric<br/>            (over there) is wide.<br/>            That fabric is narrow.</p>                  |  | <p>     Those two fabrics<br/>            are not equal in<br/>            width.</p> |
| <p>5.   khâw dâj khâachâw<br/>            bâan nǒṇj<br/>            phǒm dâj khâa<br/>            châwbâan mâak</p>           | <p>     khâa<br/>            châwbâan</p>                                  | <p>     raw dâj<br/>            khâachâwbâan<br/>            mâj thâwkan</p>          |
| <p>     He gets a small<br/>            housing allowance.<br/>            I get a big housing<br/>            allowance.</p> | <p>     Housing<br/>            allowance</p>                              | <p>     We get different sized<br/>            housing allowances.</p>                |

### f) Transformation Drill

- | <u>Pattern 1</u>   | <u>Cue</u>  | <u>Pattern 1</u>   |
|--|---|--|
| <p>1.   nâṇsýy sǒṇlêm níi<br/>            dii thâwkan</p>                                  | <p>     nâṇsýy lêmṇán<br/>            nâṇsýy lêmṇíi</p> | <p>     nâṇsýy lêmṇán dii<br/>            thâwkáp nâṇsýy<br/>            lêmṇíi</p>                    |
| <p>     These two books are<br/>            equally good.</p>                              |   | <p>     That book is as good<br/>            as this one.</p>  |
| <p>2.   phâa sǒṇ jàaṇṇán<br/>            raakhaa thâwkan</p>                               | <p>     phâa jàaṇṇán<br/>            phâa jàaṇṇíi</p>   | <p>     phâa jàaṇṇán<br/>            raakhaa thâw ka<br/>            jàaṇṇíi</p>                       |
| <p>     Those two kinds of<br/>            fabrics are equal<br/>            in price.</p> |   | <p>     The price of that<br/>            fabric is the same<br/>            as equal to this one.</p> |
| <p>3.   khǒṇ thîinân ka<br/>            thîiníi phæṇ thâwkan</p>                           | <p>     khǒṇ thîinân<br/>            khǒṇ thîiníi</p>   | <p>     khǒṇ thîinân phæṇ<br/>            thâw ka khǒṇ thîiníi</p>                                     |
| <p>     Things here and there<br/>            are equally expensive.</p>                   |   | <p>     Things there are as<br/>            expensive as things<br/>            here.</p>              |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

- |   |  |   |
|---|--|---|
| <p>4. phûujĩn sǒŋ khon nán<br/>suǎj thâwkan</p> <p>Those two girls are<br/>equally pretty.</p>  | <p>phûujĩn khonníi phûujĩn khonníi<br/>phûujĩn khonnán suǎj thâwkap<br/>phûujĩn khonnán</p> <p>This girl is as<br/>pretty as that one.</p> |   |
| <p>5. khun cǒn ka khun fréť<br/>rian kèn thâwkan</p> <p>John and Fred are<br/>equally good (students).</p>  | <p>khun cǒn khun fréť</p> <p>John is as good as<br/>Fred. (as a student)</p>   | <p>khun cǒn rian kèn<br/>thâw ka khun fréť</p>            |
| <p>6. bâan sǒŋ lǎn nán<br/>jàj thâw kan</p> <p>Those two houses are<br/>equally big.</p>  | <p>bâan lǎnnán<br/>bâan lǎnnóon</p> <p>That house is as big<br/>as the one over there.</p>   | <p>bâan lǎnnán jàj<br/>thâw ka bâan lǎnnóon</p>           |
| <p>7. kháw dâj nèn<br/>dyan la 2,000 bàat<br/>phanrajaa kháw dâj<br/>nèn dyan la 2000 bàat</p> <p>He makes 2,000 Baht<br/>a month. His wife makes<br/>2,000 Baht a month.</p> | <p>phan ra jaa<br/>kháw kháw</p> <p>His wife and he get<br/>the same salary.</p>   | <p>phan ra jaa kháw<br/>dâj nèn dyan<br/>thâw ka kháw</p> |

### g) Sentence Construction and Response Drill

(Form a question with one set of cues and  
answer it according to the second set.)

<u>CUE</u>	<u>QUESTION</u>	<u>CUE</u>	<u>RESPONSE</u>
Example			
rian phaasǎa thaj sanúk rian phaasǎa juan	rian phaasǎa thaj sanúk thâw ka rian phaasǎa juan máj khráp	No	máj thâw khráp No, it isn't.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

Studying Thai is Fun. Studying Vietnamese	Is studying Thai as fun as study- ing Vietnamese?	Yes	sanúk thâwkan khráp Yes, it is.
1. khǎon thîi wǎochintân phɛɛn khǎon thîi njujók	khǎon thîi wǎochintân phɛɛn thâw ka khǎon thîi njujók máj khráp	No	máj thâw khráp No, they aren't.
Things in Washington Expensive Things in New York	Are things in Washington as expensive as in New York?		
2. roonrian phaasǎa thîi montɛɛree jǎj éf és aj	roonrian phaasǎa thîi montɛɛree thâw ka éf és aj máj khráp	Yes	thâwkan khráp
The language school in Monterey. Big FSI	Is the language school in Monterey as big as FSI?		Yes, it is.
3. nákrían khonnán kèn nákrían khonnón	nákrían khonnán kèn thâw ka nákrían khonnón máj khráp	Yes	thâw kan khráp
That student good That student (there)	Is that student as good as that student over there?		Yes, he is.
4. jùu ameerikaa sabaaj jùu taanprathêet	jùu ameerikaa sabaaj thâw ka jùu taanprathêet máj khráp	No	máj thâw khráp
Living in America Easy Living abroad	Is living in America as easy as living abroad?		No, it isn't.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

5. aakàat thîi wóochintân róon (aakàat) thîi krunthêep	aakàat thîi wóochintân rón thâw kap thîi krunthêep májkráp	No	mâj thâw
The weather in Washington Hot. The weather in Bangkok	Is Washington as hot as Bangkok?		No, it isn't.

### h) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. thon máj	Is it durable?
jáp máj	Does it wrinkle?
năa máj	Is it thick?
mýan máj	Is it the same?
tàan kan máj	Is it different?
hót máj	Does it shrink?
2. sáknám dâj máj	Is it washable (in water)?
sákhêen dâj máj	Is it dry cleanable?
sák dâj máj	Is it washable?
rîit dâj máj	Can you iron it?

### 1) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>		<u>Response (negative)</u>
1. thon máj	mâj thon lœej	Not at all.
Is it durable?	mâj thon	No.
	mâj khôj thon	Not too durable.
	{ mâj (khôj) thon thâwràj	
	{ mâj (khôj) thon nák	Not very durable.
2. năa máj	mâj năa lœej	Not at all.
Is it thick?	mâj năa	No.
	mâj khôj năa	Not too thick.
	{ mâj (khôj) năa thâwràj	
	{ mâj năa nák	Not very thick.
3. dii máj	mâj dii lœej	Not at all.
Is it good?	mâj dii	No.
	mâj khôj dii	Not too good.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |                                |   |  |
|--------------------------------|---|--|
| 4. jáp máj<br>Does it wrinkle? | mâj jáp ləej<br>mâj jáp<br>mâj khôj jáp<br>mâj (khôj) jáp thâwràj<br>mâj jáp nâk        | Not at all.<br>No.<br>Hardly at all.<br>Not very much.<br>Not so much. |
| 5. mŷan máj<br>Is it the same? | mâj mŷan ləej<br>mâj mŷan<br>mâj khôj mŷan<br>{ mâj (khôj) mŷan thâwràj<br>mâj mŷan nâk | Not at all.<br>No.<br>Not really.<br>Not very much.                    |

### j) Substitution Drill

- | <u>Cue</u>                             | <u>Pattern</u>   |
|--|--|
|  | phâa jâan níi kajàanán tàan kan<br>jaŋŋaj khráp<br>What's the difference between this<br>fabric and that one?                    |
| 1. kham wâa 'sŷa' ka<br>kham wâa 'òok' | kham wâa sŷa ka kham wâa òok<br>tàan kan jaŋŋaj khráp<br>What's the difference between<br>the word 'sŷa' and 'òok'?              |
| 2. phaasăa isăan ka<br>phaasăa nŷa     | phaasăa isăan ka phaasăa nŷa<br>tàan kan jaŋŋaj khráp<br>What's the difference between<br>Northeastern and Northern<br>dialects? |
| 3. khwaamhên khôŋkhăw<br>ka khôŋ khun  | khwaamhên khôŋkhăw ka khôŋkhun<br>tàan kan jaŋŋaj khráp<br>What's the difference between<br>your opinion and his?                |
| 4. nânsŷy<br>sôŋlêm níi                | nânsŷy sôŋ lêm níi tàan kan<br>jaŋŋaj khráp<br>What's the difference between<br>these two books?                                 |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

5. khǒŋ sǒŋ jàaŋníi

khǒŋ sǒŋ jàaŋ níi tàaŋ kan  
jaŋŋaj khráp  
What's the difference between  
these two things?

### k) Substitution Drill

#### Cue

#### Pattern

1. sýy phâamǎj  
jàaŋníi

sák hēŋ dii kwàa  
It's better to dry clean  
sýy phâamǎj jàaŋníi dii kwàa  
It's better to buy this kind  
of silk.

2. duu nǎŋ ryâŋ nán

duu nǎŋ ryâŋnán dii kwàa  
It's better to go to see that  
movie.

3. pháŋk thîinân

pháŋk thîinân dii kwàa  
It's better to stay there.

4. tham râatchakaan dii kwàa

tham râatchakaan dii kwàa  
It's better to work for the  
government.

5. jùu thěwníi

jùu thěwníi dii kwàa  
It's better to live around  
here.

6. paj thaŋ aahǎan thaj

paj thaŋ aahǎan thaj dii kwàa  
It's better to go and have a  
Thai meal.

7. paj prajsaníiklaaŋ

paj prajsaníiklaaŋ dii kwàa  
It's better to go to the central  
post office.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 1) Expansion Drill

- |    |   |  |
|----|---|--|
| 1. | kwâaŋ<br>nâa kwâaŋ<br>phâa nâa kwâaŋ<br>phâa níi nâa kwâaŋ<br>phâa jàaŋ níi nâa kwâaŋ<br>phâa mǎj jàaŋ níi nâa<br>kwâaŋ                                 | Wide<br>The fabric is wide.<br>The wide fabric.<br>This fabric is wide.<br>This kind of fabric is wide.<br>This kind of silk is wide.  |
| 2. | kwâaŋ<br>kwâaŋ thâwràj<br>nâa kwâaŋ thâwràj<br><br>phâa nâa kwâaŋ thâwràj<br>phâa jàaŋnán nâa kwâaŋ<br>thâw ràj<br>phaamǎj jàaŋnán nâa<br>kwâaŋ thâwràj | Wide<br>How wide?<br>How wide is the straight grain<br>(of fabric).<br>How wide is the fabric?<br><br>How wide is that kind of fabric?<br><br>How wide is that kind of silk? |
| 3. | kwâaŋ<br>kwâaŋ sìisìp níw<br>nâa kwâaŋ sìisìp níw<br><br>phâa nâa kwâaŋ sìisìp<br>phâa mǎj jàaŋnán nâa<br>kwâaŋ sìisìp níw                              | Wide<br>Forty inches wide<br>The straight grain of fabric is<br>40" wide.<br>Forty inches wide fabric(s)<br><br>That kind of silk is forty<br>inches wide.                   |
| 4. | mǎj kwâaŋ<br>nâa mǎj kwâaŋ<br><br>phâa nâa nâj kwâaŋ<br>phaamǎj jàaŋnán nâa<br>mǎj kwâaŋ  | Not wide<br>The straight grain of fabric is<br>not wide.<br>The not very wide fabric(s)<br>That kind of silk is<br>not wide.   |

### 36.4 EXERCISES

#### a) Find out from the tutor

1. what kinds of cloth you can buy in Thailand,

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

2. where you can buy them (names of shops and locations),
  3. where and how silk is 'grown' in Thailand<sup>1</sup>,
  4. where and how it is woven and what kind of dye is used, and
  5. what the difference is between various kinds of fabrics sold in Thailand (in terms of whether they shrink, are washable, durable, etc.)
- b) Discuss the difference in quality and price between different objects.
- c) Discuss differences in climate in different countries.
- d) Find out from the tutor or another student what some of the "'superlatives'" in the world are; for example,
1. the most beautiful city,
  2. the hottest climate,
  3. the oldest city, etc.
- e) One student suggests various 'action options'. Other students disagree with his suggestions and suggest others that they consider better. Finally one student comes up with what he considers to be the best suggestion of all. Other students disagree or agree with the suggestion.

---

<sup>1</sup> nǎon 'worm'; thao (phâa) 'weave cloth'; jóom (phâa)  
'to dye cloth'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 36.5 VOCABULARY

baan	thin
chanít	kind, type (emphasis on type)
frét	Fred (name)
hòt	to shrink
jàan	kind, type (with emphasis on quality)
jàandii	good quality
jáp	to wrinkle
jóom (phâa)	to dye (cloth)
khêep	narrow
khwaamhên	opinion
kwâan	wide, to be broad
lăa	yard (36'')
mâjkhôoj	scarcely, hardly, not quite, not very
mét	seed, grain, pill
mítrophâap	Friendship (name of a highway in Thailand)
nâa khêep	narrow
năa	heavy (of material), heavy texture
nôn (tua)	worm
nyaphâa	texture of cloth
phâa fâaj	cotton
phâa mǎj	silk
phâa najlôn	nylon
phátlom (khrýan)	electric fan
rít	to iron (cloth)
sák hêen	to dry clean

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

sák nám	washable
tàaŋ kàp	to differ, be different, distinct (i.e. from each other), to differ from
thâw kàp	equal, same in size or quantity
thon	to be durable, lasting, to last, to endure
thîisut	superlative most, -est (occurs in construction with stative verbs)
thoo (phâa)	to weave cloth
tûujen (tûu)	refrigerator

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### LESSON THIRTY-SEVEN

#### 37.0 BASIC DIALOG: Buying Clothing and Jewelry

khonsýy:	phâa jàanńíi tât sýanôok ka kaankeen phûuchaa cháj phâa kîi lăa	For this kind of material how many yards does it take for a jacket and pair of pants?
khonkhăaj:	raaw pèet lăa	About 8 yards.
khonsýy:	khun mii sǐi araj bâan khráp	What colors do you have?
khonkhăaj:	mii sǐi thaw, dam, kromathâa lésawkô sǐi námtaan	I have grey, black, blue, and brown.
khonsýy:	sǐi tòk bâan mǎj	Does the color fade any?
khon khăaj:	mǎj tòk lăej ráproon dăj	Not at all. I can guarantee it.
khonsýy:	ńán, phom aw sǐi pèet lăa  (khonkhăaj tât phâa, aw phâa sǎj thǔn, lě sòn hăj khonsýy.)	Then I'll take 8 yards of grey.  (The saleslady cuts the material, puts it in a bag, and hands it to the buyer.)
khonsýy:	thánmòt thăwràj khráp	How much is it altogether?
khonkhăaj:	kăaw róoj hòksíp bàat thûan khă  khun mǎj chom sǐnkhăa jàan ýyn bâan rěkhă	960 baht exactly.  Wouldn't you like to look at some- thing else?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

khonsýy:	khun mii araj bâan khráp	What do you have?
khonkhăaj:	thaannoon mii khrýanñen, khrýanthôm, khrýanthoon lésw kô phétphlooj  thaankhwăa mii khrýan khŕen, khrýan thoon sămrít ka máajkèsalàk	Over there's silver- ware, niello ware, gold, and jewelry.  On the right there is lacquerware, bronzeware, and wood carvings.
khonkhăaj:	răan (khŕon) raw mii khŕon hâj lýak mâak kwăa thîiýyn	Our shop has a better selection than other places.

### 37.1 VOCABULARY NOTES

- a) Measurement. In Thailand the metric system, the 'English' system, and the (old) Thai system are used in measurement. Some things are measured in one system and some in another, and some things can be measured in more than one system.

<u>System used</u>	<u>Things being measured</u>
Either metric or 'English'	length, width, height of small objects (tables, etc.)
Metric	distance, weight, content
Metric	length of fabrics, except silk in Bangkok
(Old) Thai	land area

#### Measuring units

<u>Metric system</u>		<u>'English' system</u>	
méet	'meter'	níw	'inch'
sen(timéet)	'centimeter'	fút	'foot'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

kiloo(méet)	'kilometer'	lăa	'yard'
kram	'gram'	lăa khrÿn	'one and one half yards'
sen(tikram)	'centigram'	khrÿn lăa	'half yard'
kiloo(kram)	'kilogram'	sakruu	'one fourth yard'
lít	'liter'	mai	'mile'

The Thai system will be taken up later.

- b) rápɔɔn means 'to guarantee, certify, or vouch for something'.

rápɔɔn dâj could be translated 'You can take my word for it'.

- c) cháj means 'to use up, require, take' (an amount of time, effort, people, etc.)

1. of time: naanníi tɔn cháj weelaa sɔɔn pii

This work takes 2 years.

2. of people: naanníi tɔn cháj cawnâathîi lăaj khon

This work requires a lot of personnel.

- d) lÿak means 'to choose or select'.

khɔɔn hâj lÿak 'selections' (of merchandise, things, etc.)

thaan lÿak 'choice' (as a means)

kaan lÿak 'Choice, selection' (as an action)

lÿak + PERSON + pen + POSITION, TITLE 'to choose someone to be in a certain position'

kháw lÿak kháw pen prathaan khɔɔn samoosɔɔn

'They chose him as President of the club.'

lÿaktân 'to elect' (as in a political election)

kháw dâj ráp lÿaktân pen prathanaathípoodii khɔɔn saharát

'He was elected President of the United States.'

## 37.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) Stative verbs like kwâan 'to be wide', sũun 'to be tall', nàk 'to be heavy', etc. are followed by Number + Classifier (metric) in sentences of measurement, like the following:

Noun Phrase	Verb of Measurement	No. + Classifier
1. tó tuaní	kwâan	24 níw
2. phyan phóm	sũun	1 mét 50 sentimét
3. krapǎw baj nán	nàk	8 kiloo kwàa

1. That table is 24 inches wide.

2. My friend is 1.50 meters tall.

3. That bag weighs more than 8 kilograms.

- b) Compare the two English sentences 'The color in this cloth is fast.' with 'This cloth is colorfast.' It is clear that these two sentences are identical in meaning, but are not identical in form. A similar situation occurs in Thai. Observe the contrast in form in these pairs of sentences with identical meaning.

$\frac{s\dot{y}i}{1} \frac{kh\ddot{o}n}{2} \frac{ph\ddot{a}n\dot{a}n\dot{i}}{2} \frac{m\dot{a}j}{3} \frac{t\ddot{o}k}{3} \longrightarrow \frac{ph\ddot{a}n\dot{a}n\dot{i}}{2} \frac{s\dot{y}i}{1} \frac{m\dot{a}j}{3} \frac{t\ddot{o}k}{3}$

'The color in this cloth  
doesn't run.'

'This cloth is colorfast.'

$$\frac{\text{raakhaa}}{1} \frac{\text{kh\ddot{o}ŋ}}{2} \frac{\text{r\ddot{o}t}}{2} \frac{\text{khann\ddot{i}}}{3} \frac{\text{th\ddot{u}uk}}{3} \rightarrow \frac{\text{r\ddot{o}t}}{2} \frac{\text{khann\ddot{i}}}{3} \frac{\text{raakhaa}}{1} \frac{\text{th\ddot{u}uk}}{3}$$

'The price of this car is low.'      'This car is cheap.'

$$\frac{\text{khâacâw}}{1} \frac{\text{bâan}}{2} \frac{\text{lăŋnîi}}{3} \frac{\text{mâj}}{3} \text{phɛɛŋ} \longrightarrow \frac{\text{bâan}}{2} \frac{\text{lăŋnîi}}{3} \frac{\text{khâacâw}}{1} \frac{\text{mâj}}{3} \text{phɛɛŋ}$$



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

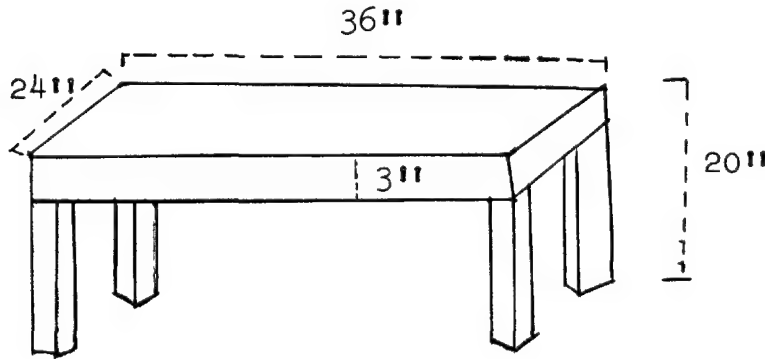
'The rent for this house is  
not high.'

'This house doesn't rent  
for a high price.'

Although both members of the pairs of sentences above  
are correct, the second type is normally used.

Chart 1:

### DIMENSIONS



tó tuaníi	kwâaŋ	24 níw
	jaaw	36 níw
	nǎa	3 níw
	sǔuŋ	20 níw

This table is 24" wide.

36" long.

3" thick.

20" high.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 37.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. phâajàanńí tăt sýakaankeən phûuchaaĵ cháĵ phâa kìi lăa  
For this kind of material, how many yards does it take  
to make a jacket and a pair of trousers?
2. ɲaanníi, tōŋ cháĵ khontham kìi khon.  
How many people does this work require?
3. ɲaanníi, tōŋ cháĵ weelaa kìi pii.  
How many years does this work take?
4. ɲaan phátthanaa thîinńí tōŋ cháĵ câwnâathńí lăaĵ khon.  
How many personnel are needed for this community development?
5. khroonkaanníi tōŋ cháĵ ɲen mâak.  
This project costs a lot of money.

#### b) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. phâanńí sǐi mǎĵ tōk lăeĵ. ráproŋ dâĵ.  
This fabric is colorfast. (I) can guarantee (it).
2. phûuchaaĵ khonńí pen khondii. ráproŋ dâĵ.  
This man is a good person. (I) can attest to (it).
3. khōŋ thîi ráanníi pen khōŋ dii thîisut. ráproŋ dâĵ.  
The merchandise here is the best. (I) can vouch for (it).
4. aahăan thîinńí arōĵ thîisut. ráproŋ dâĵ.  
The food here is the best. (I) can guarantee (it).
5. rôt khanníi khryân dii mâak. ráproŋ dâĵ.  
This car has very good engine. (I) can vouch for that.
6. bâan lăĵ nńí khâachâw mǎĵ phseŋ kēnpaĵ. ráproŋ dâĵ.  
The rent of this house is not too high. (I) can  
guarantee it. (You can take my word for it).

7. ráanníi mii khǒŋ hâj lýak mâak kwàa thîiŷyn. ráprɔŋ dâj.  
This store has better selections than others. (I) can guarantee it.
8. khryǎnthǒm ráanníi dii kwàa thîiŷyn. ráprɔŋ dâj.  
The nielloware in this shop is better than other places. (I) can guarantee it.

## c) Transformation Drill

### Pattern 1

1. phâaníi sǐi mâj tòk ləej  
ráprɔŋ dâj.  
The color of this fabric doesn't fade. (I) can guarantee.
2. khon khonníi pen khondii  
ráprɔŋ dâj  
This man is a good person. (I) can guarantee.
3. khǒŋ thîi ráanníi pen  
khǒŋ dii thîisùt  
ráprɔŋ dâj  
Things in this shop are of the best quality. (I) can guarantee.
4. aahǎan thîi nǐi arəj  
thîisùt. ráprɔŋ dâj.  
The food here is the best (I) can guarantee.
5. rót khanníi khryǎn dii  
mâak. ráprɔŋ dâj.  
This car has a very good engine. (I) can guarantee.

### Pattern 2

- phǒm ráprɔŋ dâj wâa phâaníi  
sǐi mâj tòk ləej.  
I can guarantee that this fabric is colorfast.
- phǒm ráprɔŋ dâj wâa khon khonníi  
pen khondii.  
I can guarantee that this person is a good man.
- phǒm ráprɔŋ dâj wâa khǒŋ thîi  
ráanníi pen khǒŋ dii thîisùt.  
I can guarantee that things in this shop are of the best quality.
- phǒm ráprɔŋ dâj wâa aahǎan  
thîiníi arəj thîisùt.  
I can guarantee that the food here is the best.
- phǒm ráprɔŋ dâj wâa rót khanníi  
khryǎn dii mâak  
I can guarantee that this car has a very good engine.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>6.   bâan lằnníi khâachâw mâj<br/>            ph̄eɛŋ kəɛnpaj<br/>            ráprɔɔŋ dâj<br/>            The rent for this house<br/>            is not too expensive.<br/>            (I) can guarantee.</p>   | <p>phôm ráprɔɔŋ dâj wâa bâan lằnníi<br/>        khâachâw mâj ph̄eɛŋ kəɛnpaj.<br/>        I can guarantee that the rent<br/>        for this house is not too<br/>        high.</p>                |
| <p>7.   khr̄yāŋ thɔɔŋ thīi nīi<br/>            dii kwāa thīiŷyn<br/>            ráprɔɔŋ dâj<br/>            The jewelry here is<br/>            better than at other<br/>            places. (I) can guarantee.</p> | <p>phôm ráprɔɔŋ dâj wâa<br/>        khr̄yāŋ thɔɔŋ thīi nīi dii<br/>        kwāa thīiŷyn<br/>        I can guarantee that the<br/>        jewelry here is better than<br/>        other places.</p> |

### d) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1.   nánsǎy books	khun ca aw araj What do you want?	aw nánsǎy Books.
2.   thaw grey	khun ca aw sǎi araj. What color would you like?	aw sǎi thaw I want grey.
3.   sǎam lǎa three yards	khun ca aw thāwraj How much do you want?	aw sǎam lǎa I want three yards.
4.   an jàj The big one.	khun ca aw an nǎj Which one do you want?	aw an jàj I want the big one.
5.   lǎŋ sǎi phan bàat The 4,000 Baht one	khun ca aw bâan lǎŋ nǎj Which house do you want?	aw lǎŋ sǎi phan bàat. I want the 4,000 Baht one.
6.   jàaŋ dii thīisùt The best kind	khun ca aw phāa jàaŋ nǎj Which kind of fabric would you like?	aw jàaŋ dii thīisùt The best kind.

### e) Sentence Construction Drill

The instructor will ask questions so as to elicit the answers given in the cues, as in the following example:

- |    |   |  |
|----|---|--|
| T: | aw araj khráp   | What do you want (to get)?                               |
| S: | phâa mǎjthaj khráp  | Thai silk.   |
| T: | phâa jàan nǎj   | What quality of cloth?                                   |
| S: | jàan dii thĭisùt  | The best quality.  |
| T: | aw kĭi lǎa khráp  | How many yards?  |
| S: | sǎam lǎa khráp  | 3 yards.   |
| T: | aw phâa mǎjthaj jàan<br>dĭi 4 lǎa, chĭj mǎj<br>khráp      | You want 4 yards of good<br>quality Thai silk, right?    |
| S: | mĭj chĭj, aw phâa<br>mǎjthaj jàan dii<br>thĭisùt sǎam lǎa | No, I want three yards of the<br>best quality Thai silk. |

Use the following sets of cue words in the same manner as above:

1. sĭa, dii, sǒn tua, sĭi khǎaw
2. sĭanôok ka kaankeen, dii thĭisùt, nĭn chùt, sĭi námtaan
3. nánssĭy phaasǎa thaj, sǒn lĕm, diidi
4. phátlom, jàandĭi, jĭipùn, nĭn an

## THAI BASIC COURSE

### f) Question and Construction Drill

Pretend you don't know what the other person said,  
and ask a question so as to get a repetition of  
the original statement.

<u>First Answer</u>	<u>Second Question</u>
1. sǒŋ lǎa two yards	aw { thâwràj } nakhráp { <u>kìi lǎa</u> } How many yards did you say you want?
2. sǐi thaw	aw <u>sǐi araj</u> nakhráp What color?
3. phāamǎj silk	aw { araj } nakhráp { <u>phāa araj</u> } What did you say you want?
4. jàaŋnóon That kind	aw <u>jàaŋ nǎj</u> nakhráp What kind did you say you want?
5. nỳn chùt one set	aw { thâwràj } nakhráp { <u>kìi chùt</u> } How much did you say you want?
6. khrỳaŋ thǒm Nielloware	aw <u>araj</u> nakhráp What did you say you want?
7. jàaŋ raakhaa pèet sǐp bàat The 80 Baht one.	aw <u>jàaŋ nǎj</u> nakhráp? What kind did you say you want?
8. sǎam lēm Three	aw { thâwràj } nakhráp { <u>kìi lēm</u> } How many did you say you want?
9. tua sǐikhǎaw The white one	aw <u>tuanǎj</u> nakhráp Which one did you say you want?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 10. an thîi jùu thaan<br>kwǎa<br>The one on the right | aw an nǎj nakhráp<br>Which one did you say you want? |
|---|--|

### g) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	ráanníi mii <u>khǒon</u> hâj lýak mâak kwàa thîiyn This store has a better selection of merchandise than other places.
1. phâamǎj silk	ráan níi mii <u>phâamǎj</u> hâj lýak mâak kwàa thîiyn This store has a better selection of silk than other places.
2. nǎnsǎy books	ráanníi mii <u>nǎnsǎy</u> hâj lýak mâak kwàa thîiyn This store has a better selection of books than other places.
3. khǎw They	<u>khǎw</u> mii nǎnsǎy hâj lýak mâak kwàa thîiyn They have a better selection of books than other places.
4. bâanchâw houses for rent	khǎw mii <u>bâanchâw</u> hâj lýak mâak kwàa thîiyn They have a better selection of houses for rent than other places.
5. khǒon things	khǎw mii <u>khǒon</u> hâj lýak mâak kwàa thîiyn They have a better selection of merchandise than other places.
6. araj things	khǎw mii <u>araj</u> hâj lýak mâak kwàa thîiyn They have a better selection of things than other places.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### h) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Answer</u>
1. nánsǎy sǎŋ lêm níi, khun ca lǎk lêm nǎj Of these two books which one would you choose?	phǎm aw lêm nóon I'd take that one.
2. chianmǎj ka krunthêep. khun ca lǎk jùu canwát nǎj. Between Chiangmai and Bangkok which province would you choose to live in?	phǎm(ca) lǎk jùu krunthêep I'd choose to live in Bangkok.
3. thǎa khun lǎk dǎj, khun ca lǎk pen mǎo rý khruu If you can have a choice, would you rather be a doctor, or a teacher?	phǎm lǎk pen mǎo I'd rather be a doctor.
4. khun ca lǎk jùu thǎinǎj Where will you (choose to) live?	phǎm mǎj mǐi thaan lǎk I have no choice.
5. khon sǎŋ khonníi khun ca lǎk khraj pen prathaanaa thípboodii Of these two persons, which one would you choose for President?	phǎm khít wǎa phǎm ca lǎk khon rêek pen prathaanaa thípboodii I think I'd choose the first one for President.
6. thǎa khun lǎk dǎj, khun ca lǎk pen phǔujǎn rý phǔuchaaj If you had a choice, would you rather be a woman or a man?	pen phǔuchaaj dii kwǎa khǎp It's better to be a man.
7. thammaj khǎw tǎn cháj weelaa hǎa roonrian hǎj lǔuk jùu lǎaj dyan Why did it take him many months to find a school for his children?	phró khǎw jàak ca lǎk roonrian diidii hǎj lǔuk khǎw rian Because he wanted to choose good schools for them.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>8. thammaj kháw ca tøn<br/>paj wíatnaam<br/>Why does he have to go<br/>to Vietnam?</p>   | <p>phró thaaj ráatchakaan lýak<br/>kháw paj<br/>Because the government has<br/>chosen him to go.</p>                                     |
| <p>9. khun ca lýak khâarâatchakaan<br/>paj duu naan thîi taañ<br/>prathêet kîi khon<br/>How many government offi-<br/>cials are going to go go<br/>abroad on an observation<br/>tour?</p> | <p>raw ca lýak (khâarâatchakaan)<br/>paj (duu naan thîi taañ prathêet)<br/>3 khon<br/>We'll choose three government<br/>officials.</p>   |
| <p>10. khun ca lýak khâarâatchakaan<br/>paj duu naan taañ prathêet<br/>càak thîinǎj baañ<br/>Where are you going to choose<br/>the government officials to<br/>go abroad from?</p>        | <p>raw ca lýak càak mahǎawítthajaañ<br/>lé krasuañ taañ taañ<br/>We'll choose them from univer-<br/>sities and different ministries.</p> |

### 1) Expansion Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>1. níw<br/>kîi níw<br/>kwâaaj kîi níw<br/>nâa kwâaaj kîi níw<br/>phâa níi nâa kwâaaj kîi níw</p> | <p>Inch(es)<br/>How many inches?<br/>How many inches wide?<br/>How many inches wide (for fabric)?<br/>How wide is this fabric?</p> |
| <p>2. lǎa<br/>kîi lǎa<br/>jaaw kîi lǎa<br/>chýak sên níi jaaw kîi lǎa</p>                           | <p>Yard(s)<br/>How many yards?<br/>How many yards long?<br/>How many yards long is this<br/>rope?</p>                              |
| <p>3. kiloo (méet)<br/>kîi kiloo<br/>jaaw kîi kiloo<br/>thanǎn sǎaj níi jaaw kîi kiloo</p>          | <p>kilo(s)<br/>How many kilos?<br/>How many kilos long?<br/>How many kilos is this road?<br/>How long is this road?</p>            |
| <p>4. méet<br/>kwâaaj kîi méet<br/>thanǎn sǎaj níi kwâaaj kîi<br/>méet</p>                          | <p>Meter(s)<br/>How many meter(s) wide?<br/>How wide is this road?</p>   |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 5. kiloo (kram)<br>kìi kiloo<br>nàk kìi kiloo<br>khǒŋ chín nǐi nàk kìi<br>kilo or kilos | kilo(s)<br>How many kilos?<br>How many kilos by weight?<br>How many kilos does this thing weigh? |
| 6. thâwràj<br>nǎa thâwràj<br>nǎnsǎy lêm nǐi nǎa thâwràj                                 | How much?<br>How thick?<br>How thick is this book?   |
| 7. thâwràj<br>sǔuŋ thâwràj<br>khun sǔuŋ thâwràj   | How much?<br>How tall?<br>How tall are you?  |

### j) Sentence Construction Drill

- | <u>Cue</u>  | <u>Pattern</u>   |
|---|--|
| 1. phāanǐi<br>kwāaŋ<br>thâwràj<br>this fabric<br>wide<br>how much           | phāanǐi nǎa kwāaŋ thâwràj<br>How wide is this fabric?  |
| 2. thanǒn mǐttaphâap<br>jaaw<br>kiloo<br>Friendship Highway<br>long<br>kilo | thanǒn mǐttaphâap jaaw<br>kìi kiloo.<br>How many kilometers long is<br>the Friendship Highway? |
| 3. tỳk lǎnnán<br>sǔuŋ<br>thâwràj<br>this building<br>tall how much          | tỳk lǎnnán sǔuŋ thâwràj<br>How tall is this building?  |
| 4. nǎnsǎy lêm nán<br>nǎa<br>nǎa<br>that book<br>thick, pages                | nǎnsǎy lêm nán nǎa kìi nǎa<br>How {many pages} is<br>{thick}<br>this book?                     |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |    |  |  |
|----|--|--|
| 5. | khǒɔŋ chínníi<br>nàk<br>kíloo<br>this thing<br>heavy<br>kílo   | khǒɔŋ chínníi nàk kíi kíloo<br><br>How many kilos does this thing<br>weigh?                    |
| 6. | kradaan phènníi<br>nǎa<br>níw<br>this board<br>thick<br>inches | kradaan phènníi nǎa kíi níw<br>How {many inches} is<br>{thick}                }<br>this board? |
| 7. | khun<br>nàk<br>thâwràj<br>you<br>heavy, how much               | khun nàk thâwràj<br>How much do you weigh?   |

### 37.4 EXERCISES

- a) Pretend you are buying material for making some article of clothing. You take the part of the buyer; another student, the seller.
- b) Discuss the dimensions of various objects in the room.
- c) One student describes a certain object by giving its dimensions and other characteristics (such as color, price, use, etc.) of it. Another student tries to guess what is being described.
- d) Find out the weight and height of everyone in the room, then make comparison such as 'John is 10 pounds heavier than Mary', etc. (poon 'pound' may be used.)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 37.5 VOCABULARY

an	classifier for inanimate objects, careless speakers often use <u>an</u> as a substitute for other classifiers
aw	to want (to have) cf. <u>tônkaan</u>
cháj	to use up, require, take (an amount of time, effort, people, etc.)
chín	piece (of anything whole), hence classifier for piece of clothing, furniture, bread, meat, bones, work (a specific task), etc.
chom	to look at, to admire, look at with pleasure, to praise
chút	classifier for suit (e.g. of clothing), suite (of furniture), set (e.g. of ornaments, glassware, books), for a committee, cabinet (of ministers, for a team)
chýak	rope, cord, classifier for elephants
duu naan	to observe the operation (e.g. of a system), observe (something) in operation
fút	foot, English system
kaan lýak	choice, selection (as an action)
kaankeen	trousers, pants
kèsalàk	to carve or chisel (as wood)
khǎen	to lacquer
khǒŋ hâj lýak	selections (of merchandise, things, etc.)
khǒŋ kèsalàk	carvings

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

khroonkaan	project
khryaŋ	engine; -ware (see below)
khryaŋkhǽn	lacquerware
khryaŋnən	silverware
khryaŋphét khryaŋthoon	'jewelry'
khryaŋthǽm	nielloware
khryaŋthoon	things of gold
khryaŋthoonśāmrit	bronzeware
khryŋ lǎa	half yard
kiloo(kram)	kilogram metric system
kiloo(méet)	kilometer metric system
kradaan	board
kram	gram metric system
lǎakhrŋ	one and one half yards
lít	liter metric system
lŷak	to choose or select
lŷaktāŋ	to elect (as in a political election)
mǎaj kēsalak	woodcarvings
mai	mile
méet	meter metric system
nāa	width (for fabric)
nàk	to be heavy (in weight), to be hard (as of work)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

níw	inch (English system)
nôok	external
naan phátthanaa	community development
nen	silver
phét	diamond
phétphlōoj	jewelry
phlōoj	precious stones, such as sapphires, rubies, etc.
poon	pound (weight)
pramaan	about, to approximate, to estimate
prathaan	president, chairman
ráprouj dâj	guarantee, can guarantee
săaj	1. classifier for rivers, canals, roads, for ornamental chains, necklaces for wires, cables, and for other line - like objects. 2. line (esp. in the fig. sense of a channel, route, as in 'telephone line')
sakruu	one fourth yard
samoosŏn	club, association
sen (tikram)	centigram metric system
sen (timéet)	centimeter metric system
sŷa	refers to top garments, such as shirts and blouses; woman's dress
sŷa kaankeen	suit of clothes (for men) any ensemble of clothes that includes an upper garment and slacks or pants. (e.g. women's blouse and slacks, children's coveralls, pajamas, etc.)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

sŷanôok	jacket
tàt	to cut, sever
thaaŋ lŷak	choice (as a means)
thôm	niello process
thoonlŷaŋ	the market term for bronze
thoonŝamrít	bronze
thŷŋ	a bag
thaw	grey
thŷan	exactly (in amount), complete (exact in amount), in a round number
tòk	to fade (of colors), to drop, to fall to fall (straight) down (from, into, onto) to fall or drop off, decrease, diminish, to set (of the sun, moon)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

### LESSON THIRTY-EIGHT

#### 38.0 BASIC DIALOG: Shopping for Toilet Articles

khonkhăaj:	sýy araj khráp	What do you want to buy?
khonsýy:	prɛɛnsɿifan miɿ máj	Do you have tooth-brushes?
khonkhăaj:	miɿ khráp	We do.
khonsýy:	khǎo duu nòj, dâj máj	May I see them?
khonkhăaj:	nɿi khráp	Here they are.
	jàaɲní an la 8 bàat,	This kind is 8 baht each.
	jàaɲnán 12 bàat	That kind, 12.
khonsýy:	thɿi thùuk kwàa nɿi miɿ máj	You have anything cheaper?
khonkhăaj:	mâj miɿ khráp	No.
khonsýy:	ɲán, aw jáaɲ pɛɛt bàat nɲɲ an	In that case I'll take the 8 baht one.
khonkhăaj:	ráp araj ìik máj khráp	Want anything else?
khonsýy:	aw sabùu láks kônɲɲɲ	I'd like a bar of Lux soap.
khonkhăaj:	nôok rý naj khráp	Imported or domestic.
khonsýy:	aw sabùu nôok, lɛɛwkô jaasɿifan lòot lék lòot nɲɲ, burɿi klɛtthoɔɲ nɲɲ soɔɲ ka májkhɿit nɲɲ klàk	Imported, and one small tube of tooth-paste, a package of 'Gold Flake' cigarettes, and a small box of matches.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

khonkhǎaj:	jaasǎifan jǎihǎo araj khráp	What brand of tooth paste?
khonsýy:	araj kǎ dâj	Any kind (brand).
khonkhǎaj:	nǎi khráp, thánmòt 27 bàat 50 satàan	Here you are. That'll be ฿.27.50.
	(khonsýy sòn hâj khonkhǎaj sǎamsíp bàat)	The customer gives the salesman 30 baht.
khonkhǎaj:	nǎi khráp, nenthon, sǎon bàat hǎasíp satàan. khòopkhun mǎak nakhráp, wanlǎn chéen maa ùtnǔn lǐk nakhráp	Here is your change, 2.50 baht. Thank you very much. Please come and patronize me again next time.

### 38.1 VOCABULARY NOTES

#### a) Noun Compounds

preensǎifan 'toothbrush': preen 'brush' + sǎi 'polish'  
+ fan 'tooth'

jaasǎifan 'toothpaste': jaa 'medicine, chemical compound'  
+ sǎi + fan

sabùuhǎom 'toilet soap': sabùu 'soap' + hǎom 'smell sweet'

sabùusákphâa 'laundry soap, detergent': sabùu + sák 'wash'  
+ phâa 'clothing'

mǎjkhǐit(faj) 'matches': mǎj 'wood' + khǐit 'strike,  
scratch' + faj 'fire'

#### b) jǎihǎo means 'brand' or 'trade name'.

Observe the use in the following sentences:

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

<u>Question</u>	<u>Answer</u>
(1) rót jîihôo araj What make of car is it?	fòot a Ford.
(2) sabùu jîihôo araj What brand of soap is it?	lâks Lux.
(3) wíthhajú jîihôo araj What brand of radio is it?	aa sii ee R.C.A.

- c) If araj 'what kind' is used after the noun in a question, several answers are possible, as is shown in the examples below:

<u>Question</u>	<u>Answer</u>
(1) rót araj	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <div style="font-size: 3em; vertical-align: middle; margin-right: 5px;">{</div> <div> rót fòot rót ameerikan rót sapòot </div> </div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> Ford An American car A sport car </div>
(2) sabùu araj	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <div style="font-size: 3em; vertical-align: middle; margin-right: 5px;">{</div> <div> sabùu hǎom sabùu lâks </div> </div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> toilet soap Lux soap </div>

- d) Brand names are sometimes attached to the name of the product in advertising, as in the following examples:

(1) sabùu traá <u>nók kĕsw</u>	Parrot brand soap
(2) kratìknám traá <u>nókjuun</u>	Peacock brand thermos
(3) phāa traá <u>lūukthóo</u>	Peach brand cloth
(4) phĕnsĭan traá <u>kratāaj</u>	Rabbit brand records

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- e) In the case of some very well-known products the trade name may be the main identifying feature of the name:

- (1) jaa traa sŷa Tiger (brand) balm  
(2) jaa hŷom traa máa Horse brand nice-smelling inhalants

- f) nôok and naj.

(khŷon) nôok is used to refer to any product made outside of Thailand.

(khŷon) naj is used to refer to products made in Thailand.

Observe the following examples:

- (1) sabuu nôok 'Imported soap'  
sabuu naj 'local soap'  
sabuu thaj 'Thai soap'  
(2) nákrian nôok 'Thais who were educated abroad'  
nákrian naj 'Thais educated in Thailand'

But notice the difference in usage in the following examples:

khonnôok 'outsider' or 'layman'

khonnaj 'insider'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 38.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

#### a) Noun Classifiers<sup>1</sup>

In 4.1 you were given a list of classifiers and a general description of classifiers. In succeeding lessons you have been introduced to more of them. You are now aware that in many types of Noun Phrases the classifier must occur with the noun; therefore, it is imperative that you know which classifier is associated with which noun.

In general it is probably just as simple to learn the classifier of a noun at the same time that you learn the noun (just as you might learn the gender class of a noun in German or French) without reference to the meaning of the noun. However, since there are some cases in which the classifier of a noun is predictable from the meaning of the noun, a more nearly complete list of classifiers is given below. This may help you remember the ones you have already had better, since it's easier to see the 'logic' of the system if you already know the nouns and their classifiers, and it should help you guess which classifier to use with nouns you will learn.

<u>Classifier</u>	<u>Reference</u>
(1) khon	Ordinary people, names of professions, members of the family
<u>khruu 2 khon</u>	'two teachers'
<u>lûuk 3 khon</u>	'three children'
(2) on	Buddha images
(3) tua	Non-human things with human parts (legs, arms, etc.)
<u>măa 2 tua</u>	'two dogs'
<u>kaankeen 1 tua</u>	'a pair of pants'
An exception is <u>burîi nỳn tua</u> 'a cigarette'	

---

<sup>1</sup>The information given here is taken from Noss, 106. Examples have been added to make the points clearer.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- (4) chabàp Copies of printed material  
nánsýyphim nỳn chabàp 'one newspaper'
- (5) mét Small round objects  
phét nỳn mét 'one diamond'  
ééspahjrin nỳn mét 'one aspirin tablet'
- (6) kôn lump, cube, bar  
sabùu nỳn kôn 'a bar of soap'  
namkhēēn nỳn kôn 'a lump, cube, or block of ice'  
khâaw nỳn kôn 'a lump of rice'
- (7) baj container  
tûujen nỳn baj 'one refrigerator'  
thăn nỳn baj 'one pail'
- (8) baj flat, thin sheet  
rûup nỳn baj 'one photo' or 'one picture'  
thonabât nỳn baj 'one bank note'  
thonabât baj la hâa 'a 5-baht bill (money)'
- (9) khryān is usually used with complex equipment, such an engine, or a modern invention with many parts.  
khryānjon nỳn khryān 'one engine'  
thoorasap nỳn khryān 'one telephone'
- (10) thīi is sometimes used with simple equipment. Notice the difference in usage between thīi and khryān in the following examples:
1. khryān pèet krapōn 'An electric can opener'  
thīi pèet krapōn 'an ordinary can opener'
  2. khryān tīi khāj 'An electric (egg) beater'  
thīi tīi khāj 'an ordinary (egg) beater'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- (11) hòo refers to packages or things wrapped in paper.

buríi nỳn hòo 'a carton of cigarettes'

- (12) klòn refers to a small carton or plastic box.

sabùu nỳn klòn 'a box of soap'

- (13) an is a very common classifier for inanimate objects. Careless speakers often use an as a substitute for other classifiers. The examples given in the drills are the nouns that are usually used with an.

- (14) With many noun compounds the classifier and its noun referent are identical. Some examples are:

tûujen nỳn tûu<sup>1</sup> one refrigerator

chútrápkhèek nỳn chút one set of living room furniture

tawkéss nỳn taw one gas stove

rûupmyan̄thaj nỳn rûup<sup>1</sup> one picture of Thailand

khrȳansákphâa nỳn khrȳan̄ one washing machine

bajmáaj nỳn baj one leaf

tian̄ nỳn tian̄ one bed

b) Nominalizations

thîi 'that which, the one(s) which, such ones as, etc.' serves as a nominalizer (i.e. an agent for creating nouns) of Verb Phrases (and Sentences) as in the following example:

---

<sup>1</sup>baj may also be used.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

NOMINAL		
Nominalizer	Verb Phrase	Determiner
thîi	thùuk kwàa	nîi
(that which)	(is cheaper)	(this)
'that which is cheaper'		

### 38.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill (Classifiers)

- |         |   |  |
|---------|---|--|
| 1. an   | prənsǐifan nỳn an<br>thîi pèetkrapǎn nỳn an<br>thîi tii khàj 1 an<br>tawrǐit 1 an<br>phátlom 1 an | One toothbrush<br>one can opener<br>One (egg) beater<br>one iron<br>one electric fan |
| 2. dâam | pàakaa 1 dâam   | one pen  |
| 3. thên | dinsǎo 1 thên   | one pencil   |
| 4. lòot | jaasǐifan 1 lòot  | one tube of tooth-paste  |
| 5. soon | burǐi 1 soon<br><br>sooncòtmǎaj 1 soon  | one package of cigarettes<br><br>one envelope  |
| 6. hòo  | burǐi 1 hòo<br><br>májkhǐit 1 hòo   | One carton of cigarettes<br><br>one big package of matches                           |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

7. phèn	kradaat 1 phèn	one piece of paper
	rûup 1 phèn	one (copy of a) photo
	kradaan 1 phèn	one piece of board
	phěenthîi 1 phèn	one copy of a map
8. kôn	sabûu 1 kôn	one bar of soap
	námtaan 1 kôn	one lump/cube of sugar
	námkhěen 1 kôn	a piece of ice, an ice cube
9. chabàp	nánsýyphim 1 chabàp	one newspaper
	còtmăaj 1 chabàp	one letter
10. lêm	nánsýy 1 lêm	one book
	samùt 1 lêm	one textbook
11. baj	krapăw 1 baj	one pocketbook, handbag, briefcase, suitcase
	(thonabàt) baj la róoj	one 100 baht bank-note
	rûup 1 baj	One (example of a) picture
	tûu 1 baj	one cabinet (as a container)
12. tua	tó 1 tua	one table/desk
	tó rîitphăa 1 tua	one ironing board
	kăwîi nỳn tua	one chair
	sýa 1 tua	one blouse
	kaankeen 1 tua	one pair of pants
	kaproon 1 tua	one (woman's) skirt

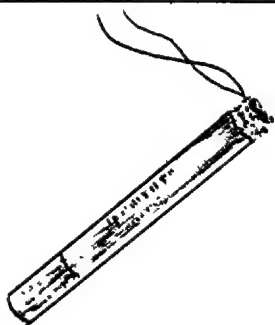


## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

13.	khrŷaŋ	wítthajú 1 khrŷaŋ	one radio
		thiíwíi thoorathát } 1 khrŷaŋ	one TV set
		khrŷaŋsákphâa 1 khrŷaŋ	one washing machine
		khrŷaŋpèet krapǎoŋ 1 khrŷaŋ	one electric can opener
		khrŷaŋ pràpaakàat 1 khrŷaŋ	one air conditioner
14.	chút	khrŷaŋkhrua 1 chút	one set of kitchen equipment
		sŷaphâa 1 chút	one suit of clothes
		chútrápkhèek 1 chút	one set of living- room furniture

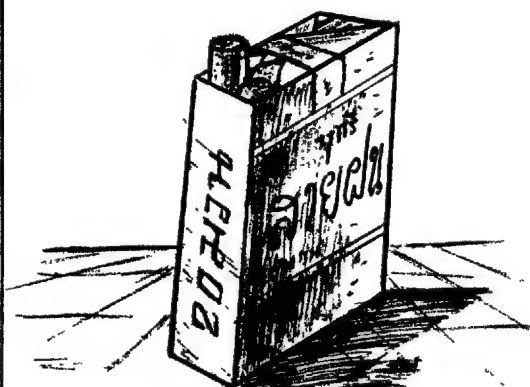
# THAI BASIC COURSE



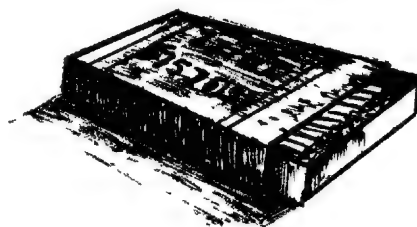
burii mỳn { tua  
muan



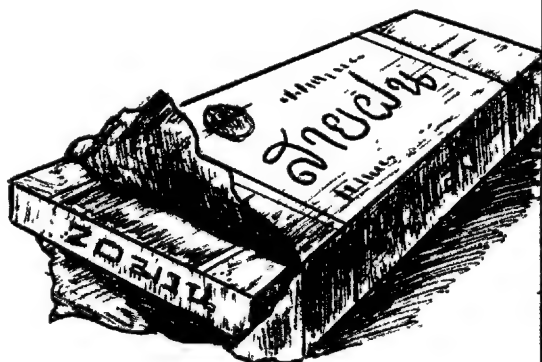
májkhlit (faj) nỳn kâan



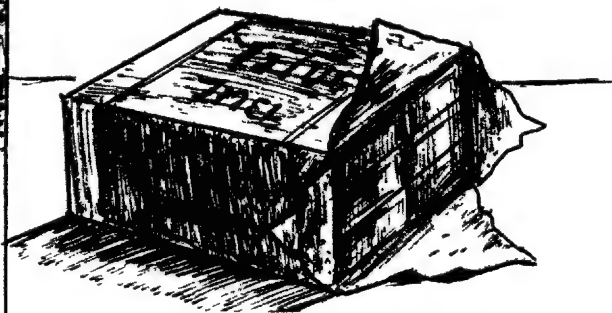
burii nỳn soon



májkhlit (faj) nỳn klàk



burii nỳn hòo



májkhlit (faj) nỳn hòo

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### b) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. præŋsɿifan nɯ̌ŋ Toothbrush	sýy araj khráp What do you want?	(aw) præŋsɿifan nɯ̌ŋ an (I want) one tooth- brush.
2. jaasɿifan sɔ̌ɔŋ Toothpaste	sýy araj khráp What do you want?	(aw) jaasɿifan sɔ̌ɔŋ lòɔt (I want) two tubes of toothpaste.
3. burɿi sɔ̌ɔŋ Cigarettes	sýy araj khráp What do you want?	(sýy) burɿi sɔ̌ɔŋ sɔ̌ɔŋ (I want) two pack- ages of cigarettes.
4. sabùu hɔ̌ɔm sǎam Toilet soap	sýy araj khráp What do you want?	(sýy) sabùu hɔ̌ɔm sǎam kôn (I want) three bars of toilet soap.
5. májkhɿit nɯ̌ŋ Matches	ráp araj khráp What do you want?	(sýy) májkhɿit nɯ̌ŋ klàk (I want) one box of matches.
6. sabùu láks jàaŋnôk sɔ̌ɔŋ Imported Lux toilet soap Two	aw araj khráp  What do you want?	aw sabùu láks  jàaŋnôk sɔ̌ɔŋ kôn  I want two bars of imported Lux toilet soap.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |    |   |  |
|----|---|--|
| 7. | præŋsɿifan<br>khanàat lék<br>nỳn<br>Small toothbrush<br>One                           | aw araj khráp<br>What would you<br>like?<br>One small toothbrush.  |
| 8. | jaasɿifan<br>lòot lék jàaŋnôok,<br>nỳn<br>Imported tooth-<br>paste, small tube<br>One | ráp araj khráp<br>What would you<br>like?<br>aw jaasɿifan<br>jàaŋnôok<br>lòotlék<br>nỳn lòot<br>One small tube<br>imported toothpaste. |

### c) Expansion Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <u>sabùu</u> nỳn kōon  | One bar of soap.                        |
| <u>sabùu</u> hǒom nỳn kōon                                      | One bar of toilet soap.                 |
| <u>sabùu</u> (hǒom) láks nỳn kōon                               | One bar of Lux toilet soap.             |
| <u>sabùu</u> (hǒom) láks jàaŋnôok<br>nỳn kōon                   | One bar of imported Lux<br>toilet soap. |
| 2. <u>pàakkaa</u> nỳn dâam                                      | One pen                                 |
| <u>pàakkaa</u> páakkêe nỳn dâam                                 | One Parker pen                          |
| <u>pàakkaa</u> páakkêe jàaŋdii<br>nỳn dâam.                     | One good Parker pen                     |
| <u>pàakkaa</u> páakkêe jàaŋdii,<br><u>khanàat lék</u> nỳn dâam. | One good Parker pen, small<br>size.     |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 3. <u>jaasĩifan</u> nỳn lỏt  | One toothpaste  |
| <u>jaasĩifan ajpaanaa</u> nỳn lỏt  | One Ipana toothpaste                                    |
| <u>jaasĩifan ajpaanaa jàaṇṇỏk</u><br>nỳn lỏt   | One imported Ipana toothpaste                           |
| <u>jaasĩifan ajpaanaa</u><br><u>jàaṇṇỏk</u> , } khaṇaāt<br>} lỏt<br><u>jàj</u> nỳn lỏt         | One imported Ipana toothpaste,<br>big size/large tube   |
| 4. <u>prəsĩifan</u> nỳn an   | One toothbrush  |
| <u>prəsĩifan dóktêe wés</u> nỳn an   | One Dr. West toothbrush                                 |
| <u>prəsĩifan dóktêe wés jàaṇ</u><br><u>ỏn</u> nỳn an   | One soft Dr. West toothbrush                            |
| 5. <u>burĩi</u> nỳn sỏn  | One package of cigarettes                               |
| <u>burĩi thaj</u> nỳn sỏn  | One package of Thai cigarettes                          |
| <u>burĩi thaj jàaṇṇỏi</u> nỳn sỏn  | One package of good Thai<br>cigarettes                  |
| <u>burĩi thaj jàaṇṇỏi jĩihỏ</u><br><u>arajkỏdỏj</u> nỳn sỏn                                    | One package of Thai cigarettes<br>of any brand          |
| 6. <u>rỏt</u> nỳn khan   | One car   |
| <u>rỏt ameerikan</u> nỳn khan  | One American car  |
| <u>rỏt ameerikan suǎjsuǎj</u> nỳn<br>khan  | One beautiful American car                              |
| <u>rỏt ameerikan suǎjsuǎj</u><br><u>jàaṇṇỏi</u> nỳn khan                                       | One good, beautiful American<br>car                     |
| <u>rỏt ameerikan suǎjsuǎj</u><br><u>jàaṇṇỏi khaṇaātjǎj</u> nỳn khan                            | One big good and beautiful<br>American car              |
| <u>rỏt ameerikan suǎjsuǎj</u><br><u>jàaṇṇỏi khaṇaātjǎj, jĩihỏ</u><br><u>arajkỏdỏj</u> nỳn khan | One big good and beautiful<br>American car of any make. |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### d) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	thîi <u>thùuk</u> kwàa níi mii máj Do you have anything cheaper?
1. díi Good	thîi <u>díi</u> kwàa níi mii máj Do you have anything better?
2. suǎj Beautiful, pretty	thîi <u>suǎj</u> kwàa níi mii máj Do you have anything prettier?
3. phɛɛŋ Expensive	thîi <u>phɛɛŋ</u> kwàa níi mii máj Do you have anything more expensive?
4. jàj Big	thîi <u>jàj</u> kwàa níi mii máj Do you have anything bigger?
5. lék Small	thîi <u>lék</u> kwàa níi mii máj Do you have anything smaller?
6. nâakwâaŋ Wide (Fabric)	thîi <u>nâakwâaŋ</u> kwàa níi mii máj Do you have anything wider?
7. màj New	thîi <u>màj</u> kwàa níi mii máj Do you have anything newer?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### e) Sentence Expansion Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Continued Pattern</u>
1. prəɛnsɿfan jaanɲí  phɛɛɲ paj  This kind of toothbrush is too expensive.	prəɛnsɿfan jaanɲí phɛɛɲ paj, thɿi thùuk kwàa níi mii máj  This kind of toothbrush is too expensive. Do you have any- thing cheaper?
2. rót khanníi māj suǎj  This car is not beautiful.	rót khanníi māj suǎj, thɿi suǎj kwàa níi mii máj  This car is not beautiful. Do you have anything better looking?
3. bāan lǎɲníi lék  kəən paj  This house is too small.	bāan lǎɲníi lék kəən pāj, thɿi jàj kwàa níi mii máj  This house is too small. Do you have anything bigger?
4. phāaníi nāakhêɛp  kəən paj  This fabric is too narrow.	phāaníi nāakhêɛp kəən paj, thɿi kwāaɲ kwàa níi mii máj  This fabric is too narrow. Do you have anything wider?
5. kaankeɛɲ tuaníi kàw  paj  These pants are too old.	kaankeɛɲ tuaníi kàw paj, thɿi màj kwàa níi mii máj  These pants are too old. Do you have anything newer?
6. s̄ya tuaníi jàj paj  This shirt is too big.	s̄ya tuaníi jàj paj, thɿi lék kwàa níi mii máj  This shirt is too big. Do you have anything smaller?
7. nǎɲs̄y lēmńíi jâak kəən paj  This book is too difficult.	nǎɲs̄y lēmńíi jâak paj, thɿi n̄aaj kwàa níi mii máj.  This book is too difficult. Do you have anything easier?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 38.4 EXERCISES

- a) Have one student take the part of a store clerk and another that of a customer. Have them go through the routine of purchasing various items, such as:

- (a) a pack of cigarettes, (b) two bars of toilet soap,  
(c) a tube of toothpaste, (d) some matches, etc.

The clerk asks the brand, kind, and size the customer wants. When he is told, he indicates what the price is. Then the customer inquires if there is anything cheaper (better, etc.). Then he gives the clerk a bill and asks for change.

### 38.5 VOCABULARY

aa sī ee	R.C.A.
ajpaanaa	Ipana
an	classifier for inanimate objects
ééspahjrin	aspirin
on	classifier for Buddha images, King, Queen
òn	soft, tender
ùtnŭn	to support, assist (financially) to patronize
bajmáaj	leaf
dóktêe wés	Dr. West
fan	tooth
fòot	a Ford (brand name)
hòo	carton, classifier for packages or things wrapped in paper



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

hǒm	to smell sweet
jaa	medicine, chemical compound
jaa hǒm	nice-smelling inhalants
jaasǐifan	toothpaste
jǐihǒ	brand or trade name
kâan	classifier for matches
kaproon	woman's skirt
khǐit	to strike, scratch
khonnaŋ	insider
khonnǒk	outsider or layman
khryǎnjon	engine
khryǎn pèet krapǒn	an electric can opener
khryǎnsákphâa	washing machine
khryǎn tǐi khàj	an electric (egg) beater
klàk	small case or box, classifier for things in such containers hence, box of matches, etc.
klètthoon	Gold Flake(name of cigarettes)
klòn	a small carton or plastic box
kôn	bump, cube, bar classifier for bumpy objects, e.g. rocks, lumps of clay or sugar, cubes of sugar, chunks or hunks or coal or charcoal, bricks, broken bricks, cake of soap, clouds, and figuratively, sums of money
kratàaŋ	rabbit

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

kratìknàm	thermos bottle
làks	Lux (brand name)
lòot	classifier for tube, tube of toothpaste
lûukthóo	peach (a Chinese loan word)
máa	horse
máj	wood
májkhìit (faj)	matches
mét	classifier for small round objects (pills, etc.)
muan	classifier for cigarette, cigar
(khǎoŋ) naj	is used to refer to products made in Thailand or in country
nákrian naj	Thais educated in Thailand
nákrian nǎok	Thais who were educated abroad
nók	bird
nókjuuŋ	Peacock
nókkêew	Parrot
(khǎoŋ) nǎok	is used to refer to any product made outside of Thailand or country
ŋanthoon	change (money returned)
páak kêe	Parker
phátlom	electric fan
phènsǎn	records (phonograph)
prɛɛŋ	brush

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

prɛɛŋsǎifan	toothbrush
sabùuhǎom	toilet soap
sabùu(láks)	(Lux) soap
sabùu naj	local soap
sabùu nǎok	imported soap
sabùu sákphâa	laundry soap
sabùu thaj	Thai soap
sák	to wash (cloth only), to launder
satàan	satang
sǎi	polish
soon	classifier for cigarettes or envelope
sooncòtmǎaj	envelope
sǎa	tiger
taw	stove
tawkéss	gas stove
tawrfit	iron (for clothing)
thǎn	pail
thiilwii	T.V.
thii	classifier for simple equipment
thii pèet krapǎn	an ordinary can opener
thii tii khàj	an ordinary (egg) beater
thonabàt	bank note

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

thoon	to give change (money)
thoorathát	T.V.
traa	brand, trademark (It is sometimes attached to the name of the product in advertising.)
wanlǎn	next time

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### LESSON THIRTY-NINE

#### 39.0 BASIC DIALOG: Buying Fruit

khonsýy:	sômníi khǎaj jaŋŋaj	How much are these oranges?
mêskháa:	lǎo la sǐp hâa bàat khà	Fifteen baht a kilo.
khonsýy:	kiloo nyn mii kǐi lûuk	How many oranges in a kilo?
mêskháa:	raaw hòk cèt lûuk	Around 6 or 7.
khonsýy:	lǎo la sǐp bàat dâj máj	How about 10 baht a kilo?
mêskháa:	mâj dâj khà	Impossible.
	níi sôm jàaŋdii nakhá	This is a very good kind of orange.
	rótdii wǎansanít	They have good, unusually sweet flavor.
khonsýy:	ŋán sǐp sǒŋ bàat kǎlǎewkan na	Then make it 12 baht.
	aw kiloo nyn	I'll take one kilo.
	(mêskháa sòn sôm hâj)	(The saleslady hands over the oranges.)
mêskháa:	ca ráp araj ìik májkhá	Anything else?
khonsýy:	sàpparót níi lûuk thǎwraj	How much are these pineapples each?
mêskháa:	sìi bàat khà	four baht.
khonsýy:	sǎam bàat dâj máj	Is three O.K.?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

mêekháa:	mâj dâj khà	Can't do it.
	sii bàat khàat tua	Four baht, no bargaining
khonsýy:	aw lûuk nyn	I'll take one.
	chûaj lýak lûuk diidi hâj dūaj	Pick out a good one for me.
mêekháa:	nîi khà, thánmòt sîp hòk bàat thūan	Here it is. That makes 16 baht exactly altogether.
	(khonsýy sòn baj la róoj hâj mêekháa)	(The buyer hands the saleslady a 100 baht bill.)
mêekháa:	khun mii bénjôj máj khá	You have any smaller bills?
	dichán mâj mii thoon	I don't have any change.
khonsýy:	mâj mii lœej khráp	No, I don't have any at all.
mêekháa:	nán rœo sák pradiaw nákha	Then please wait a minute.
	dichán ca paj lêsk maa hâj	I'll go get some change for you.

### 39.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

#### Types of Noun Phrases

##### a) Noun + Stative Verb(s)

With this type of construction the reference is non-specific; i.e. it refers to any one or more units of the whole class.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 1. Noun + Stative Verb

rót māj 'new cars'

Here the reference is to a particular type of object as a class.

### 2. Noun + Stative Verb Reduplicated

Depending on the context, reduplication of the stative verb may result in

(a) 'Softening' the meaning of the stative verb,

phǒm hěn rót sǐi khǎaw khǎaw phaan paj khan nyn  
'I saw a whitish car pass by.'

(b) strengthening the meaning of the stative verb, or

rót khanníi māj jāj phoo. phǒm jàak dāj rót jāj jāj  
'This car is not big enough. I would like a really big car.'

(c) it may indicate that the noun it occurs with is plural.

khaw mii baan sǎaj sǎaj 'He has beautiful houses.'

In all of these constructions the reference is to general rather than specific objects.

### b) Noun + Classifier + Stative Verb(s)

Reference is usually to one object.

#### 1. Noun + Classifier + Stative Verb

Reference is one specific object.

nánsǎy lēm jāj 'the big book'

#### 2. Noun + Classifier + Stative Verb Reduplicated

Reference is any one of a number of objects.

sapparòt lûuk dii dii 'any good pineapple'

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

In certain situations reduplication can result in

(a) 'softening' the meaning of the stative verb

chûaj lâyak lûuk jàj jàj hâj lûuk nyn

'Please choose a rather large one for me.'

### 39.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill (See Fruit Chart.)

1. sôm sǎam	{ lûuk baj phǎn	3 oranges
2. sôm oo nyn	{ lûuk baj phǎn	1 pomelo
3. klûaj nyn wǐi		1 bunch of bananas
<u>or</u> sǐi	{ baj lûuk phǎn	or 4 bananas
4. mamûan sǎon	{ lûuk phǎn baj	2 mangoes
5. mankhút nyn	{ lûuk phǎn baj	1 mangosteen
6. chomphûu sǎon	{ lûuk phǎn baj	2 rose apples



# THAI BASIC COURSE

7. tɛɛŋmoo nỳn	{ lûuk phỏn baj	1 watermelon
8. malakoo nỳn	{ lûuk phỏn baj	1 papaya
9. laaŋsàat nỳn or sìpsìi	chôo  { lûuk phỏn baj	1 bunch of langsa or 14 langsa
10. thúrìan nỳn	{ lûuk phỏn baj	1 durian
11. sàparót nỳn	{ phỏn lûuk baj	1 pineapple
12. ợó nỳn <u>or</u> hâa	{ chôo  phuan phỏn baj lûuk	1 bunch of rambuttans  5 rambuttans

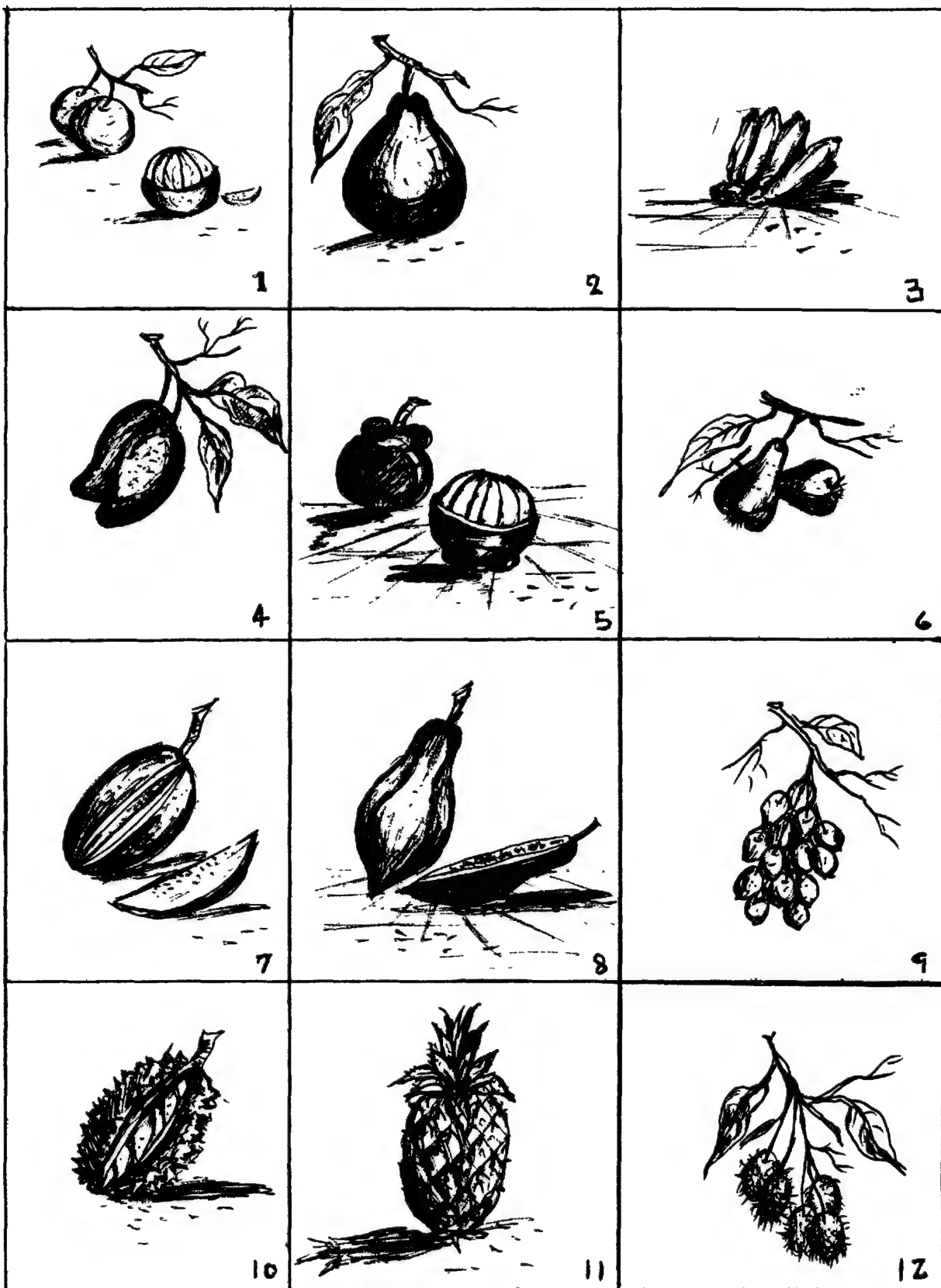
## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### b) Sentence Construction Drill (See Fruit Chart.)

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. sôm, jaṇṇaj	sôm nîi khǎaj jaṇṇaj How do you sell these oranges? (by weight or quantity)
2. sôm oo, lûuk	sôm oo nîi lûuk la thâwràj How much are these grapefruit apiece?
3. klûaj, jaṇṇaj	klûaj nîi khǎaj jaṇṇaj How do you sell these bananas?
4. mamûaṇ, lûuk	mamûaṇ nîi lûuk la thawràj How much are these mangoes apiece?
5. maṅkhút, jaṇṇaj	maṅkhút nîi khǎaj jaṇṇaj How do you sell these mangosteens?
6. chomphûu, jaṇṇaj	chomphûu nîi khǎaj jaṇṇaj How do you sell these rose apples?
7. tseṇmoo, lûuk	tseṇmoo nîi lûuk la thâwràj How much are watermelons each?
8. malakoo, lûuk	malakoo nîi lûuk la thâwràj How much are papayas apiece?
9. laaṇsàat, jaṇṇaj	laaṇsàat nîi khǎaj jaṇṇaj How do you sell langsa?
10. thûrian, jaṇṇaj	thûrian nîi khǎaj jaṇṇaj How do you sell durians?
11. sàparót, lûuk	sàparót nîi lûuk la thâwràj How much are pineapples apiece?
12. ṇó, jaṇṇaj	ṇó nîi khǎaj jaṇṇaj How do you sell rambuttans?

# THAI BASIC COURSE



THAI FRUIT

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### c) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	chûaj lỳak lûuk <u>dii dii</u> hâj dũaj Please choose a good one for me.
1.  naam naam pretty	chûaj lỳak lûuk <u>naam naam</u> hâj dũaj Please choose a pretty one for me.
2.  wǎan wǎan sweet	chûaj lỳak lûuk <u>wǎan wǎan</u> hâj dũaj Please choose a very sweet one for me.
3.  jàj jàj big	chûaj lỳak lûuk <u>jàj jàj</u> hâj dũaj Please choose a rather big one for me.
4.  sùk sùk ripe	chûaj lỳak lûuk <u>sùk sùk</u> hâj dũaj Please choose a really ripe one for me.
5.  sòt sòt fresh	chûaj lỳak lûuk <u>sòt sòt</u> hâj dũaj Please choose a really fresh one for me.

### d) Expansion Drill

1.  sàparót lûuk dii dii sàparót lûuk dii dii wǎan wǎan	A good pineapple A good and sweet pineapple
2.  sàparót lûuk too too sàparót lûuk too too wǎan wǎan	A big pineapple A big and sweet pineapple
3.  thúrìan lûuk too too thúrìan lûuk too too rót dii dii	A big durian A big, good-tasting durian

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>4. mǎnkhút lûuk ñaamñaam<br/>mǎnkhút lûuk ñaamñaam<br/>rót dīi dīi</p> | <p>A pretty mangosteen<br/>A pretty, good-tasting<br/>mangosteen</p> |
| <p>5. mamûan lûuk too too<br/>mamûan lûuk too too<br/>sùk sùk</p>         | <p>A big mango<br/>A big, ripe mango</p>                             |
| <p>6. mamûan lûuk too too<br/>mamûan lûuk too too<br/>sòt sòt</p>         | <p>A big mango<br/>A big, fresh mango</p>                            |

### e) Progressive Substitution Drill

- | <u>Cue</u>               | <u>Pattern</u>   |
|--------------------------|--|
|                          | <p>chûaj lÿak <u>sàparòt</u> lûuk dīi<br/>dīi hāj lûuk nÿn</p> <p>Please choose a good pineapple<br/>for me.</p>                                   |
| 1. sôm oo                | <p>chûaj lÿak <u>sôm</u> <u>oo</u> lûuk dīi dīi<br/>hāj lûuk nÿn</p> <p>Please choose a good pomelo for<br/>me.</p>                                |
| 2. mamûan, jàj, sǎam     | <p>chûaj lÿak <u>mamûan</u> lûuk baj <u>jàj</u><br/><u>jàj</u> hāj <u>sǎam</u> baj</p> <p>Please choose three (rather)<br/>big mangoes for me.</p> |
| 3. thúrīan, rót dīi, nÿn | <p>chûaj lÿak <u>thúrīan</u> <u>rót</u> <u>dīi</u> <u>dīi</u><br/>hāj lûuk nÿn</p> <p>Please choose a good durian for<br/>me.</p>                  |
| 4. jàj,<br>sǒon          | <p>chûaj lÿak thúrīan baj <u>jàj</u> <u>jàj</u><br/>rót dīi dīi hāj sǒon lûuk</p> <p>Please choose two big and good<br/>durians for me.</p>        |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |                                |   |
|--------------------------------|---|
| 5.    tɕɕɛŋmoo,<br>wǎan, nỳn   | chûaj lỳak tɕɕɛŋmoo lûuk jàj<br>jàj <u>wǎan wǎan</u> hâj lûuk <u>nỳn</u><br>Please choose a big sweet<br>watermelon for me. |
| 6.    maŋkhút, ɲaam, nỳn kiloo | chûaj maŋkhút lûuk <u>ɲaam ɲaam</u><br>hâj <u>kiloo nỳn</u><br>Please choose a kilo of pretty<br>mangoes for me.            |

### f) Progressive Substitution Drill

- | <u>Cue</u>              | <u>Pattern</u>   |
|-------------------------|--|
|                         | chûaj lỳak <u>sàparót</u> lûuk dii dii<br>hâj lûuk nỳn<br>Please choose a good pineapple<br>for me.          |
| 1.    sôm oo<br>pomelo  | chûaj lỳak <u>sôm oo</u> lûuk dii dii<br>hâj lûuk nỳn<br>Please choose a good pomelo for<br>me.              |
| 2.    thúrìan<br>durian | chûaj lỳak <u>thúrìan</u> lûuk dii dii<br>hâj lûuk nỳn<br>Please choose a good durian for<br>me.             |
| 3.    sǎam<br>three     | chûaj lỳak thúrìan lûuk dii dii<br>hâj <u>sǎam</u> lûuk<br>Please choose three good durians<br>for me.       |
| 4.    jàj<br>big        | chûaj lỳak thúrìan lûuk <u>jàj jàj</u><br>hâj sǎam lûuk<br>Please choose three rather big<br>durians for me. |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>5.   jàj, rôt dii</p> <p>big, of good flavor</p>           | <p>chûaj lỳak thúrìan lûuk <u>jàj</u> <u>jàj</u><br/> <u>rôt dii</u> dii hâj sǎam lûuk</p> <p>Please choose three rather big<br/> delicious durians for me.</p>         |
| <p>6.   sýy</p> <p>buy</p>                                    | <p>chûaj <u>sýy</u> thúrìan lûuk jàj jàj<br/> rôt dii dii hâj sǎam lûuk</p> <p>Please buy three rather big<br/> delicious durians for me.</p>                           |
| <p>7.   mǎnkhút, ñaam</p> <p>mangosteens</p> <p>pretty</p>    | <p>chûaj sýy <u>mǎnkhút</u> lûuk <u>ñaam</u> <u>ñaam</u><br/> rôt dii dii hâj sǎam lûuk</p> <p>Please buy three pretty, good<br/> tasting mangosteens for me.</p>       |
| <p>8.   nyn kiloo</p> <p>one kilo</p>                         | <p>chûaj sýy mǎnkhút lûuk ñaam ñaam<br/> rôt dii dii hâj <u>kiloo</u> <u>nyn</u></p> <p>Please buy a kilo of pretty,<br/> delicious mangosteens for me.</p>             |
| <p>9.   síp bàat</p> <p>ten baht</p>                          | <p>chûaj sýy mǎnkhút lûuk ñaam ñaam<br/> rôt dii dii hâj <u>síp</u> <u>bàat</u></p> <p>Please buy ten baht worth of<br/> pretty, delicious mangosteens<br/> for me.</p> |
| <p>10. mamuân, too</p> <p>wǎan</p> <p>mango, large, sweet</p> | <p>chûaj sýy <u>mamuân</u> lûuk <u>too</u> <u>too</u><br/> <u>wǎan</u> <u>wǎan</u> hâj síp bàat</p> <p>Please buy ten baht of sweet,<br/> big mangoes for me.</p>       |
| <p>11. malakoo, sùk, too</p> <p>papaya, ripe, big</p>         | <p>chûaj sýy <u>malakoo</u> lûuk too too<br/> <u>sùk</u> <u>sùk</u> hâj síp bàat</p> <p>Please buy ten baht of big, ripe<br/> papayas for me.</p>                       |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### g) Sentence Construction Drill

<u>Pattern 1</u>	<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern 2</u>
1. khun mâj mii bĕnjĕj  rĕkhráp  You don't have any change?	lĕek   to change	khun mâj mii bĕnjĕj rĕkhráp  phǒm capaj <u>lĕek</u> maa hâj  You don't have any change?  I'll go get some change for you.
2. khun ca thaam  kaafĕe rĕkhráp  You'd like a cup of coffee?	sýy   to buy	khun ca thaam kaafĕe rĕkhráp  phǒm ca paj <u>sýy</u> maa hâj  You'd like a cup of coffee?  I'll go and buy some for you.
3. khun mâj mii  nánsýy rĕkhráp  You don't have a book?	aw   to get	khun mâj mii nánsýy rĕkhráp  phǒm ca paj <u>aw</u> maa hâj  You don't have a book?  I'll go get one for you.
4. khun tĕnkaan thĕksĕi  rĕkhráp  Do you want a taxi?	rĕak   call	khun tĕnkaan thĕksĕi rĕkhráp  phǒm ca paj <u>rĕak</u> maa hâj  Do you want a taxi?  I'll go and call one for you.



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|
| <p>5. khun tŏnkaan mŏo<br/>rĕkhráp<br/>Do you want a doctor?</p>       | <p>taam<br/>to send<br/>for, to<br/>get (a<br/>person)</p> | <p>khun tŏnkaan mŏo rĕkhráp<br/>phŏm ca paj <u>taam</u> maa hâj<br/>Do you want a doctor?<br/>I'll go get one for<br/>you.</p>                       |
| <p>6. khun ca nân mǎj<br/>Would you like to<br/>sit down?</p>          | <p>aw kâwîi<br/>get a<br/>chair</p>                        | <p>khun ca nân mǎj<br/>phŏm ca paj <u>aw kâwîi</u><br/>maa hâj<br/>Would you like to<br/>sit down?<br/>I'll bring a chair<br/>for you.</p>           |
| <p>7. khun ca thaam mǎj<br/>Would you like to eat?</p>                 | <p>aw<br/>get</p>  | <p>khun ca thaam mǎj<br/>phŏm ca paj <u>aw</u> maa hâj<br/>Would you like to eat?<br/>I'll bring something<br/>for you.</p>                          |
| <p>8. khun ca lêek nŏn mǎj<br/>Would you like to change<br/>money?</p> | <p>lêek<br/>change</p>                                     | <p>khun ca lêek nŏn mǎj<br/>phŏm ca paj <u>lêek</u> maa<br/>hâj<br/>Would you like to<br/>change money?<br/>I'll go and change some<br/>for you.</p> |

### h) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. phŏm mâj mii bĕnjŏj. phŏm ca tŏn paj lêek nŏn  
I don't have small bank notes. I'll have to go change  
some money.

2. khun mii bɛ̃ŋjɔ̃j máj. khɔ̃ lɛ̃k sák rɔ̃j bàat.  
Do you have any change? Please change a hundred Baht.
3. khun mii sɛ̃et satàaŋ máj. khɔ̃ lɛ̃k sák hâa bàat  
Do you have any change? Could I have change for five Baht?
4. chûaj paj lɛ̃k nɛ̃n maa hâj sák jɿisɿp bàat  
Please go and get twenty Baht change for me.
5. phǒm mii nɛ̃n doolâa jùu jɿisɿp rɿan. ca lɛ̃k pen nɛ̃nthaj  
dâj thâwrãj  
I have twenty dollars. How much Thai money will I get in  
exchange for it?
6. khun sâap máj khráp wâa thɛ̃wníi mii thɿilɛ̃sknɛ̃n máj.  
Do you know if there are any money changers around here?
7. chaawnâa aw khâaw paj lɛ̃k maa pen khɔ̃ŋcháj  
The farmers took the rice and traded it for things.
8. jàa aw phimsɛ̃n paj lɛ̃k kàp klya.  
Don't trade (exchange) smelling salts for salt.  
(Do not trade valuable things for worthless things.  
A Thai proverb)

1) Expansion Drill

- |                    |                           |
|--------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. lɛ̃k            | exchange                  |
| lɛ̃k kàp           | exchange with             |
| lɛ̃k ka khɔ̃ŋ      | exchange with things      |
| lɛ̃k nɛ̃n ka khɔ̃ŋ | exchange money for things |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

2. lĕk exchange  
lĕk nĕn exchange money  
lĕk nĕn sĭp rĭan (I) want to exchange ten dollars.
3. lĕk exchange  
khŏo lĕk Please exchange.  
khŏo lĕk bĕnjŏj Please change for small bank notes.  
khŏo lĕk bĕnjŏj sák Please give me 100 Baht change.  
róoj bàat
4. lĕk exchange  
khŏo lĕk Please exchange.  
khŏo lĕk sĕetsataan Please exchange for coins.  
khŏo lĕk sĕetsataan sák Please exchange five Baht into  
hĕa bàat coins?
5. lĕk exchange  
lĕk kan trade  
lĕk rót kan trade cars  
lĕk rót kan, aw máj How would you like to trade cars?
6. lĕk exchange  
aw khĕaw paj lĕk Take rice and exchange it.  
aw khĕaw paj lĕk ka Take rice and exchange it for  
khŏoncháj things.  
chaawnaa aw khĕaw paj The farmers trade rice for  
lĕk ka khŏoncháj things.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

7. lĕk exchange  
aw paj lĕk Take it and exchange it.  
aw paj lĕk maa been to exchange something  
aw khāaw paj lĕk maa has been to exchange rice for  
pen khǒnchǎj useful things
8. lĕk exchange  
aw paj lĕk Take it and exchange it.  
aw rǒt kàw paj lĕk Take the old car to exchange it.  
aw rǒt kàw paj lĕk maa have been to trade the old car  
pen rǒt mǎj in for a new one

### Exercise (on lĕk)

1. chaawnaa mī tĕe khāaw. thāa khǎw tǒnkaan khǒnchǎj tĕe khǎw mǎj mī nĕn sýy. khǎw ca tham janŋaj  
A farmer has only rice. If he wants other things but he doesn't have money to buy them, what can he do?
2. khun ca tǒn hǎj nĕn khāa thĕksǐi sǐphāa bàat. khun mī tĕe baj la rǒoj. thĕksǐi mǎj mī thoon. khun ca tham janŋaj  
You have to pay fifteen Baht for taxi fare. You have only a 100 Baht bank note. The driver doesn't have any change. What do you do?
3. khun mī tĕe nĕn doon lāa. khun tǒnkaan nĕn bàat, khun ca tham janŋaj  
You have only dollars. You want some baht. What do you do?
4. thāa nĕn doon lāa thāwkàp jǐisǐp bàat. thāa khun mī nĕn hāasǐp doon lāa, khun ca lĕk nĕn bàat dǎj thāwrǎj  
If one dollar is equivalent to twenty baht; if you have fifty dollars, how many baht do you get?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

5. khun phíchaj ca paj ameerikaa. kháw aw nən paj lêsk thîi thanakhaan hâa phan bàat. thâa nỳn đoon lâa thâw kàp jîisíp bàat. khun phíchaj đâj nən đoon lâa thâwràj

Mr. Pichai is going to America. He went to the bank to exchange money for 5,000 baht. If one dollar is equivalent to twenty baht, how many dollars does Mr. Pichai get?

### j) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. phǒm sýy khǒn raakhaa síp pèet bàat. phǒm hâj nən kháw paj jîisíp bàat. kháw thoön nən hâj phǒm sǒn bàat.

I made a purchase for 18 baht. I gave him twenty baht. He gave me two baht change.

2. khâa thêksîi síp sǒn bàat. phǒm hâj nən thêksîi paj síp hâa bàat kháw thoön maa hâj phǒm sǒn bàat. kháw thoön nən hâj phǒm khàat paj nỳn bàat.

The taxi fare is 12 baht. I gave the driver 15 baht. He gave me two baht change. He shortchanged me one baht.

3. phǒm mii tēs baj la rǒoj, māj mîi bēnjōj. mēs khâa māj mii nən thoön, phǒm lǎej tōn paj lêsk bēnjōj maa hâj kháw

I had only one hundred baht bank notes. I didn't have any smaller bank notes. The vendor didn't have any change. So, I had to go get some change for her.

4. khun khuan ca đâj nenthoon sǒn bàat tēs kháw thoön hâj khun sǒn bàat hâasíp. kháw thoön nən hâj khun kēn maa hâasíp sataan

You should have got two baht change but he gave you the change for two baht and fifty satang. He gave you fifty satang too much in change.

5. khǒn raakhaa thánmòt pèetsíp sîi bàat. phǒm hâj nən kháw paj rǒoj nỳn. phǒm khuan ca đâj nenthoon thâwràj

The goods cost altogether 84 baht. I gave him 100 baht. How much change should I get?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### k) Expansion Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. thoon   | To give change                                    |
| thoonnən   | To give change                                    |
| thoon nən hâj khun   | To give you change                                |
| thoon nən hâj khun<br>săam bàat                              | To give you 3 baht change                         |
| khâw thoon nən hâj<br>khun sâam bàat                         | He gave you 3 baht change.                        |
| 2. thoon   | To give change                                    |
| thoon maa  | To give change (to me)                            |
| thoon maa hâj phǒm   | To give me change                                 |
| thoon maa hâj phǒm<br>săam bàat                              | To give me 3 baht change                          |
| tôn thoon maa hâj<br>phǒm sâam bàat                          | Should give me 3                                  |
| khun tôn thoon maa hâj<br>phǒm sâam bàat, thùuk<br>mâj khráp | You should have given me 3 baht<br>change, right? |
| 3. khàat   | To be lacking                                     |
| khàat paj  | To be lacking                                     |
| khàat paj sǒn bàat   | Two baht too little                               |
| nən khàat paj sǒn<br>bàat                                    | Two baht too little change                        |
| thoon nən maa khàat<br>paj sǒn bàat                          | Gave 2 baht too little in change                  |
| thoon nən maa hâj<br>phǒm khàat paj sǒn<br>bàat              | Gave me 2 baht too little in<br>change.           |
| khun thoon nən maa<br>hâj phǒm khàat paj<br>sǒn bàat         | You shortchanged me 2 baht.                       |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

4. kēen Too much  
kēen maa hāa sĭp Fifty satang too much  
sataaŋ  
nēn kēen maa hāa The money is 50 satangs too much.  
sataaŋ  
thoon nēn kēen maa Gave 50 satang too much in change  
hāasĭp sataaŋ  
khun thoon nēn kēen You gave 50 satang too much in  
maa hāasĭp sataaŋ the change.
5. thoon to give change  
nēn thoon change  
dāj nēnthoon get change  
jaŋ māj dāj nēnthoon haven't got change yet  
phǒm jaŋ māj dāj I haven't got change yet.  
nēnthoon

### Excercise

1. khun sýy khǒŋ raakhaa sĭp sǎam bàat. khun hāj nēn khonkhǎaj paj jĭisĭp bàat. khǎw tōŋ thoon nēn hāj khun kĭi bàat  
You bought 13 baht worth of goods. You gave the seller 20 baht. How much must he give you back in change?
2. khun sýy phǒnlamāaj ruam thǎnmòt jĭi sĭp èt bàat. khun hāj baj la jĭisĭp kàp baj la hāa khǎw paj. khǎw tōŋ thoon nēn hāj khun thǎwràj  
You bought fruit for 21 baht. You gave her one 20 baht bank note and one 5 baht bank note. How much is she supposed to give you back in change?
3. khun sýy khǒŋ raakhaa kǎawsĭp cèt bàat cèt sĭp sataaŋ. khun hāj baj la rǒŋ khǎw paj. khun khuan dāj nēn thoon thǎwràj  
You bought the goods for 97.70 baht. You gave the seller a 100 baht bank note. How much change should you get back?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

4. khun sýy phâamăj thánmòt săamróoj sîp bàat.  
khun hăj baj la róoj khonkhăaj sîi baj.  
khonkhăaj thoôn nən maa hăj khun pèet sîp bàat. khăw thoôn  
nən hăj khun khàat paj thăwràj.

You bought 310 baht worth of Thai silk. You gave the  
salesman four 100 baht bank notes. The salesman gave  
you 80 baht change. How much did he shortchange you?

5. khun sýy khǒoj raakhaa săam bàat khun hăj baj la hăa  
khonkhăaj paj. khăw thoôn maa hăj khun săam bàat. khăw  
thoôn nən kəen maa thăwràj.

You bought some things for 3 baht. You gave the salesman  
one 5 baht bank note. He gave you 3 baht change. How  
much extra change did you get?

### 1) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	ca <u>ráp araj</u> ìik máj
	Would you like anything else?
1. sýy araj	ca <u>sýy araj</u> ìik máj
	Would you like to buy anything else?
2. tham araj	ca <u>tham araj</u> ìik máj
	Would you like to do anything else?
3. paj năj	ca <u>paj năj</u> ìik máj
	Would you like to go anywhere else?
4. paj hăa khraj	ca <u>paj hăa khraj</u> ìik máj
	Would you like to see anyone else?



- m) Recognition and Familiarization Drill (l̥ik: 'else')
1. khun paj hǎa kháw l̥ésw. khun ca paj hǎa khraj l̥ik  
You have seen him. Is there anybody else you'll see?
  2. n̥ôkcaak khun cōon l̥ésw, khun rúucák khraj l̥ik bāaŋ  
Besides John, who else do you know?
  3. s̥ý phāa s̥èt l̥ésw, khun jàak ca s̥ý araj l̥ik máj  
After we finish shopping for material, is there anything else you'd like to buy?
  4. kh̥iān còtmǎaj s̥èt l̥ésw, khun ca tham araj l̥ik  
After you have finished writing letters, what else are you going to do?
  5. paj thúra th̥iñān s̥èt l̥ésw, khun ca tōŋ paj th̥iñǎj l̥ik má  
After you have finished your business there, do you have to go anywhere else?

1. kháw mī phanrajaa sǔaj lé kèn  
He has a beautiful and clever wife.
2. kháw mī bāansǔaj  
He has a beautiful house.

3. kháw dâj khoncháj dii

He has (got) good servants.

4. kháw mií lûuksăaw sŭaj jùu khonnŷ

He has a beautiful daughter.

5. thŷinân mií ráanaahăan dii jùu ráan nŷ

There is a good restaurant there.

6. thŷinân mií ráankhăajkhŏn jàj jùu ráan nŷ

There is a big store there.

o) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

(Reduplication indicates 'plurality')

1. kháw mií bân sŭaj suăj lăaj lăŷ

He has many beautiful houses.

2. kháw mií rót ameerikan jàj jàj lăaj khan

He has many big American cars.

3. kháw mií lûuknŏn kèn kèn dii dii lăaj khon

He has many good and competent employees.

4. kháw mií khŏncháj dii dii lăaj jàan.

He has many nice things to use.

5. kháw rúucàk ráanaahăan dii dii thùuk thùuk lăaj hèn

He knows many inexpensive good restaurants.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

6. thîinân mii roonrian màj màj dii dii juu lăaj roon

There are many good new schools there.

7. thîinân mii khǒon dii dii thùuk thùuk hâj lăak lăaj jàan

There are many kinds of good, inexpensive things to choose from there.

p) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

(Reduplication indicates 'generality')

1. phǒm jàak dâj nǎnsǎy dii dii sák lêm

I want to get a good book.

2. khǎw tǒnkaan phŷan dii dii sák khon

He needs a good friend.

3. phǒm ca sýy rót ameerikan khan jàj jàj sák khan

I'll buy a big American car.

4. chŷaj sýy phāmǎj sŷaj sŷaj dii dii sǐi dam hâj sák sǒon lăa

Please buy two yards of good beautiful Thai silk, in black for me.

5. phǒm jàak dâj lŷuknǒon dii dii kènken sák khonnŷ

I would like to get a competent good person to work for me.

q) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

(Reduplication strengthening of the base meanings)

1. rótkhanníi mǎj jàj phoo. phǒm jàak dâj rót jàj jàj

This car is not big enough. I would like a big car.

2. bâan lằnńí jàj kəen paj. phǒm jàak dâj bâan lék lék.

This house is too big. I would like a small house.

3. nánsǔy lêmńí jàak paj nòoj. phǒm jàak dâj nánsǔy nâaj nâaj

This book is a little bit too difficult. I would like an easy one.

4. phâa jàanńí phɛɛn paj. phǒm jàak dâj jàan thùuk thùuk

This kind of material is too expensive. I would like a cheap kind.

5. kaafɛɛ thûaj ní māj rón léej. phǒm jàak dâj kaafɛɛ rónrón

This cup of coffee is not hot. I'd like hot coffee.

r) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

(Reduplication softening the base meaning)

1. phǒm jàak dâj rót dī dī sák khan nɔn

I would like to get a fairly good car.

2. chûaj sýy mamûan lûuk tootoo hâj sǐp bàat

Please buy me 50 Baht of rather big mangoes.

3. phûujǐn khonnán pen khon dam dam tɛɛ māj dam mâak

That lady is a rather dark person but not very dark.

4. phǒm hɛn rót sǐi khǎaw khǎaw phaan paj khannɔn

I saw a whitish car pass by.

5. phǒm cam dâj wâa nánsǔy lêmńán  
pen nánsǔy lêm lék lék baan baan.

I remember that that book is a rather small thin book.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

s) Recognition and Familiarization Drill (classifier specifies the object)

1. khun chôp rót khan nǎj. khan lék rý khan jàj  
Which car do you like? The small one or the big one?
2. kháw ca chǎw lǎn nǎj. lǎn sǐkhǎaw rý sǐkhǎaw  
Which house is he going to rent? The green one or the white one?
3. nǎnsǎy khǒn khun lēm nǎj, lēm kàw rý lēm mǎj  
Which book is yours? The old one or the new one?
4. khun ca aw pàakkaa an thùuk rý an phēn  
Does he want the cheap pen or the expensive one?
5. fēn khǒn kháw khon nǎj (phūujǐn) khon sǎaj rý khon mǎj sǎaj  
Which one is his girl friend? The pretty one or the not (so) pretty one?

t) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

Single Adjective (Indicating kind or type)	Reduplicated Adjective (Indicating quality)
1. mamŭan sùk Ripe mangoes	mamŭan sùksùk Mangoes which are (rather) ripe
2. kaafē rón Hot coffee	kaafē rónróon The coffee which is quite hot
3. nám jen Cold water	nám jenjen Water which is really cold

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

4.	khǒŋkàw	khǒŋ kàwkàw
	Antiques	Old things
5.	khǒŋwǎan	khǒŋ wǎanwǎan
	Dessert	Sweet things

### 39.3 EXERCISES

- 1) Pretend you are shopping for fruit and ask for
  - (a) 2 oranges and a bunch of bananas,
  - (b) six mangosteens and one small watermelon,
  - (c) 3 ripe mangoes,
  - (d) 1 large papaya,
  - (e) one small durian,
  - (f) a sweet pineapple,
  - (g) a bunch of rambuttans.
- 2) Pretend you are shopping and say to the salesperson  
" Please choose for me \_\_\_\_\_ "
  - (a) a good orange,
  - (b) 3 sweet pineapples,
  - (c) one large durian,
  - (d) a big, sweet watermelon,
  - (e) 2 kilos of beautiful mangosteens,
  - (f) 3 baht worth of big ripe papayas,
  - (g) 1 bunch of ripe bananas,
  - (h) 3 rose apples,
  - (i) 2 bunches of good rambuttans,
  - (j) 1 bunch of langsa.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- 3) Student A says to Student B, "Where are you going?"  
Student B replies, "I'm going to buy \_\_\_\_\_ for you."  
Use different kinds of objects in your reply.
- 4) Student A: "I have \_\_\_\_\_ dollars. How much Thai money will I get in exchange for it?"  
Student B: "You'll get \_\_\_\_\_ baht."

### 39.4 VOCABULARY

baj la hâa	5 baht bank note
bénjôj	small bill (change)
chomphûu	rose apple
chôo	bunch, classifier of fruit in a bunch
doolâa	dollar
fœen	girl or boy friend
hók cèt	6 or 7
kœen	too much
khàat	shortage of, short (of)
khàat tua	no bargaining
khôjcháj	things for use
klûaj	banana
laansàat	bangsa (small fruit)
lûuk	classifier for fruit
lÿak	to choose, pick out, select, elect

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

malakoo	papaya (fruit)
mamûaŋ	mango (fruit)
maŋkhút	mangosteen (fruit)
mêskháa	salesperson (female)
ŋənthoon	change
ŋó	rambutan (fruit)
phíchaŋ	Phichai (male first name)
phimsěen	smelling salts
phǒn	classifier for fruit
phǒnlamáaŋ	fruit
phuaŋ	bunch, classifier for fruit in a bunch
ráp	to take on, to eat (something)
rǎan	coin, dollars
rót	flavor
sák	a little, a bit
sák pradǎaw	a minute
sanít	extremely (sweet, etc.); close, intimate (of friends, etc.)
săpparót	pineapple
sèet sataaŋ	change (in coin)
sôm	orange
sôm oo	pomelo
sòt	fresh (of fruit, etc.)



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

sùk	ripe
tsɛŋmoo	watermelon
tháŋmòt	altogether
thîlîlêkŋen	place to exchange money
thûan	even, in round numbers
thúrian	durian (fruit)
wǎan	sweet (in flavor)
wǐi	bunch, classifier for bunch of bananas

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### LESSON FORTY

#### 40.0 BASIC DIALOG: Banking and Shopping Trip

- A: khun mii bẻnjbẻj bẻan mẻj      Do you have any change?
- B: mii, tẻe mẻj thẻy rẻỏj      Yes, but not as much as 100  
bẻat      Baht.
- A: ẻnẻn, khẻỏ jẻym kẻỏn sẻk      Well, could I borrow 20 Baht,  
jẻisẻp bẻat, dẻj mẻj      then?
- khẻỏpkhun mẻak      Thank you.
- B: wannẻi ca paj nẻj rẻẻkhrẻp      You are going somewhere today?
- A: ca paj thanakhaan      To the bank.
- B: paj fẻak ẻnẻn rẻẻkhrẻp      To deposit money?
- A: plẻaw, ca paj bẻẻk ẻnẻn      No, to get some money out.
- kẻp ca phaa phẻn farẻn      And I am also taking a 'farang'  
paj lẻẻk ẻnthẻj dẻj      friend to change some money,
- phẻỏ ca paj sẻy khẻỏn kan      Because we are going shopping.
- phẻn khẻw jẻak sẻy phẻamẻj      She wants some Thai silk, a  
thẻj, khẻnnẻn      silver bowl,
- lẻẻwkwỏ chamsalẻt thẻi tham      And a wooden salad bowl.  
dẻj mẻj

#### 40.1 BASIC DIALOG: (Part 2)

- A: khun rẻủcẻk rẻủandẻidẻi thẻi      You know any good and inexpen-  
mẻj phẻẻn nẻk bẻan mẻj      sive shops?
- B: rẻủan sẻẻkhẻathẻj ẻj khrẻp      Yes, the "Thai merchandise"  
              shop.
- khẻw mii khẻỏnthẻj dẻidẻi      They have a large selection of  
sẻủjsẻủj hẻj lyẻk jẻẻ      beautiful and good things.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>fĩĩmyy kháw dīĩ m̄āk phró<br/>kháw mīĩ chāaŋ dīĩdīĩ</p>   | <p>Their work is very good<br/>because they have good artisans.</p>                            |
| <p>A: cĩŋná, phēŋ nýk òok</p>  | <p>That's true, it just occurred<br/>to me.</p>  |
| <p>B: əə, khun ca phāan ráan<br/>nanaaphān máj</p>   | <p>By the way, are you going to<br/>go by "Nana Phan" shop?</p>                                |
| <p>A: phāan, ca fāak sýy araj<br/>bāaŋ</p>   | <p>Yes, could I get you something?</p>   |
| <p>B: chūaŋ sýy thāanfajchǎaŋ<br/>hǎj dūaŋ</p>   | <p>Could you buy some flashlight<br/>batteries for me?</p>                                     |
| <p>A: aw k̄lī k̄ōn</p>   | <p>How many do you want?</p>   |
| <p>B: s̄ōŋ k̄ōn, l̄éswk̄ō<br/>l̄òotfajfāa hòks̄l̄p<br/>r̄ēŋthian s̄ām l̄òot<br/><br/>n̄ĩkhráp n̄ēkhāakh̄ōŋ</p> | <p>Two, and three sixty-watt light<br/>bulbs.<br/><br/>Here's the money.</p>                   |
| <p>A: j̄āŋ m̄āj t̄ōŋ h̄āj r̄okhráp<br/><br/>phró j̄aŋ m̄āj s̄āp w̄āa<br/>thāwraŋ</p>                           | <p>Don't bother about it yet,<br/><br/>because I don't know how much<br/>it's going to be.</p> |

### 40.2 VOCABULARY NOTES

- a) bèek nēn means 'to get money (from the bank)' either  
by (a) taking money out of an account: thōon nēn or  
(b) by cashing a check: aw chék paj kh̄yn nēn
- b) th̄yŋ is used to indicate that a certain point, degree,  
or amount has been reached.  
When used as a main verb, it means 'to reach, get to' or  
'to be as much as (with amounts)'.  
mīĩ b̄ēŋj̄ōj t̄ē m̄āj th̄yŋ r̄óoj bàat  
I have change but not as much as 100 baht.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- c) jé, jé, jéjé means 'to be a great deal, a lot, plenty.' It frequently replaces mâak in colloquial speech in the sense of 'large number or quantity', but not in the sense of 'very'.

kháw mii khǒn diidi jé 'He has lots of good things.'

- d) fǐi myy means (a) 'craftmanship' as in tó tua nii fǐimyy dii

'This table is well made (good craftsmanship)' and (b) 'manual skill' châan fǐi myy dii 'a skilled craftsman'. Note that kháw fǐimyy dii and fǐimyy kháw dii mean the same thing. (See 37.2b)

- e) kòon in the sentence khǒo jyym kòon is used to emphasize the fact that the loan is to be of very short duration. (The speaker is emphasizing that he really doesn't need a loan, but there seems to be no other solution, since the other person doesn't have change for his bank note.)
- f) sák (sàk) means 'merely, just, as little as'. It normally precedes a number or a quantitative expression and implies that the speaker considers the number or amount referred to as not very large.

Borrower: khǒo jyym nen sák rǒoj bàat

'Could I borrow 100 baht?' (I'm sure you will let me have it, since it's such a small amount.)

tân means 'as much as, as many as'. It is used in the same types of constructions as sák but it implies that the speaker considers the amount referred to as quite large, hence the prospective lender might respond to the above request with

tân rǒoj bàat chiaw rǎ 'a hundred baht!'

(That's a lot of money!)

- (g) In sentences like chûaj sýy thaan fajchaa j hâj dûaj, dûaj has the meaning 'since you are going to be doing something anyway, it won't be too much trouble for you to do me a favor too, would it?'

- h) naj is used when pointing to something that has been sought.

A: khun coon khon năj 'Which one's John?'

B: khon năn naj (lá) 'That one. (pointing at him).'

#### 40.3 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) châan means a person who has skill in some craft or trade. It is the head noun in many noun compounds like the following:

châan tăt phôm 'barber': châan + tăt phôm 'to cut hair'

châan tăt sŷa 'tailor': châan + tăt sŷa 'to cut (out) clothing'

châan thoön 'jeweler': châan + thoön 'gold'

châan thàaj rūup 'photographer': châan + thàaj rūup 'take pictures'

châan máaj 'carpenter': châan + máaj 'wood'

châan thôm 'nielloware maker': châan + thôm 'make nielloware'

châan kèsalàk 'carver': châan + kèsalàk 'to carve'

- b) Completive verbs<sup>1</sup> in Thai are somewhat similar to certain types of adverbs in English that occur with verbs and form constructions having a completely different meaning, such as figure out, bring up, etc., except that in Thai the completive verb usually indicates that the action referred to in the main verb was brought to conclusion, thus khít 'to think' and khít òok 'to figure out'. If the result of the action is unsuccessful, the negative is placed before the completive, not the main verb:

khít māj òok 'didn't succeed in figuring it out'

jâak māk. phôm khít māj òok 'It's very difficult.

I can't figure it out.

phôm nŷk māj òok wâa khâw jùu thŷinăj

'I can't recall where he lives.'

<sup>1</sup>Noss, page 125 ff.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

- c) In English use of the personal pronoun immediately after its noun antecedent, such as Mary she, or my friend he, etc. is considered substandard English. This is not the case in Thai. Examples of this type (in the third person) are very common. The choice of pronoun is dependent on the degree of intimacy and the relative status levels of the speaker and the person referred to.

(a) phŷan kháw                      '(my) friend he'  
not intimate, about equal status

(b) lŷuk phŷm kse<sup>1</sup>                      'my children they'  
intimate, equal status

(c) khun prapâat thân                      'Mr. Prapas he'  
Least intimate, superior status (rank or age)  
to speaker

- d) Borrow and lend are related in Thai in much the same way as in English. Observe the examples below:

Subject	<u>khŷo</u>	<u>jyym</u>	Object	Lender	(Amount)
khun A	khŷo	jyym	ŋen	khun B	10 bàat
Mr. A	asks to	borrow	money	from Mr. B	10 baht
'Mr. A asks Mr. B for the loan of 10 baht.'					

Compare the above with this:

Subject	<u>hâj</u>	Object	Recipient	<u>jyym</u>	(Amount)
khun A	hâj	ŋen	khun B	jyym	5.bàat
Mr. A	gave	money	(to) Mr. B	to borrow	5 baht
'Mr. A lent Mr. B five baht.'					

<sup>1</sup>Noss, page 100 ff.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

- e) fàak is used to indicate that you are entrusting some task to another person or something to an institution.

(NP)	<u>fàak</u>	(NP)	Verb Phrase
(phǒm)	fàak	(khun)	sýy jaa dûaj
(I)	entrust	(you)	to buy medicine (for me) too
'Could you buy some medicine (for me) too.'			

In sentences like the following:

phǒm ca sýy sýa sǔaj sǔaj paj fàak phanraja phǒm

'I'll buy pretty dresses to give to my wife',

fàak means only 'to give to'.

- f) The following construction is used to indicate what material an object is made of:

NP	tham	dûaj	Material
tó tuaníi	tham	dûaj	máaj
'This table is made of wood.'			

Other materials such as nɛn 'silver', máaj sàk 'teak', lèk 'iron', kradaat 'paper', or kracòk 'glass'.

The construction above is also used in a limited number of cases to indicate the instrument that was used in making something, as in this example:

krápǎw bajnán tham dûaj myy 'That bag is hand-made.'

In place of myy, khryaŋ(càk) 'machine' could be used.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 40.4 GRAMMAR DRILLS

#### a) Sentence Construction Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. kháw, nən, róoj bàat He, money, 100 Baht	<u>kháw mii nən</u> thǎy rój bàat máj Does he have as much as 100 Baht?
2. khun, bənjǎj sǐp bàat you, change, ten Baht	<u>khun mii bənjǎj</u> thǎy <u>sǐp bàat</u> máj Do you have as much as 10 Baht change?
3. kháw, nən fàak, thanakhaan, láan bàat he, money in the bank, one million baht	<u>kháw mii nən fàak thanakhaan</u> thǎy <u>láan bàat</u> máj Does he have as much as one million Baht in the bank?
4. roonrian níi, nákrían, róoj khon. This school, students, 100.	<u>roonrian níi</u> mii nákrían thǎy <u>róoj khon</u> máj Are there as many as 100 students in this school?
5. hōnsamùt níi, nánsǎy, hāa róoj. This library, books, 500.	<u>hōnsamùt níi</u> mii <u>nánsǎy</u> thǎy <u>hāa róoj</u> lēm máj Are there as many as 500 books in this library?
6. khun, weelaa, khrǎy chūamoon. You, time, half an hour.	<u>khun mii weelaa</u> thǎy <u>khrǎy</u> <u>chūamoon</u> máj Do you have as much as half an hour?



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### b) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	phǒm mii <u>bénjǎj</u> mǎj thǎy <u>rǎoj</u> <u>bàat</u> . I don't have as much as 100 Baht in change.
1. nən, rǎoj bàat Money, one hundred Baht.	phǒm mii <u>nən</u> mǎj thǎy <u>rǎoj</u> <u>bàat</u> . I don't have as much as 100 Baht.
2. nən fàak thanaakhaan, nǎy phan bàat. Money in the bank, 1000 baht.	phǒm mii <u>nən fàak thanakhaan</u> mǎj thǎy nǎy phan bàat. I don't have as much as one thousand Baht in the bank.
3. nákrian, rǎoj khon. Students, 100.	phǒm mii <u>nákrian</u> mǎj thǎy <u>rǎoj</u> khon. I don't have as many as 100 students.
4. khon chûaj, sǐp khon. helpers, ten.	phǒm mii <u>khon chûaj</u> mǎj thǎy <u>sǐp</u> <u>khon</u> . I don't have as many as 10 helpers.
5. weelaa lǎa, nǎy dyan. time left, one month	phǒm mii <u>weelaa lǎa</u> mǎj thǎy <u>nǎy</u> <u>dyan</u> . I have less than a month left.

### c) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- kháw sǎa khâa chǎw bâan dyan la mǎj thǎy sǎam phan bàat.  
He pays for the rent less than three thousand Baht a month.
- kháw mii nən fàak thanakhaan mǎj thǎy láan bàat.  
He doesn't have as much as one million Baht in the bank.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

3. kháw mii weelaa lýa ìik māj thŷn dyan.  
He has only less than a month left.
4. phǒm thamnaan thŷnīi (maa) dāj māj thŷn pii.  
I have worked here less than a year.
5. kháw phēn sŷy rót khan níi dāj māj thŷn pii.  
He's just bought this car less than a year ago.

### d) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	khǎo jŷym <u>nən</u> sák <u>jŷisìp</u> <u>bàat</u> dāj māj May I borrow twenty baht?
1. nánssŷyphim, pradŷaw.	khǎo jŷym <u>nánssŷyphim</u> sák <u>pradŷaw</u> May I borrow your newspaper for a few minutes?
2. rót, khrŷn chŷamoon.	khǎo jŷym <u>rót</u> sák <u>khrŷn</u> <u>chŷamoon</u> , dāj māj May I borrow your car for only half an hour?
3. pàakaa, nŷn, dŷam.	khǎo jŷym <u>pàakaa</u> sák dŷam, dāj māj May I borrow a pen?
4. nánssŷy lēm níi, sǎon wan.	khǎo jŷym <u>nánssŷy</u> <u>lēm</u> <u>níi</u> sák <u>sǎon</u> <u>wan</u> , dāj māj May I borrow this book for two days?
5. nánssŷy dīi dīi, sǎon lēm.	khǎo jŷym <u>nánssŷy</u> <u>dīi</u> <u>dīi</u> sák <u>sǎon</u> <u>lēm</u> , dāj māj May I borrow two good books?

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### e) Transformation Drill

(Form a statement based on the exchange.)

#### Pattern 1 and 2

#### Pattern 3

#### Example I:

A: khǎo jyym nən sák sĭp  
bàat, dâj máj  
May I borrow 10 baht?

khun B hâj nən khun A jyym sĭp  
bàat  
Mr. B lent Mr. A ten baht.

B: dâj  
O.K.

#### Example II:

A: khǎo jyym nən sák sĭp  
bàat, dâj máj  
Could I borrow ten  
baht from you?

khun A khǎo jyym nən khun B sĭp  
bàat tĕe khun B mâj hâj jyym  
Mr. A asks Mr. B for a ten baht  
loan, but Mr. B won't lend it  
to him.

B: mâj dâj  
No

1. A: khǎo jyym pàakaa sák  
dâam, dâj máj  
Could I borrow a pen?

khun A khǎo jyym pàakaa khun  
B tĕe khun B mâj hâj  
Mr. A asks Mr. B for loan of  
a pen, but Mr. B won't lend  
it to him.

B: mâj dâj  
No

2. A: khǎo jyym nânsŷyphim  
chabâp níi nòoj,  
dâj máj  
May I borrow this  
newspaper?

khun B hâj khun A jyym  
nânsŷyphim

Mr. B lent Mr. A a newspaper.

B: dâj  
O.K.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

3. A: khǎo jɯm nǎnsǎy sák  
sǎoŋ lēm, dǎj mǎj  
may I borrow two  
B: dǎj  
Yes.  
khun B hǎj khun A khǎo jɯm  
nǎnsǎy sǎoŋ lēm.  
Mr. B lent Mr. A two books.
4. A: khǎo jɯm pǎakaa sák  
dāam, dǎj mǎj.  
May I borrow a pen?  
B: mǎj dǎj  
No.  
khun A khǎo jɯm pǎakaa khun  
B tēs khun B mǎj hǎj.  
Mr. A asks Mr. B for a loan of  
a pen, but Mr. B won't lend  
one to him.
5. A: khǎo jɯm khr̂yǎŋ  
phimdlit sák dǎaw,  
dǎj mǎj  
May I borrow your  
typewriter for a few  
minutes?  
B: aw si khráp  
You may take it.  
khun B hǎj khun A khǎo jɯm  
khr̂yǎŋ phimdlit  
Mr. B lent Mr. A a typewriter.
6. A: khǎo jɯm khr̂yǎŋ àt  
théep sák chūamoon,  
dǎj mǎj  
May I borrow the tape  
recorder for an hour?  
B: khǎothōot dūaj, phǎm  
tōoŋ cháj khráp  
Sorry, I have to use  
it.  
khun A khǎo jɯm khr̂yǎŋ àt  
théep khun B tēs khun B mǎj  
hǎj.  
Mr. A asks Mr. B for a tape  
recorder, but Mr. B won't lend  
it to him.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### f) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. khun coon kháw mâj jàak paj  
John doesn't want to go.
2. lûuk phǒm kɛɛ chɔɔp khɔɔŋ wǎanwǎan  
My children like sweet things.
3. naaj phǒm kháw mâj chɔɔp hâj phǒm paj sǎaj  
My boss doesn't like me to be late.
4. phanrajaa phǒm kɛɛ chɔɔp bâan lǎŋ níi  
My wife likes this house.
5. naajók thǎan mâj wǎan  
The prime minister is busy.
6. dèk khon nán kɛɛ maa jùu thǎinǎi naan  
That child has been here a long time.

### g) Sentence Construction Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. chaamsalàt bajníi, máaj This salad bowl, wood	chaamsalàt bajníi tham dûaj máaj. This salad bowl is made of wood.
2. khǎn bajníi, nɛn This bowl, silver	khǎn bajníi tham dûaj nɛn. This bowl is made of silver.
3. tó tuaníi, máajsàk This table, teak	tó tuaníi tham dûaj máajsàk. This table is made of teak.
4. thûaj bajníi, pláatsatik This cup, plastic	thûaj bajníi tham dûaj pláatsatik This cup is made of plastic.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 5. klòn burlì bajnán,<br>thoon<br>This cigarette box,<br>gold | klòn burlì bajnán tham dūaj<br>thoon.<br>This cigarette box is made of<br>gold. |
| 6. thūn baj nán,<br>kradaat nānsýyphim<br>This bag, newspaper | thūn bajnán tham dūaj<br>kradaat nānsýyphim.<br>This bag is made of newspaper.  |

### h) Transformation Drill

#### Pattern 1

1. fīimyy kháw dii
2. fīimyy chāan tàtsýa  
khonníi dii
3. fīimyy chāan tàtphǒm  
khonníi māj dii.
4. fīimyy chāan thoon  
khonníi dii.
5. fīimyy chāan thàajrūup  
khonníi māj dii.
6. fīimyy chāan máaj  
khonníi dii.
7. fīimyy chāan thǒm  
khonníi dii.

#### Pattern 2

- kháw fīimyy dii  
His work is good.
- chāan tàtsýa khonníi fīimyy  
dii.  
This tailor (dressmaker) is  
good.
- chāan tàtphǒm khonníi fīimyy  
māj dii.  
This barber is not good.
- chāan thoon khonníi fīimyy  
dii.  
This jeweler is good.
- chāan thàajrūup khonníi fīimyy  
māj dii.  
This photographer is not good.
- chāan máaj khonníi fīimyy dii.  
This carpenter is good.
- chāan thǒm khonníi fīimyy dii.  
This nielloware maker is good.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

8. fĩimyy chãaŋ kèsalàk khonnĩi dii. chãaŋ kèsalàk khonnĩi fĩimyy dii.

This carver is good.

1) Completion Drill

(Complete the sentences with a compound beginning as chãaŋ.)

1. khon thĩi mii aachĩip tham khrĩaŋryan rĩak wãa.....  
.....(Answer: chãaŋmãaj).

A person who earns his living by making furniture is called  
.....(Answer: a cabinet maker.)

2. khon thĩi mii aachĩip tàtphǒm rĩak wãa.....  
.....(Answer: chãaŋthàtphǒm).

A person who earns his living by cutting one's hair is called  
.....(Answer: a barber).

3. khon thĩi mii aachĩip tàtsỹa rĩak wãa.....  
.....(Answer: chãaŋtàtsỹa).

A person who earns his living by making clothes is called  
.....(Answer: a tailor).

4. khon thĩi mii aachĩip tham khrĩaŋthoon rĩak wãa.....  
.....(Answer: chãaŋthoon).

A person who earns a living by making jewelry or gold ornaments is called.....(Answer: a goldsmith).

5. khon thĩi mii aachĩip thaŋ kèsalàk rĩak wãa.....  
.....(Answer: chãaŋ kèsalàk).

A person who earns his living by carving things is called  
.....(Answer: a carver).

6. khon thĩi mii aachĩip thaŋ wĩthhajú rĩak wãa.....  
.....(Answer: chãaŋwĩthhajú).

A person who earns his living by working in the field of radio is called.....(Answer: a radio repairman).

## THAI BASIC COURSE

7. khon thîi mii aachîp thaang fajfáa rîak wâa.....  
 .....(Answer: chhâang fajfáa).

A person who earns his living in the field of electricity  
 is called.....(Answer: an electrician).

### j) Sentence Construction Drill

	<u>Pattern 1</u>	<u>Cue</u>	<u>Continued Pattern</u>
	khun ca phaan ráan khăaj jaa máj	sýy jaa	fàak <u>sýy jaa</u> dūaj.
	Are you going by the drug store?	Buy some medicine.	May I ask you to buy some medicine for me?
1.	khun ca phaan talàat máj	sýy khǒon	fàak <u>sýy khǒon</u> dūaj.
	Are you going to go by the market?	Buy some- thing.	I'd like you to buy something for me.
2.	khun ca wé hōngkon máj	sýy klōn thaaaj rūup	fàak <u>sýy klōn thaaaj rūup sak klōn</u> dūaj.
	Are you going to stop over in Hongkong?	Buy a camera.	I'd like you to buy a camera for me.
3.	khun ca paj talàat rěkháp	sýy kàpkhâaw	fàak <u>sýy kàpkhâaw</u> dūaj.
	You're going to the market?	Buy me some food.	May I ask you to buy some food for me?
4.	khun ca phaan prajsanîi máj	sòn còtmăaj	fàak <u>sòn còt măaj</u> dūaj
	Are you going to go by the post office?	Mail a letter.	Could you mail a letter for me?
5.	khun ca paj ráan kaafɛɛ rýy	sýy kaafɛɛ	fàak <u>sýy kaafɛɛ</u> dūaj.
	You're going to the coffee shop?	Buy some coffee.	Could you get some coffee for me?



## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

- |                                  |               |  |
|----------------------------------|---------------|--|
| 6. khun ca paj<br>thanakhaan ryy | lêsk nən      | fàak <u>lêsk nən</u> dūaj.             |
| You're going to<br>the bank?     | Change money. | Could you change some<br>money for me? |

### k) Response Drill

- | <u>Question</u>   | <u>Cue</u>                        | <u>Response</u>   |
|---|-----------------------------------|---|
| 1. khun ca syy araj<br>paj fàak khaw  | nənsyy dii dii<br>sák sǝɔŋ lēm.   | phǝm ca syy nənsyy dii<br>dii paj fàak khaw sák<br>sǝɔŋ lēm.    |
| What are you going<br>to buy (as a present)<br>for him?   | Two good<br>books.                | I'll buy two good books<br>for him.                             |
| 2. khun ca syy araj paj<br>fàak phanrajaa<br>khun   | syya sǝaj sǝaj                    | phǝm ca syy sya sǝaj<br>sǝaj paj fàak phanrajaa                 |
| What are you going<br>to buy (as a souve-<br>nir) for your wife?                                  | Beautiful<br>blouses<br>(dresses) | I'll buy beautiful<br>dresses for my wife.                      |
| 3. weelaa khun klàp paj<br>bāan, khun ca syy<br>araj paj fàak lūuk<br>sǝaw khun                   | khǝɔŋ lēm                         | phǝm ca syy khǝɔŋ lēm<br>paj fàak lūuksǝaw phǝm.                |
| When you go home,<br>what are you going<br>to buy (as a souve-<br>nir) for your daughter?         | Toys.                             | I'm going to buy some<br>toys for my daughter.                  |
| 4. weelaa khun klàp<br>paj myanthat, khun<br>ca syy araj paj<br>fàak phanrajaa khun               | khryañcháj<br>fajfáa              | phǝm ca syy<br>khryañcháj fajfáa<br>paj fàak phanrajaa<br>phǝm. |
| When you go back to<br>Thailand, what are<br>you going to buy (as<br>a present) for your<br>wife? | Electrical<br>appliances          | I'll buy some elec-<br>trical appliances for<br>my wife.        |

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

5. weelaa khun paj tookiaw,    wíthajú    phǒm ca sýy wíthajú  
     khun ca sýy araj            jîipùn an    jîipùn an léklék maa  
     maa fàak phǒm bân.        léklék,      fàak khun nỳn khryân  
    nỳn khryân
- When you go to                      A rather    I'll buy you a rather  
 Tokyo, what things                small Jap-   small Japanese radio.  
 are you going to buy               anese radio  
 (as souvenirs from  
 Tokyo) for me?

### 1) Recognition and Familiarization

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. khun rúcàk ráan diidi bân máj  Do you know any good stores?	ráan thaj najlakháp  Yes, "Thai" store's the one.
2. rót khǒnkhun jùu thfinǎj  Where is your car?	nîi najkhráp  Right here.
3. khun sǒmsàk khonnǎj  Which one is Mr. Somsak?	khonnán najkhráp  That one there.
4. khun hěn nán sýy phǒm máj  Did you see my book?	jùu nân najkhráp  Right there (Don't you see it?)
5. kháw maa rýplàaw  Did he come?	maa, jyyn jùu nân najkhráp.  Yes, he's standing right there. (Don't you see him?)

### m) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. khun ca phaan talàat máj. fàak sýy khǒn dūaj.  
 Are you going to go buy the market? Could you get me  
 something?

2. khun ca wé tookiaw máj. fàak sýy khǒon dûaj.  
Are you going to stop over Tokyo? Could I have you buy something for me?
3. khun ca paj sýy kaafæe rěhá. fàak sýy dûaj nỳn thûaj.  
You are going to buy coffee? Could you get a cup for me too?
4. khun ca paj prajsanii rěhá. fàak sòn còtmăaj dûaj.  
You are going to the post office? Could you mail this letter for me?
5. khun ca paj hăa khun cim rě. fàak nănsýy lêmńí paj hăj khaw dûaj.  
You are going to see Jim? Could you take this book to him also?
6. khun ca paj ráan khăajphăa rě. chûaj sýy phăa hăj dûaj.  
You are going to the fabric shop? Could you buy some material for me too?
7. khun ca paj bâan kháw, chăj máj. chûaj bòok kháw dûaj wăa phǒm paj măj dăj.  
You are going to his house, aren't you? Please tell him that I can't go.
8. khun ca paj hăa naajnăa rě. chûaj thăam kháw dûaj wăa bâan lănnán khăachăw thăwraaj.  
You are going to see the agent? Please ask him (also) how much the rent for that house is.
9. khun ca hăa khun prasít rě. chûaj aw nănsýy lêmńí paj hăj kháw dûaj.  
You are going to see Mr. Prasit? Please take this book to him also.

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 40.5 EXERCISES

1. Pairs of students will ask and answer questions of each other eliciting information like the following:
  - (a) Does one student have as much/many as \$3,000; 50 baht; 2,000 books; etc.
  - (b) Does one student have as much as \$3,000; 36,000 baht; 40,000 baht; \$100,000 deposited in the bank?
2. Two students discuss their monthly salary. The first member of the pair indicates that he finds his salary quite small. The second student is impressed by the size of it.
3. Two students discuss the length, size, or cost of various objects. In each case one takes the position that the amount given is not very much, while the other takes the position that it is quite a lot.
4. Discuss the monthly bill for rent, gas, water, and electricity in the same manner as in 3.
5. Student A asks to borrow various objects (\$10, a pen, 2 books, his car, a tape recorder, a typewriter, etc.). Student B indicates that he will lend A some of the items, but not all.
6. Student C asks Student B what Student A wanted to borrow and if he lent these things to him. When B indicates that he lent him some of the things, C asks why he didn't lend A the other objects.
7. Student A asks Student B what material some object (a table, a chair, a shirt, a glass, a tie, etc.) is made of. B responds. Then A asks him if it is hand-made or machine made.
8. Students will discuss the craftsmanship of various kinds in different countries (woodcarving in Germany, nielloware in Thailand, etc.)

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

9. Students will find out from the instructor what the Thais call sculptors, watch repairmen, hair dressers, weavers, boat builders, house painters, carpenters, printers, etc.
10. Student A asks Student B if he is going to some particular place. When B indicates that he is, A asks him to do some thing (buy something, etc.) for him, indicating that since he is going there anyway it won't be any trouble for him to do him a favor.
11. One student asks another what he plans to buy (as a present) in Thailand for his mother, or his older sister, or his material aunt, or some other relative.
12. Student A asks about the location of some object, or the identity of some person in the classroom. Student B indicates his surprise and points it out to him.
13. Student A plays the part of a bank teller and Student B that of a customer. They discuss withdrawing and depositing money in the bank.

(Below is a facsimile of a Thai check.)

	เลขที่ .....
ธนาคารกรุงเทพ	.....
จ่ายให้ .....	ป .....
จำนวนเงิน .....	บาท
	.....

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

### 40.6 VOCABULARY

aachfip	profession
àt	to tape, to copy
əə	by the way
(khít òok (nýk)	out (a completive verb)
bèek	to withdraw (money), to requisition (as from a storeroom)
bèek nən	to get money (from the bank)
châaŋ-	A person who has skill in some craft or trade. It is the head noun in many noun compounds.
châaŋ kèssalàk (khon)	carver
châaŋ máaj (khon)	carpenter
châaŋ tàtphǒm (khon)	barber
châaŋ tàtsýa (khon)	tailor
châaŋ thàajrûup (khon)	photographer
châaŋ thǒm (khon)	nielloware maker
châaŋ thoŋ (khon)	jeweler
chaam salàt (baj, lûuk)	salad bowl
chiaw rǎ	that's a lot of (something)
cin ná	That's true.
dûaj	also, too, as well
fàak	to deposit; to ask a person to carry on some business for you

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

fàak nən	to deposit money (in the bank)
fǎi myy	manual skill, craftsmanship
hâj jyym	to let someone borrow, to lend
hônkon	Hong Kong
jé/jéjé	to be a whole lot, a great deal, plenty; plentifully
kεε	he, she, they (in the third person) for children, intimates, persons of equal status
kèssalàk	to carve
khǎnnən	silver bowl
kháw	he, she, they (third person) not intimate, about equal status
khít òok	to figure out
khǒo jyym/jyym	to borrow
khǒon lēn (jàan)	toys
khryān (cák) (an)	machine
khryān àtthéep (an)	tape recorder
khŷn nən	to cash a check
kòon	used to emphasize the fact that the action is to be of very short duration
kracòk (baan, phèn)	'glass'
lèek	'iron, steel'
lòot fajfáa (lòot)	light bulb
máaj	wood

## THAI BASIC COURSE

---

máaj sàk	teak
myy (myy)	hand
naajók naajók rátthamontriī	} (thân) prime minister (short form) prime minister (official name)
naanaaphan	Nanaphan (name of a shop)
nýk òok	think about, can recall, can remember; to be able to recall to memory
ṇenbèek	a deposit (in a bank)
phaa	to take, escort
pláatsatìk	plastic
phēṇ	just (immediately before)
rēsṇthian	watt (measure of electricity)
sýnkháa thaj	Thai merchandise
syy...{ paj maa ...fàak	to buy something as a gift or souvenir for someone
tāṇ	as much as, as many as
tàt	to cut
thàaj rūup	take pictures
thàanfajchaaj (kôn)	flashlight batteries
tham dūaj.....	made of
thân	he, she, they (third person) least intimate, superior status (rank or age) to speaker
thǒm	to make nielloware
thoon	gold
thýṇ	is used to indicate that a certain point, degree, or amount has been reached



FSI Language Publications Available from  
Superintendent of Documents  
Washington, D.C. 20402

BASIC COURSES

* Amharic	(Units 1-50)	\$2.25	* Thai	(Units 1-20)	
* Amharic	(Units 51-60)	\$2.50	* Thai	(Units 21-40)	
* Cambodian	(Units 1-45)	\$2.00	* Turkish	(Units 1-30)	\$3.75
* Cambodian	(Units 46-90)		* Turkish	(Units 31-50)	\$2.25
* Cantonese	(Units 1-30)		* Twi	(Units 1-20)	\$1.25
* Chinyanja	(Units 1-63)	\$1.75	* Vietnamese	(Vol. I)	\$2.75
* French (set)	(Units 1-12 )	\$4.00	* Vietnamese	(Vol. II)	\$1.50
	(Units 13-24 )		* Yoruba	(Units 1-49)	\$2.75
* Fula	(Units 1-40)	\$2.75			
* German	(Units 1-12)	\$2.00			
* German	(Units 13-24)	\$1.75			
* Greek	(Vol. I)	\$1.75	* Finnish Graded Reader		\$4.50
* Greek	(Vol. II)	\$1.00	* French Supplemental Exercises		\$3.25
* Greek	(Vol. III)	\$2.00	Hindi-An Active Introduction		
* Hebrew	(Units 1-40)	\$5.00	* Hungarian Graded Reader		\$3.75
* Hungarian	(Units 1-12)	\$2.00	Indonesian Newspaper Reader		\$1.75
* Hungarian	(Units 13-24)	\$1.75	* Luganda Pretraining Program		
* Kirundi	(Units 1-30)	\$2.75	Modern Written Arabic		\$4.00
* Kituba	(Units 1-35)	\$2.25	* Spanish Programmatic Course		
* Korean	(Vol. I)	\$3.00	(Instructor's Manual-Vol. I)		\$0.75
* Korean	(Vol. II)	\$4.75	* Spanish Programmatic Course		
* Lao	(Vol. I)		(Student Workbook-Vol. I)		\$2.25
* Lingala	(Units 1-24)	\$2.75	* Spanish Programmatic Course		
* Luganda	(Lessons 1-94)	\$2.25	(Instructor's Manual-Vol. II)		
* More	(Units 1-48)	\$1.75	* Spanish Programmatic Course		
* Serbo-Croatian	(Units 1-25)	\$3.50	(Student Workbook-Vol. II)		
* Serbo-Croatian	(Units 26-50)	\$4.00	* Swahili General Conversation		\$0.75
Shona	(Units 1-49)	\$2.50	* Swahili Geography		\$0.65
* Spanish (set)	(Units 1-15 )	\$12.25	Thai Reference Grammar		\$1.25
	(Units 16-30 )		Turkish Graded Reader		
* Spanish	(Units 31-45)	\$3.25	Vietnamese Familiarization		
* Spanish	(Units 46-55)	\$4.00	Course		\$1.75
* Swahili	(Units 1-150)	\$3.00	Yoruba Intermediate Texts		\$1.25

Supplies of all publications listed are limited, and prices are subject to change without advance notice. Rules require remittance in advance of shipment. Check or money order should be made payable to the Superintendent of Documents. Postage stamps and foreign money are not acceptable.

\* Tape recordings to accompany these courses are available for purchase from the Sales Branch, National Audiovisual Center (GSA), Washington, D.C. 20409.